NTT docomo

FOMA® SO706i

ISSUE DATE: '08.7

NAME:

PHONE NUMBER:

MAIL ADDRESS:

INSTRUCTION MANUAL

Easy Search/Contents/Precautions

Before Using the Handset

Voice/Videophone Calls

Phonebook

Sound/Screen/Light Settings

Security Settings

Camera

i-mode/i-motion/i-Channel

Mail

i-αppli

Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa

1seg

Full Browser

Data Display/Edit/Management

Music&Video Channel/ Music Playback

Convenient Functions

Character Entry

Network Services

PC Connection

Overseas Use

Appendix/External Devices/ Troubleshooting

Index/Quick Manual

DOCOMO
W-CDMA and GSM/GPRS Systems

Thank you for choosing FOMA SO706i.
Read this manual carefully before use or during operation as well as separate manuals for other components, and use FOMA SO706i properly. If you have further questions regarding manuals, contact the inquiries number provided on the back of this manual.
FOMA SO706i is your useful companion. Take good care of it for so long a period.

Notes on use

- FOMA terminals use wireless communications and cannot be used in tunnels, underground areas, buildings, and other areas without reception; in outdoor locations with weak reception; or outside the service area. Reception may also be weak in even some unobstucted upper floors of high-rise buildings and apartments. Please be aware that calls or communications may be disconnected even under optimal conditions when reception is strong and all three antenna marks are displayed, and when in a stationary position.
- Please be careful not to disturb people around you when using your mobile phone in public places, crowded areas, or quiet locations.
- A third party may be able to use special equipment to listen in on your calls, as FOMA terminals use radio waves. However, W-CDMA and GSM/GPRS automatically support privacy protection with a scrambling function for all calls to make conversations incomprehensive to third parties.
- FOMA terminals convert voice into digital signals for wireless communications, and therefore if you are in an area where radio reception is weak, these signals may not be properly reconverted and this may result in distortion of the caller's voice.
- The user hereby agrees that the user shall be solely responsible for the result of the use of SSL/TLS. Neither DOCOMO nor the certifier as listed herein makes any representation or warranty as for security in the use of SSL/TLS. In the event that the user shall sustain damage or loss due to the use of SSL/TLS, neither DOCOMO nor the certifier shall be responsible for any damage or loss.
  Certifier: VeriSign Japan K.K., Cybertrust Co., Ltd., GlobalSign K.K., RSA Security Inc. and SECOM Trust Systems Co., Ltd.
- This FOMA terminal is available in FOMA Plus-Area/FOMA HIGH-SPEED area.
- The FOMA terminal can be used only via the FOMA network provided by DOCOMO and DOCOMO's roaming area.
- Please keep a separate record of the information (Phonebook, Schedule, Text memo, Record message, Voice memo, Video memo, etc.) you have registered in your FOMA terminal or FOMA card. Please be aware that DOCOMO bears no obligation or responsibility in the event that data is altered or lost.
- It is recommended to back up the important data to the microSD card. If you own a PC, you can also transfer and save the data such as Phonebook, Mail or Schedule to your PC by using DOCOMO keitai datalink.

Before using this manual

This FOMA terminal supports Kisekae Tool (p.97). When you change the design of the menu display using Kisekae Tool, the menu structure may change in accordance with frequency of using functions. Also, you cannot access some functions entering the menu number assigned to the functions.
In this case, it is not possible to operate it according to this manual, so be sure to switch the main menu to "Standard Menu" (p.33) or perform "Reset menu op. log" (p.91).

Latest information regarding to this manual may be downloaded from the DOCOMO website.
· To download "Instruction Manual" (PDF file), access the following site
http://www.nttdocomo.co.jp/english/support/manual/index.html
* The URL and the contents are subject to change without notice.

How to Refer to This Manual

In this manual, following methods are available to find the descriptions of functions and services.

Index → p.396

You can find keywords and functions displayed on the display of the FOMA terminal.

Easy Search → p.4

You can find often-used functions and convenient functions in simple terms.

Index on the front cover → Cover

You can find the table of contents for each chapter by using the Index on the front cover.

See the next page for details.

Contents → p.6

You can find descriptions using the Table of Contents which is divided by the function.

Feature Preview → p.8

You can find main functions of the FOMA SO706i, such as new functions and convenient functions.

Menu Function List → p.340

You can find menu displayed on the display of the FOMA SO706i and default settings.

Quick Manual → p.408

You can find brief descriptions of the basic functions. You can also remove the pages to take along.

Take Quick Manual (For Overseas Use) when using your FOMA terminal abroad.

- In this manual for FOMA SO706i, the “FOMA SO706i” is described as the “FOMA terminal”.
- This manual describes functions that use the microSD card. To use these functions, the microSD card is required. microSD Card→p.243
- It is prohibited to reprint a part or all of the contents of this manual without permission.
- The contents of this manual may change without prior notification.
- Main menu and screen color patterns are described using default settings when the phone color is platinum white.

How to Refer to This Manual (continued)

Following example shows how to look up the alarm function using “Index”, “Easy Search” and “Index on the front cover”.

Index → p.396

You can find keywords and functions displayed on the display of the FOMA terminal.

Alphabetical/Numerical/Kana

A

A mode (2in1) 320
AC adapter. 42
Accessories/Options 363
A-Continuous mode 124
Add bookmark 142
Adding a new word (Own dictionary) . .309
Signal quality 85
Alarm notification actions . . 290, 295
Alarm setting 289
Alarm tone (pre-installed) 82
Alarm tone (stop) 289
Alarm (Timer) 284
Animation (create). 230
Animation (playback). 231
Anniversary (check). 287
Answer hold. 62
Auto Decomail-picture (download) . . 146
Auto power ON/OFF 45
Auto receive (Mail/Message) . . . 162
Auto redial as voice 67
Auto replay (i-motion) 152
Auto save set (Movie) 127
Auto save set (Still image) 123
Auto timer 128
Auto-display setting 148

Easy Search → p.4

You can find often-used functions and convenient functions in simple terms.

・Use microSD card p.243
・Exchange information with PC or other FOMA terminal p.255 Infrared data exchange/IC communication p.260 OBEX™ connection
・Listen to music p.267 Music Player/Music&Video Channel
・Use alarm p.284 Alarm
・Use as calculator p.295 Calculator
・Use FOMA terminal overseas p.331
・Update for the latest software p.377 Software Update
・Update for the latest security settings p.383 Scanning function

Index on the Cover → Cover

Refer to “Cover”, “Chapter title page” and “Description pages” sequentially to find the descriptions of the function you want to set. You can find the detailed table of contents on the chapter title page.

INSTRUCTION MANUAL

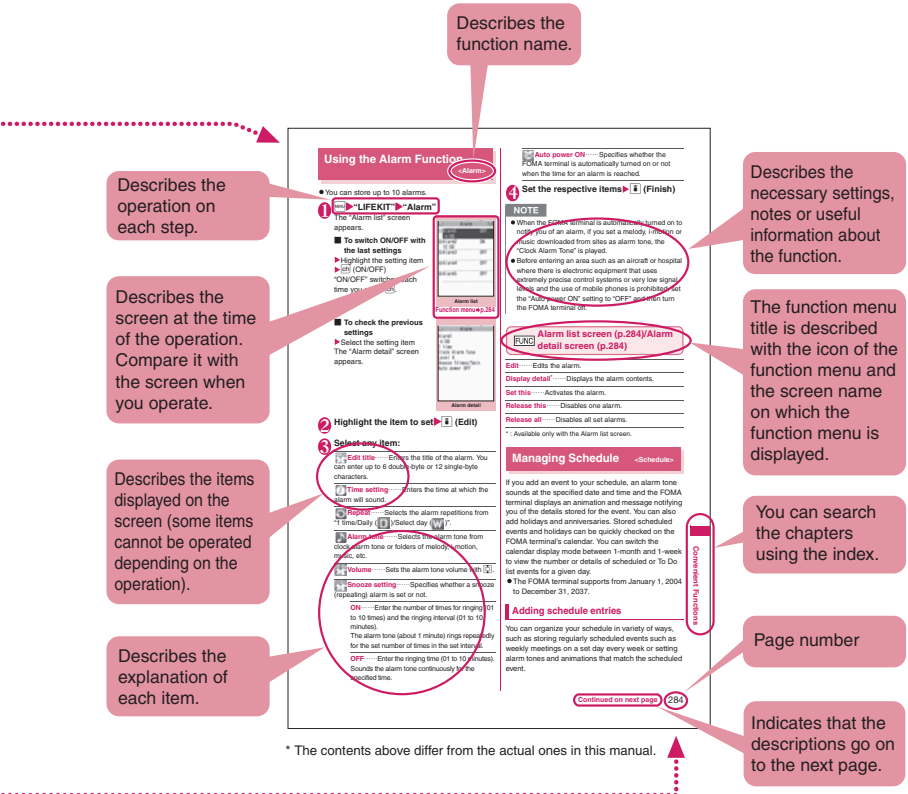
Music&Video Channel/ Music Playback
Convenient Functions
Character Entry
Network Services

Convenient Functions

Multi Access . . . . . Multi access 282
Multitask . . . . . Multitask 283
Assigning a Function to the FUNC Key . . . . . Holding down ch-key 284
Using the Alarm Function . . . . . Alarm 284
Adding To Do List Entries . . . . . To Do list 288
Setting the Alarm Mode . . . . . Alarm setting 289

* The contents above differ from the actual ones in this manual.

This manual uses illustrations and marks to explain how to operate the function so that you can use the FOMA terminal correctly.



* The contents above differ from the actual ones in this manual.

- The screens shown as examples in this manual are displayed when “English” is set for “バイリンガル” (Select language). Set “English” for “バイリンガル” (Select language) in advance. →p.45
- To view a sample screen easily, this manual adopts the color setting to white as background and black as font with “Stand-by display” set to “OFF”. In addition, “Style” is set to “24th clock” and “Size” is set to “Big” as the main clock description.
- Descriptions are basically based on the default settings, and screens displayed on the FOMA terminal may differ from the descriptions in this manual.
- A screen is used as an image in this manual. Some screens are zoomed in for explanation. Therefore they may differ from the actual ones.
- In this manual, “Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli compatible with IC card function” is described as “Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli”.
- In the operation explanation in this manual, simple key illustrations are used to indicate the operation to press the key.

Easy Search

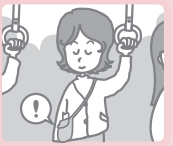
Find out a function with easy words from the Easy Search index below.

Useful functions for talking

- Show/Hide your caller ID p.46 Caller ID Notification
- Switch voice/videophone call during call p.50
- Adjust the volume during a call p.61 Volume
- Hold the current call p.62 Holding

When you cannot answer incoming call

- Hold the ringing call without answering p.62 On hold
- Notify that you cannot answer the call
  p.62 Public mode (Driving mode) p.63 Public mode (Power OFF)
- Have your party record voice/videophone message p.64 Record message



Change melody or illumination

- Adjust the ring volume p.61 Ring volume
- Set ring tone to specify party p.77 Ring tone/Image
- Change ring tone p.82 Select ring tone
- Set vibration to notify incoming call or mail p.84 Vibrator
- Mute keypad tone p.85 Keypad sound
- Set silent mode p.86 Manner mode
- Change illumination color or pattern p.92 Illumination set

Change/Understand display

- Mark (icon) on the display p.27 Display
- Switch menu display p.33 Simple Menu
- Change standby screen (wallpaper) p.88 Display setting
- Display calendar on the standby screen p.89
- Change font size p.93 Font

Master mail

- Send Deco-mail® p.158 Deco-mail®
- Send image or melody p.160 Attach file
- Sort and save mail automatically p.174 Auto-sort

Master camera

- Change the size of image to shoot p.122
- Display the shot p.225 My picture
- Save image on the microSD card p.249

Use your phone without worries

- Lock the FOMA terminal remotely when lost p.101 Omakase Lock*1
- Prevent others from viewing the phonebook p.103 Secret mode/Secret data only mode
- Reject unidentified calls p.114 Call setting w/o ID
- Reject calls from callers who are not stored in phonebook p.114 Reject unknown
- Save data such as phonebook in case of loss of data p.115 Data Security Service*2

*1: Omakase Lock is a pay service.
*2: Data Security Service is a pay service you need to apply for. (i-mode subscription is necessary to apply for this service.)

Master 1seg

- Watch 1seg p.210 Active 1Seg
- Record 1seg p.213 Record 1seg
- Program 1seg p.214 Booking program list/Timer recording list
- Change TV/sound settings p.215 User settings

Miscellaneous

- Read QR code or bar code p.129 Bar code reader
- Use microSD card p.243
- Exchange information with PC or other FOMA terminal p.255 Infrared data exchange/iC communication p.260 OBEX™ connection
- Listen to music p.267 Music Player/Music&Video Channel
- Use alarm p.284 Alarm
- Use as calculator p.295 Calculator
- Use FOMA terminal overseas p.331
- Update for the latest software p.377 Software Update
- Update for the latest security settings p.383 Scanning function

For mode information about other operation guides, see “How to refer to this manual”.→p.1
Also, “Quick Manual” instructs you how to operate the functions used often.→p.408

Contents

How to Refer to This Manual 1
Easy Search 4
Contents 6
Feature Preview of the FOMA SO706i 8
Mastering the FOMA SO706i!.....10
Precautions.....12
Handling with Care 18
Intellectual Property Right.....20
Package Contents 22

Before Using the Handset p.23	• Names and functions • How to view the display • Selecting the menu • Basic operations • FOMA card (UIM) • Attaching/Removing the battery pack • Charging • Turning on the FOMA terminal • Initial setting • Set time • Caller ID notification, etc.
Voice/Videophone Calls p.47	• Making a voice/videophone call • Switching between voice/videophone calls • Hands-free • Redial/Received calls • Chaku-moji • WORLD CALL • Receiving a voice/videophone call • Volume • Ring volume • Answer hold • Public mode (Driving mode/Power off) • Record message • Videophone settings, etc.
Phonebook p.69	• Add to phonebook • Group setting • Search phonebook • Editing/deleting phonebook entries • Ring tone/Image • Choku-Den • Data Security Service, etc.
Sound/Screen/Light Settings p.81	• Ring tone • Vibrator • Manner mode • Display setting • Shield veiw • Backlight • Display design • Changing menu display • Indicator display • Illumination set • Kisekae Tool, etc.
Security Settings p.99	• Security code • PIN code • Dial lock • Omakase Lock • Secret mode • Secret folder • Original lock • Keypad lock • IC card authentication • Side key guard • Self mode, etc.
Camera p.117	• Photo mode • Movie mode • Settings for shooting • Bar code reader • Text reader, etc.
i-mode/i-motion/ i-Channel p.135	• What is i-mode? • Viewing sites • How to view sites and operations • i-mode password • Internet access • Bookmark • Phone To/AV Phone To · Mail To · Web To · Media To • Downloading i-motion • Using i-Channel, etc.
Mail p.155	• What is i-mode mail? • Composing/Sending i-mode mail • Deco-mail® • Attaching files • Receiving mails • Check new messages • Replying/Forwarding mails • Saving attached files • Using mail boxes • Mail Setting • Message service • What is Early Warning “Area Mail”? • SMS, etc.
i-αppli p.185	• What is an i-αppli? • Downloading an i-αppli • Launching an i-αppli • Pre-installed software • i-αppli standby screen • Upgrading an i-αppli, etc.

Osaifu-Keitai/ ToruCa p.201	• What is Osaifu-Keitai? • What is iC transfer service? • Using Osaifu-Keitai • What is ToruCa? • Acquiring ToruCa • Viewing ToruCa • IC card lock, etc.
1seg p.207	• What is 1seg? • Channel setting • Viewing 1seg • Data broadcasting • Booking program/Timer recording • 1seg settings, etc.
Full Browser p.217	• Displaying website designed for PC • Full Browser settings, etc.
Data Display/Edit/ Management p.223	• Data box • Still image • Movie/i-motion • Playing video • Chara-den • Melody • Kisekae Tool • microSD card • Movable contents • UIM operation • Infrared data exchange/iC communication • Viewing PDF data • Viewing documents, etc.
Music&Video Channel/Music Playback p.267	• What is Music&Video Channel? • Downloading Chaku-Uta-Full® • Playing music • Using playlist • Using the Music Player, etc. * "Chaku-Uta-Full" is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.
Convenient Functions p.281	• Multi access • Multitask • Alarm • Schedule • To Do list • Alarm setting • My profile • Checking Call data • Calculator • Text memo • Dictionary • Earphone/microphone with switch • Reset settings • Initialize, etc.
Character Entry p.301	• Character entry • 5-touch input • Fixed common phrases • Copying/cutting/pasting text • Own dictionary • Clear learning record • Download dictionary • 2-touch, etc.
Network Services p.311	• Voice Mail service • Call Waiting • Call Forwarding service • Nuisance Call Blocking • Caller ID Request service • Dual Network Service • 2in1, etc.
PC Connection p.325	• Data communication available for the FOMA terminal, etc. * The details are described in "Manual for PC Connection" (PDF format) in the provided CD-ROM.
Overseas Use p.331	• WORLD WING • Available overseas service • Checking before using overseas • Making/Receiving a call abroad • NW search mode, etc.
Appendix/External Devices/ Troubleshooting p.339	• Menu function list • Character assignment to dial keys • Symbols/pictographs/face marks/fixed common phrases list • Multi access/Multitask combination patterns • Options/Accessories • Troubleshooting • Software Update • Specifications, etc.
Index/Quick Manual p.395	• Index • Quick Manual • Quick Manual (For Overseas Use)

Feature Preview of the FOMA SO706i

FOMA is the name of DOCOMO's service based on the W-CDMA system approved as one of the global standards for third-generation mobile telecommunication systems (IMT-2000).

i-mode
i-mode is an online service that you can use to send e-mail as well as using the useful information from the i-mode menu site (program) and i-mode compatible website.

●●●●● Features of SO706i ●●●●●

■ i-mode mail/Deco-mail®/Deco-mail® pictograph →pp.156, 158

In addition to the message body, you can attach pictures or video clips. As the FOMA terminal is compatible with Deco-mail®/Deco-mail® pictograph, you can change the character color, size, or background color of the message body or insert images or moving pictographs.

■ International roaming →p.332

The FOMA terminal, phone number and mail address you use in Japan are also available overseas (GSM/3G areas). You can use voice call, videophone call, i-mode, i-mode mail, SMS and network services.

■ High-speed communication

The data is received at the maximum speed of 3.6 Mbps and sent at the maximum speed of 384 kbps in the FOMA high speed communication area.

* 3.6M bps and 384K bps are maximum values on technical standards, and the actual communication speed varies depending on the network congestion or environment. When out of FOMA HIGH-SPEED area or connecting to an access point such as mopera incompatible with HIGH-SPEED, data are sent and received at 384K bps max.

■ Mega i-αppli/Chokkan game (touchy-feely game) →p.185

You can automatically receive updated stock prices, weather information, etc., and play games. As the FOMA terminal supports chokkan games, you can enjoy touchy-feely operations when playing games by waving/shaking the handset or talking.

■ Chaku-Uta-Full®/Uta-hodai/Music&Video Channel*/Video clip →pp.272, 267, 151

*: This is a pay service you need to apply for.
You can download the entire track (Chaku-Uta-Full®) and use another service (Uta-hodai) that you can download the entire track as many as you want with fixed monthly charge.
Music&Video Channel is also available, that you can enjoy the music/video programs downloaded by the automatic operation at night time only by setting it beforehand. The FOMA terminal also supports i-motion up to 10M bytes, you can enjoy music clips of the entire track or video clips.

■ Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa →pp.195, 201

By downloading an Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli, you can transmit electric money from the site into the IC card in your FOMA terminal or check the accountant balance or transaction history. The i-αppli of the DOCOMO credit service "DCMX" is pre-installed in your FOMA terminal. "iC transfer service" is also supported so that you can easily move your IC card data to a new terminal when replacing your FOMA terminal.
ToruCa can be acquired via a reader/writer unit or websites and easily exchanged via mail or Infrared data exchange.

■ Kisekae Tool →p.97

Favorite standby screen or menu screen can be replaced at a time. SO706i enables the change of menu sequence in high use and customization of the menu screen to your favor.

●●●●● Wide variety of functions ●●●●●

Colorful illuminations →p.92

3 lamps, 11 patterns and 20 color combinations offer favorites illuminations.
Time signal can be received using illumination.

Style-Up® panel

Style-Up® panel is adopted. You can enjoy changing the optional panel to your moods.
Also, it is available to download panel-fit Kisekae Tool from "PlayNow" by SO.

"POBox Pro" and handy text entry →p.301

The prediction conversion function "POBox Pro" (Predictive Operation Based On eXample Pro) is installed. Pressing [9] for 1 second or longer moves the candidates in "POBOx" on a line basis and selects a target word. Press and hold the dial keys and you can switch the character assigned to the dial keys consecutively such as "a→b→c→A→B→C→2→…".

Stand-by books →p.89

Flash contents with a difference are preinstalled. Every time you open the standby screen, various information such as bits of knowledge, general knowledge and picture books appear. Select your favorite contents from DATA BOX▶My picture▶Pre-installed and set it to the standby screen for your enjoyment.

Contents useful when traveling overseas →pp.89, 298

Contains Flash content "TalkMan" useful for foreign language conversation. The content can be downloaded from "PlayNow" by SO. Also contains "地球の歩き方" (Chikyu-no Arukikata) and "世界遺産" (World Heritage) as stand-by books, supporting overseas travel.

Dictionary →p.296

Japanese, English-Japanese and Japanese-English dictionaries are available.

Wide scale display

The approximately 2.8-inch high-resolution display is adopted. This recreates the still images or videos in bright and vivid colors.

Camera →p.117

Use the camera with the effective pixels 2 million (maximum recorded pixels 1.9 million) to take 2M (1,200 × 1,600) pictures.

microSD card →pp.243, 252

Your FOMA terminal supports the microSD card where you can copy data such as phonebook entries, mail messages and images from the FOMA terminal storage and view them on the display.
Connecting the FOMA terminal with PC enables you to use it as a reader/writer for the microSD card.

Full Browser →p.217

You can access websites for PC to view more information.

PDF viewer/Document viewer →pp.261, 263

- With the PDF viewer, you can easily view useful information such as map, catalogue or time table on your i-mode terminal.
- The document viewer allows you to view Microsoft® Word, Microsoft® Excel and Microsoft® PowerPoint files.

Infrared data exchange or Infrared remote control →pp.257, 261

You can exchange data with other FOMA terminals using infrared communication. You can also operate the devices such as a TV which supports the infrared remote control.

Multi access/Multitask →pp.282, 283

You can use voice phone, packet communication and SMS simultaneously (Multi access). You can activate multiple functions and use them simultaneously by switching them (Multitask).

●●●●● Security ●●●●●

Omakase Lock →p.102

You can lock your FOMA terminal if you lost it, and cancel lock on your request. For inquiries, see the back cover of this manual.

* Omakase Lock service is charged. However, it shall be free of charge when you subscribe to this service at the same time or during the period that you suspend the subscription of the FOMA terminal.
* Omakase Lock is a service to lock the FOMA terminal at the subscriber's request. If the subscriber and user are different, the FOMA terminal may be locked on the subscriber's request.

Data Security Service →p.115

Back up the Phonebook and other data on your FOMA terminal at Data Center on the i-mode network to be able to smoothly restore data if you lose your FOMA terminal, etc. You can edit or manage data stored at Data Center using a PC and restore edited data on the FOMA terminal.

* For precautions and usage instructions on "Data Security Service", see "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version". For inquiries, see the back of this manual.
* This is a pay service you need to subscribe to.

●●●●● Wide variety of network services (→p.311) ●●●●●

- Voice Mail (charged)*
- Call Waiting (charged)*
- Call Forwarding (free)*
- Nuisance Call Blocking (free)
- Caller ID Request (free)*
- Dual Network (charged)*
- English Guidance (free)
- Multi Number (charged)*
- 2in1(charged)*

*: You need to apply for.

Mastering the FOMA SO706i!

Send and receive real-time movie while talking
Videophone→p.49

You can talk to the other party seeing images.
Your FOMA terminal is set to emit other party's voice through the speaker by default so that you can start talking immediately when making or answering a call. Furthermore, you can change the call mode from voice to videophone without having to end the call.

* FOMA SO706i does not contain front camera. A substitute image (Chara-den) or rear camera image will be sent to the other party.

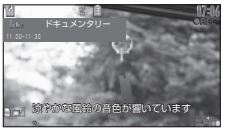
Image at the other side

Image at your side

Illustrations Dick Bruna © copyright Mercis bv, 1953-2008 www.miffy.com

Digital terrestrial TV service
1seg→p.207

Enjoy viewing 1seg (mobile digital terrestrial TV service).
View subtitles or data broadcast, or record programs you are viewing.
Program booking and timer recording are also supported.



The telop appears on the standby screen when the latest information is distributed
i-Channel→p.153

You can receive news or weather report as graphical information.
You can also select optional channels on the channel list screen to receive rich, detailed information which was created by Flash (more detail→p.140).

* This is a pay service you need to apply for.

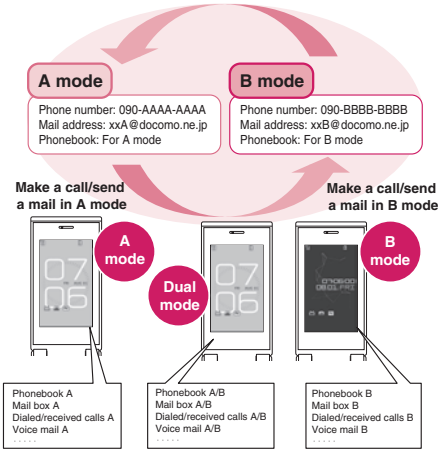
Notify the arrival of your phone call with an animation before answering
Chaku-moji→p.55

When calling someone, you can show a message on the screen of the other party's phone. The other party can see your business or feeling from the message before answering the call.

Use 2 phone numbers and e-mail addresses for your FOMA terminal
2in1 →p.320

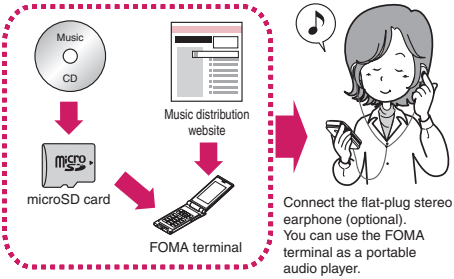
You can separately use 2 phone numbers and 2 mail addresses on your FOMA terminal as if you have 2 terminals. You can manage the data in your FOMA terminal, such as Phonebook, Mail boxes, Dialed calls or standby screen, separately in "A mode" and "B mode", or all together of A/B mode in "Dual mode".

* Subscription is required (Charged).



"Napster®" compatible
Music Player →p.277

"Napster®" service provides you of copying songs downloaded from sites or on music CDs to the microSD card using a PC and play music on the FOMA terminal. Since "Chaku-Uta-Full®" is supported, you can download the entire track from an online music distribution site to play it. Other functions include BGM playback, which allows you to listen to music while you use other functions, display of album cover images and lyric sheets, and creation of the playlist on the FOMA terminal. You can also play the i-motion and use Music&Video Channel that downloads the specified program automatically during the night.



Set display design simultaneously
Kisekae Tool/Direct Menu →p.97

Installed "ダイレクトメニュー" (Direct menu) allows you to access often-used functions/services easily. Menus are categorized into 4 and located vertically and horizontally. "LAST10" button is located at the center and automatically displays 10 previously-used functions/services. The 5 categories link to the multi-function key, and are easy to memorize and operate.

: SERVICES (Mail, i-mode, i-αppli, Full Browser, Osaifu-Keitai, 1seg, etc.)
: TOOLS (Alarm, Caluculator, Text memo, Schedule, Receive Ir data, etc.)
: SETTINGS (Settings, Network services, My profile)
: DATABOX (My picture, etc.)
: LAST10 (10 previously-used menu items appear)

* Functions are stored at the time of purchase.

Menus

Precautions
(ALWAYS FOLLOW THESE DIRECTIONS)

■ To ensure that you use your FOMA terminal correctly, read the Precautions carefully before use. Keep this manual after reading for future reference.

■ The precautions must be observed at all times since they contain the information intended to prevent the bodily injuries or the damage to the property.

■ The following symbols indicate the different degrees of injuries and damage that may occur if the information provided is not observed and the FOMA terminal is used incorrectly:

⚠ DANGER	Indicates that the death or serious bodily injury may result directly and immediately from the improper use.
⚠ WARNING	Indicates that the death or serious bodily injury may result from the improper use.
⚠ CAUTION	Indicates that the bodily injury and/or damage to the property may result from the improper use.

■ The following symbols indicate the specific directions:

Don't	Indicates that it is prohibited.
No disassembly	Indicates that it must not be disassembled.
No wet hands	Indicates that you must not touch it with your wet hand.
No liquids	Indicates that it must not be used near the water, which means that you must not wet it.
Do	Indicates that you must do it following the instructions.
Unplug	Indicates that you must unplug the power code from the outlet.

■ Safety Precautions are explained in the following categories:

1. Handling the FOMA terminal, Battery Pack, Adapter (including the Charger) and FOMA card (Common) 12
2. Handling the FOMA terminal 13
3. Handling the Battery Pack 15
4. Handling the Adapter (including the Charger) 16
5. Handling the FOMA card (UIM) 17
6. Handling Mobile Phones near Electronic Medical Equipment 17

1. Handling the FOMA terminal, Battery Pack, Adapter (including the Charger) and FOMA card (Common)

⚠ DANGER

Don't

Do not use, keep or leave the devices in locations subject to high temperatures, such as near the fire or heater, in direct sunlight or inside a car on a hot day.
This may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite, cause the devices to malfunction or be deformed, or suffer performance loss and a reduced service life. Also, this may cause a part of the case to become hot and burn you.

No disassembly

Do not disassemble or rebuild. Also, do not solder the devices.
This may cause fire, injury, electric shock or malfunction.
This also may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.

No liquids

Do not wet the devices.
Exposing the FOMA terminal and other devices to liquids such as water or pet urine may cause overheating, electric shock, fire, malfunction, injury, etc. Be careful where and how you use the devices.

Do

Use the battery pack and adapter (including the charger) specified by NTT DOCOMO for the FOMA terminal.
Using the devices other than those specified by NTT DOCOMO Group may cause the FOMA terminal, battery pack and other devices to leak, overheat, explode, ignite or malfunction.

Battery Pack SO03
Desktop Holder SO11
FOMA AC Adapter 01/02
FOMA DC Adapter 01/02
FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global use
FOMA Dry Battery Adapter 01
FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02
FOMA Portable Charging Adapter 01

* For the information on other compatible products, contact the NTT DOCOMO shop or service counter.

⚠WARNING

Don't

Do not place the FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapters (including the charger) or FOMA card in cooking appliances such as microwave ovens or in a pressure cooker.
This may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite, cause the FOMA terminal or adapter (including the charger) to overheat, smoke or ignite, or damage the IC.

Don't

Do not shock or throw the FOMA terminal.
This may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite, or cause the devices to malfunction or ignite.

Don't

Keep the conductive foreign materials (metal, pencil lead, etc.) away from the charge terminal or external connector. Do not insert those matters inside.
This may result in the short-circuit causing the FOMA terminal to ignite or malfunction.

Do

Turn off the FOMA terminal, when you are near the flammable gas such as at the gas station. Do not also charge. It may cause to ignite to the gas.
Turn off the FOMA terminal, when you use Osaifu-keitai at the gas station (if IC card lock is set, turn the FOMA Terminal off after lock is released).

Do

If you find extraordinary happenings, such as an unusual odor, overheating, discoloration or deformation during the use, charge or storage, make sure to:
1. **Unplug the power code from the power outlet or the cigar lighter outlet.**
2. **Turn off the FOMA terminal.**
3. **Remove the battery pack from the FOMA terminal.**

Continuing to use or charge the FOMA terminal may cause it to overheat, explode, ignite or leak of battery.

⚠CAUTION

Don't

Do not leave the FOMA terminal on a slope or unstable surface.
This may fall the FOMA terminal and cause the injury or malfunction.

Don't

Keep the FOMA terminal away from the humid, dusty or hot places.
This may cause malfunction.

Do

If your child uses the FOMA terminal, instruct him/her how to use it. Make sure that he/she always uses the FOMA terminal correctly as you instruct.
Improper usage could result in the bodily injury.

Do

Keep the FOMA terminal out of young children's reach.
A young child may swallow it or suffer from the injury.

Do

Pay a special attention when you use the FOMA terminal connected to the adapter (including the charger) for a long duration.
If you use i-αppli or videophone or view 1seg for a long time while charging the FOMA terminal, the temperature of the FOMA terminal, battery pack or adapter (including charger) may rise. If you touch the warm part of these devices for a long period of time, it may cause redness, itch, skin irritation, or burns depending on your constitution or physical condition.

2. Handling the FOMA terminal

⚠WARNING

Don't

Do not direct the infrared data port towards your or another person's eyes.
This may cause the eye injury. Do not aim or direct the infrared data port towards another infrared device as this may interfere with the operation of the device.

Don't

Do not put the FOMA terminal on the dashboard, etc. as a problem may occur due to air bag inflation.
The air bag inflation may cause the FOMA terminal to hit you or another person, which may lead to injury, malfunction, breakage, etc.

Don't

If you are wearing electronic medical equipment, do not put the FOMA terminal in your breast pocket or in the inside pocket.
Using the FOMA terminal in close proximity to electronic medical equipment may cause the equipment to malfunction.

Continued on next page

Don't

Do not put fluids such as water or objects such as pieces of metal or flammable materials into the FOMA card inserting slots or microSD card slots inside of the FOMA terminal.
Such actions could cause fire, electric shock or malfunction.

Do

Turn off the FOMA terminal in a place where it is prohibited to use the mobile phone, such as in an airplane or in a hospital.
This may affect the electric or medical equipment. If the FOMA terminal is set with the Auto power function, make sure to disable the function before turning off the FOMA terminal.
Follow the instructions provided by the medical facility about using the mobile phone.
If you use the phone in an airplane, which is prohibited, you may be punished by law.

Do

Make sure to hold the FOMA terminal off your ear and keep enough distance from it when you talk in the handsfree mode. When you also play games or music with an earphone-microphone connected to the FOMA terminal, adjust the volume properly.
If the volume is too high, it may cause an auditory disturbance.
Also, it may cause an accident if you have difficulty in hearing the sound of your surroundings.

Do

If you have a weak heart, take precautions when setting the Vibrator or Ring volume.
This may affect your heart.

Do

If you hear thunder while using the FOMA terminal outdoors, immediately turn off the FOMA terminal and take shelter in a safe location.
There is a risk of being struck by the lightning and suffering an electric shock.

Do

Turn off the FOMA terminal near the electric equipment using the high-precision control or weak signals.
This may interfere with the operation of sensitive electronic equipment.

* Take great care on the following electric devices:

Hearing aids, implantable cardiac pacemakers, implantable cardioverter-defibrillators, and other electronic medical equipment, fire alarms, automatic doors and other equipment controlled by electronic signals.
If you use an implantable cardiac pacemaker, implantable cardioverter-defibrillator or other electronic medical equipment, contact the respective manufacturer or vendor to check whether the operation of the equipment is affected by radio waves.

Do

If the display or camera lens is broken, be careful of the broken glass and the inside of exposed FOMA terminal.
The surface of the display or camera lens is covered by a plastic panel to minimize the possibility of glass scattering. However, touching the broken or exposed parts cause the injury.

⚠CAUTION

Don't

Do not swing the FOMA terminal by its strap or other parts.
The FOMA terminal may strike you or others around you, resulting in body injury, malfunction or damage to the FOMA terminal or other property.

Don't

When you use the motion tracking, be sure to confirm surrounding safety, grasp the FOMA terminal firmly and do not swing the FOMA terminal more than the necessity.
Motion tracking is a function to operate the FOMA terminal by inclining and shaking it. It hits the person and others because of the shake too much, and there is a possibility of causing a serious accident and damage.

Don't

With metallic straps or other metallic objects in the FOMA terminal and applying the motion tracking, be sure to not hit the person or others.
It causes injury, malfunction or breakage.

Don't

Do not let the FOMA terminal come close to or sandwich magnetic cards, etc. between the FOMA terminal.
The magnetic data stored on cash cards, credit cards, telephone cards, floppy disks, etc. may be erased.

Don't

Do not let the FOMA terminal come close to magnetism.
If strong magnetism is brought close, operation may fail.

Don't

If the display is broken and the liquid crystal leaks, do not take it in, draw it in or put it on your skin.
If the liquid crystal comes into your eyes or mouth, immediately rinse your eyes or mouth with clean water and see a doctor.
If the liquid crystal adheres to your skin or clothing, immediately wipe it off with alcohol and rinse it off with water and soap.
It may cause a loss of eyesight or damage your skin.

Don't

When the FOMA terminal plays the ring tone or plays a melody, do not bring the speaker close to your ear.
It may cause a hearing defect.

Do

In some types of vehicle, using the FOMA terminal in the vehicle may interfere with the operation of the vehicle's electronic equipment.
Do not use the FOMA terminal if the terminal may impair the safe driving.

Do

Using the FOMA terminal may cause skin irritations such as itch, rashes or eczema. If this occurs, immediately stop using the FOMA terminal and see a doctor.
Metal components are used for the following parts.

Parts	Material	Finish
Multifunction key	PC resin	Aluminum deposition + UV coating
Sidekeys		
Illumination parts		Tin deposition + UV coating
Camera parts	ABS resin	Tin deposition + UV coating
Hinge parts	Nickel	Chromium plating
Charging terminal (contact terminal for desktop holder)	Phosphorus bronze	Nickel + Gold plate

Do

Take care not to pinch your finger or strap when opening or folding the FOMA terminal.
It cause injury or breakage.

Do

When viewing 1seg programs, keep a proper distance from the display in a bright place.
Failure to observe this precaution may cause visual deterioration.

3. Handling the Battery Pack

■ Refer to the information shown on the battery pack label to check the type of battery pack you have.

Display	Battery type
Li-ion00	Lithium-ion

⚠DANGER

Don't

Do not let wire or other metals touch the terminal. Also, do not carry or store the battery pack with metallic necklaces, etc.
This may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.

Don't

If you have difficulty in attaching the battery pack to the FOMA terminal, do not use the excessive pressure to force the battery into place. Check that the battery pack is facing in the correct direction before you try to attach it.
This may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.

Don't

Do not throw the battery pack into a fire.
This may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.

Don't

Do not puncture the battery pack, hit it with a hammer or step on it.
This may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.

Do

If battery fluid comes into your eyes, do not rub your eyes but immediately rinse your eyes with clean water and see a doctor.
This may result in loss of eyesight.

⚠WARNING

Don't

If a battery pack malfunction is found due to an external shock such as deformation or damage by a fall, immediately stop using the FOMA terminal.
This may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite, or cause the devices to malfunction or ignite.

Do

If the battery pack is not fully charged after the specified charging time has elapsed, stop charging.
This may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite.

Do

If the battery pack leaks or emits an unusual odor, stop using it immediately and move it away from any flame or fire.
The battery fluid is flammable and could ignite, causing a fire or explosion.

Do

Be sure that your pet doesn't bite to the battery pack.
This may cause the battery pack to leak, overheat, explode or ignite, or cause the devices to malfunction or ignite.

⚠CAUTION

Don't

Do not dispose of used battery packs with ordinary garbage.
This causes a fire and constitute an environmental hazard. Apply insulation tape to the terminal of used battery pack and return it to the NTT DOCOMO shop or service counter, or dispose the battery pack in accordance with your local regulations.

Continued on next page

Don't

Do not charge the wet battery pack.
This causes the battery pack to overheat, ignite, or explode.

Do

If battery fluid comes into contact with your skin or clothing, stop using the FOMA terminal immediately and rinse it off with clean water.
Battery fluid is harmful to your skin.

4. Handling the Adapter (including the Charger)

⚠WARNING

Don't

Do not use the adapter (including charger) of which the cord or power cord is damaged.
This may cause electric shock, overheat or fire.

Don't

Do not use the AC adapter or desktop holder in humid locations such as bathroom.
This may cause an electric shock.

Don't

The DC adapter must be used only for vehicles with a negative ground. Do not use the adapter in positively grounded vehicles.
This may cause a fire.

Don't

Do not touch the FOMA terminal, adapter (including charger) when you hear a crash of thunder.
There is a risk of being struck by the lightning and suffering an electric shock.

Don't

Do not short-circuit the charging terminal when the adapter or charger is plugged to the power outlet or the socket in a vehicle. Also, do not let the charging terminal contact with your body (hand, finger, etc.).
This may cause fire, malfunction, electric shock or injury.

Don't

Place the charger or desktop holder on a stable surface during charging. Also, do not cover or wrap the charger or desktop holder with clothing or bedding.
This may cause the FOMA terminal to fall out of the charger or heat to build up, resulting in a fire or malfunction.

Don't

Do not put heavy objects on the power cord of the adapter (including charger).
This may cause electric shock or fire.

No wet hands

Do not touch the power cords of the adapter (including charger) or the power outlet with wet hands.
This may cause an electric shock.

Do

Use the specified power supply and voltage.
Using the adapters with incorrect voltage may cause a fire or malfunction. Use the AC adapter for global use to charge the terminal overseas.
AC adapter: AC 100V
DC adapter:
DC12V/24V (specific to vehicle with negative ground)
AC Adapter for global use:
100V to 240V AC (should be plugged to AC power outlet for home use only)

Do

If the fuse in the DC adapter blows, always replace it with the specified type of fuse.
Using the unspecified fuse may cause a fire or malfunction.
Refer to the respective manuals for the information on the specified fuse.

Do

Wipe off any dust on the plug.
This may cause a fire.

Do

When plugging the AC adapter into a power outlet, make sure that no metallic straps or other metallic objects are caught between the plug and the socket.
This may result in an electric shock, short-circuit or fire.

Do

Always grasp the plug when unplugging the adapter or charger from the power outlet or cigar lighter socket. Do not pull the cord itself.
Pulling the cord may damage the cord and cause an electric shock or fire.

Unplug

Unplug the power code from the power outlet when it will be left unused for a long period.
This may cause electrical shock, fire or malfunction.

Unplug

If any water or other liquid gets into the adapter or charger, immediately unplug it from the power outlet or socket.
This may cause an electric shock, smoke emission or fire.

Unplug

Unplug the adapter or charger from the power outlet or cigar lighter socket before cleaning.
This may cause an electric shock.

5. Handling the FOMA card

⚠CAUTION

Do

Be careful about a cut surface when dismounting the FOMA card (IC part).
This may injure your hands or fingers.

6. Handling Mobile Phones near Electronic Medical Equipment

■ The following precautions conform to the guidelines drawn up during the Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference Japan, regarding how to protect electronic medical equipment from radio waves emitted by mobile phones.

⚠WARNING

Do

Observe the following in hospitals or other medical facilities:

- Do not take your FOMA terminal into operating rooms, ICUs (Intensive Care Units) or CCUs (Coronary Care Units).
- Turn off your FOMA terminal inside hospital wards.
- Turn off the FOMA terminal even if you are in a hospital lobby when electronic medical equipments are in use nearby.
- If a medical facility gives specific instructions prohibiting you from carrying or using mobile phones, follow those instructions.
- If the FOMA terminal is set with the Auto power function, make sure to disable the function before turning off the FOMA terminal.

Do

Turn off the FOMA terminal in crowded places such as rush-hour trains in case somebody nearby is using an implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter-defibrillator.
Radio waves may affect the operation of implantable cardiac pacemakers or implantable cardioverter-defibrillators.

Do

If you use an implantable cardiac pacemaker or implantable cardioverter-defibrillator, keep the FOMA terminal at least 22 cm away from the devices.
Radio waves may affect the operation of implantable cardiac pacemakers or implantable cardioverter-defibrillators.

Do

If you use the electronic medical equipment other than implantable cardiac pacemakers or implantable cardioverter-defibrillators out of the medical facility due to the home treatment, etc,, consult the respective manufacturers for the information about the effects of radio waves on the equipment.
Radio waves may affect the operations of the electronic medical equipment.

Handling with Care

General Notes

- **Do not water the devices.**
  The FOMA terminal, battery pack, adapter (including the charger) and the FOMA card (UIM) are not water-proof. Do not use them in humid locations such as bathrooms, and avoid exposing them to rain. If you carry your FOMA terminal close to your skin, sweat may cause internal components to corrode and result in a malfunction. If the problem is found to be due to moisture, it will not be covered by the warranty and in some cases may be irreparable. Even if it can be fixed, you will be charged since the damage is not covered by the warranty.
- **Wipe with a soft, dry cloth (such as a cloth for glasses).**
  - The surface of the FOMA terminal's LCD has a specific coating to improve the visibility of the color display. Rubbing the LCD of the FOMA terminal with a dry cloth to clean it may scratch the LCD surface. Handle the FOMA terminal carefully and clean it using a soft dry cloth (of a type used for eyeglasses). The LCD coating may peel off or stain if moisture or soiling is left on the surface for a long period.
  - Never use chemicals such as alcohol, thinners, benzene or detergents as these agents may erase the printing on the FOMA terminal or cause discoloration.
- **Occasionally clean the connection terminals with a dry cotton bud.**
  Soiled connection terminals may result in poor connections and loss of power. Also, as it may cause insufficient charging, clean the terminal with a dry cloth or cotton bud when it is dirty.
- **Do not place the FOMA terminal near an air conditioning vent.**
  Condensation may form due to rapid changes in temperature, and this may cause internal corrosion and malfunction.
- **Do not apply an excessive pressure or weight to the FOMA terminal and battery pack.**
  Do not put the FOMA terminal in a bag filled with many objects or in the hip pocket of clothing as you sit down. This may result in faults or damage to the LCD, other internal components or battery pack. When an external device is connected to external connector, it may cause connecting breakage or malfunction.
- **Read the separate manuals supplied with the FOMA terminal, adapter and charger carefully.**
- **Do not scrabble the display with metallic objects.**
  This may cause scratch, malfunction or damage.

Handling the FOMA Terminal

- **Avoid using the FOMA terminal in extremely high or low temperatures.**
  Use the FOMA card within a temperature range between 5°C and 35°C with humidity between 45% and 85%.
- **Using the FOMA terminal close to ordinary phones, TVs or radios may affect the operation of such devices. Use the FOMA terminal away from such devices.**
- **It is your responsibility to keep a separate record of all data stored on your FOMA terminal.**
  Under no circumstances shall NTT DOCOMO be liable for any loss or damage to the data stored on your FOMA terminal.
- **When connecting an external device to the external connector (Earphone/microphone terminal), do not plug inclined in the connector or pull the code.**
  This may cause malfunction or damage.
- **Do not fold the FOMA terminal with its strap caught between the folding parts.**
  This may cause malfunction or damage.
- **It is normal for the FOMA terminal to become warm while being used or charged. It is not a malfunction and you can keep on using.**
- **Do not leave the camera exposed to direct sunlight.**
  This may discolor or burn the element.
- **Usually fit the external connector cap and microSD card slot cap before use.**
  Failing to fit these covers may cause the FOMA terminal to malfunction due to the dust or water getting in.
- **Do not use FOMA terminal when the back cover is removed.**
  This may cause of removing the battery pack, malfunction or damage.
- **Do not put a sticker with an extreme thickness, etc. on the face of the display or keys.**
  This may cause malfunction.
- **Do not remove the microSD card or turn off the FOMA terminal when using the microSD card.**
  Otherwise, loss of data or malfunction may result.

Handling the Battery Pack

- **The battery pack is consumable.**
  If the battery pack does not work for enough time even when it is fully charged, it is time to exchange it. Exchange it for a specified new battery pack.
- **Charge the battery pack within the proper ambient temperature range (5°C to 35°C).**
- **Make sure to charge the battery when you use the FOMA terminal for the first time or if you have not used it for a long period of time.**

- **The available operating time of the battery pack depends on the conditions in which you use it and the condition of the battery pack itself.**
- **When the life of the battery pack is near end, the battery pack may expand a little according to the usage condition, but this is not a malfunction.**
- **Do not keep or leave the battery pack empty.**
  The performance and life of the battery pack may be deteriorated.

Handling the Adapter (including the Charger)

- **Charge the battery pack within the proper ambient temperature range (5°C to 35°C).**
- **Do not charge the battery pack in the following places:**
  - In a humid, dusty or shaky place
  - Near your home phone, TV or radio
- **It is normal for the adapter or charger to become warm while being charged. It is not a malfunction and you can keep on using.**
- **Do not use the DC adapter to charge the battery pack when the car engine is not running.**
  This may drain the car battery.
- **If you use an electrical outlet with a disconnection prevention mechanism, follow the instructions of the user's manual of the outlet.**
- **Do not shock the adapter or charger. Do not deform the charging terminal.**
  This may cause malfunction.

Handling the FOMA card

- **Do not apply unnecessary force to attach or remove the FOMA card.**
- **It is normal for the FOMA card to become warm while being used. It is not a malfunction and you can keep on using.**
- **The warranty does not cover damage caused by inserting the FOMA card into some other type of IC Card reader/writer.**
- **Always keep the IC part clean.**
- **Wipe with a soft, dry cloth (such as a cloth for glasses).**
- **It is the user's responsibility to keep a separate record of all data stored on your FOMA card.**
  Under no circumstances shall NTT DOCOMO be liable for any loss or damage to the data stored on your FOMA terminal.
- **To preserve the environment, take discarded FOMA card to the NTT DOCOMO shop or service counter.**
- **Avoid using the FOMA card in extremely high or low temperatures.**
- **Do not damage, scratch, touch imprudently, or short circuit the IC.**
  Otherwise, loss of data or malfunction may result.
- **Be careful not to drop the FOMA card or apply an impact to it.**
  This may cause malfunction.
- **Do not bend the FOMA card or place a heavy object on it.**
  This may cause malfunction.
- **Do not attach the FOMA card to the FOMA terminal with a label or sticker is pasted.**
  This may cause malfunction.

Handling the FeliCa Reader/Writer

- **The FeliCa reader/writer function of the FOMA terminal uses very weak radio waves that require no licensing of radio stations.**
- **The 13.56MHz frequency band is used. If there is another reader/writer around, keep enough distance between the FOMA terminal and that reader/writer. Also, make sure that there is no radio equipment using the same frequency band nearby.**

Caution

- **Do not use the altered FOMA terminal. Using the altered device is a violation of the Radio Law.**
  The FOMA terminal is certified to conform to technical regulations for specified radio equipments that are based on the Radio Law, and "Technical Conformity Mark" is affixed on the model name seal as the certification. If you remove the screw and alter inside of the FOMA terminal, the technical regulations conformity certification becomes invalid. Do not use the FOMA terminal with the certification invalid, as it is a violation of the Radio Law.
- **Be careful when you use the FOMA terminal while driving a vehicle.**
  The penalty is imposed on using a mobile phone while driving. Unwillingly receiving a call, use the Hands-free to tell the caller that you will call back, then stop the car in a safe place before using the phone.
- **Use the FeliCa reader/writer function in Japan.**
  The FeliCa reader/writer function of the FOMA terminal complies with radio standard in Japan. You may be punished if you use it overseas.
- **Use the IC card authentication function in Japan.**
  The IC card authentication function of the FOMA terminal complies with radio standard in Japan and is certified. You may be punished if you use it overseas.

Intellectual Property Right

Copyright and Portrait Right

It is prohibited to duplicate, modify or publicly transmit content such as text, images, music or software that was photographed using the FOMA terminal or downloaded from Internet website and that is subject to third-party copyright without the permission of the copyright folder, except where the duplication or quoting of the content for personal use is permitted under copyright law.
It may be prohibited to shoot or record the stage performance, entertainment or exhibition even if it is for personal use.
Shooting a photo of someone by the FOMA terminal without his or her permission, or displaying a photo of someone shot by the FOMA terminal on the website without his or her permission is a breach of portrait right.

Trademarks

- “FOMA”, “mova”, “i-mode”, “i-αppli”, “i-αppli DX”, “i-motion”, “Deco-mail®”, “Chaku-motion”, “Chara-den”, “ToruCa”, “mopera”, “mopera U”, “WORLD CALL”, “Dual Network”, “FirstPass”, “visualnet”, “V-live”, “i-Channel”, “DCMX”, “iD”, “Security Scan”, “i-shot”, “i-motion mail”, “i-area”, “Short Mail”, “WORLD WING”, “Public mode”, “DoPa”, “sigmarion”, “musea”, “IMCS”, “OFFICEED”, “2in1”, “FOMA” logo, “i-mode” logo, “i-αppli” logo, “ToruCa” logo, “DCMX” logo, “iD” logo and “HIGH-SPEED” logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of NTT DOCOMO, Inc.
- Free Dial logo mark is a registered trademark of NTT Communications Corporation.
- “Catch Phone (Call Waiting service)” is a registered trademark of Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation.
- McAfee® is registered trademarks or trademarks of McAfee, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries.
- G-GUIDE, G-GUIDE MOBILE and their logos are registered trademarks in Japan of U.S. Gemstar-TV Guide International, Inc. and/or its affiliates.
- Powered by JBlend™ Copyright 2002-2008 Aplix Corporation.
  All rights reserved.
  JBlend and JBlend-related trademarks are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.
- is a registered trademark of FeliCa Networks, Inc.
- The microSD logo is a trademark.
- “Multitask” is a registered trademark of NEC Corporation.
- “Ericle”, “Deco-e maker”, “Style-Up”, “Stand-by books”, “Shield View”, and “My Shortcut” are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sony Ericsson Mobile Communications Japan, Inc.
- “PlayNow” is a trademark of Sony Ericsson Mobile Communications AB.
- “TALKMAN” is a registered trademark of Sony Computer Entertainment, Inc.
- POBox and POBox Pro are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sony Corporation.
- QuickTime is a registered trademark of Apple Inc., in the US and other countries.
- Microsoft®, Windows®, Windows Media® and Windows Vista® are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- Napster is a registered trademark of Napster, LLC. and/or its affiliates in the US and/or other countries.
- QR code is a registered trademark of Denso Wave Inc.
- Java and all Java-related trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of US Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.
- Powered By Mascot Capsule®/Micro3D Edition™ MASCOT CAPSULE® is a registered trademark of HI CORPORATION.
- The other company names and brand names described in this manual are trademarks or registered trademarks of the respective companies.

Others

- This product is licensed complying with MPEG-4 Visual Patent Portfolio License, and you are permitted to use personally and for the nonprofit purpose in the following situations:
  - To record a movie based on the standard of MPEG-4 Visual (MPEG-4 Video)
  - To play MPEG-4 Video recorded by the consumer engaged in the nonprofit activities
  - To play MPEG-4 Video provided by the provider licensed by MPEG-LA

  When you use it for other purposes, such as promotion, in-house information and profit activity, contact the U.S. corporation MPEG LA, LLC.
- FeliCa is a contactless IC card technology developed by Sony Corporation. FeliCa is a registered trademark of Sony Corporation.
- POBox technology has been developed by Sony Computer Science Laboratories, Inc. and Sony Ericsson Mobile Communications Japan, Inc.

- Contains Adobe® Flash® Lite™ and Adobe® Reader® LE technology by Adobe Systems Incorporated.
  Adobe Flash Lite Copyright© 2003-2007 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.
  Adobe Reader LE Copyright© 1993-2007 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.
  Adobe, Adobe Reader, Flash and Flash Lite are registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.
- Content owners protect copyrighted intellectual properties by WMDRM (Windows Media digital rights management) technology. This product uses the WMDRM software to access WMDRM-protected contents. If the WMDRM software is unable to protect contents, the content owners request Microsoft to disable the WMDRM function of the software for playing or copying protected contents. No contents other than protected ones are affected by disabling the function. Please note that, if downloading the license to use protected contents, Microsoft may include the revocation list in the license. Content owners may request upgrading of the WMDRM software when you access the contents. If rejecting the upgrade, contents requiring the upgrade cannot be accessed.
- This product contains NetFront Browser and NetFront Sync Client of ACCESS CO., LTD.
  ACCESS and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan, the United States and other countries.
  Copyright© 2008 ACCESS CO., LTD. All rights reserved.
- This product contains the module developed by Independent JPEG Group.
- This product contains NetFront Document Viewer as a document viewer function by ACCESS CO., LTD.
  ACCESS and NetFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and/or other countries.
- IrSimple™, IrSS™ or IrSimpleShot™ are trademarks of Infrared Data Association®.
- This product is equipped with IrFront by ACCESS CO,. LTD. as the infrared data exchange function.
  Copyright© 1996-2008 ACCESS CO., LTD.
  ACCESS and IrFront are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and/or other countries.
- Dialog Clarity and WOW technologies are industrialized based on the license from SRS Labs, Inc.
  Dialog Clarity, SRS, WOW and the symbol are trademarks of SRS Labs, Inc.
- This product contains software licensed complying with GNU General Public License (GPL), GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), etc. For more details, see “readme.txt” in the “GPL・LGPL 等について” folder on the bundled CD-ROM. (“readme.txt” is only available in Japanese version.)
- This product is equipped with NetFront DTV Profile Wireless Edition as data broadcast BML browser by ACCESS CO., LTD.
  This product is equipped with Media:/media colon as broadcast content activation function by ACCESS CO., LTD.
  Copyright© 1996-2008 ACCESS CO., LTD.
  ACCESS, NetFront and Media:/media colon are trademarks or registered trademarks of ACCESS CO., LTD. in Japan and/or other countries.
- This product is equipped with the font “FontAvenue” product by NEC Corporation.
  FontAvenue is a registered trademark of NEC Corporation.
- Google and mobile Google map are registered trademarks of Google, Inc.
- © ATR-Trek Co.,Ltd.
- This product is equipped with GestureTek technology.
  Copyright© 2006-2008, GestureTek, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

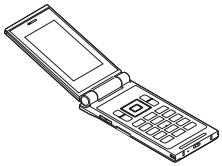
Description of Windows

- In this manual, each OS (Japanese Edition) is described as follows:
  - Windows Vista stands for Windows Vista® (Home Basic, Home Premium, Business, Enterprise, Ultimate).
  - Windows XP stands for Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional operating system or Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition operating system.
  - Windows 2000 stands for Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional operating system.

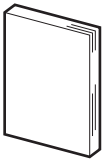
Package Contents

<Main Components>

FOMA SO706i
(Including the warranty and Back Cover SO12)

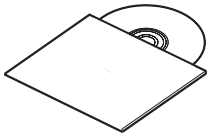


Manual for FOMA SO706i
(This manual)



* The Quick Manual starts on p.408.

CD-ROM for FOMA SO706i

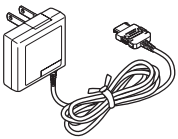


* This CD-ROM contains the PDF files of "Manual for PC Connection" and "Kuten Code List".

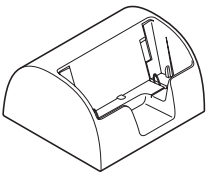
Battery Pack SO03

<Optional Equipment>

FOMA AC Adapter 01/02
(Including warranty and manual)



Desktop Holder SO11
(Including manual)

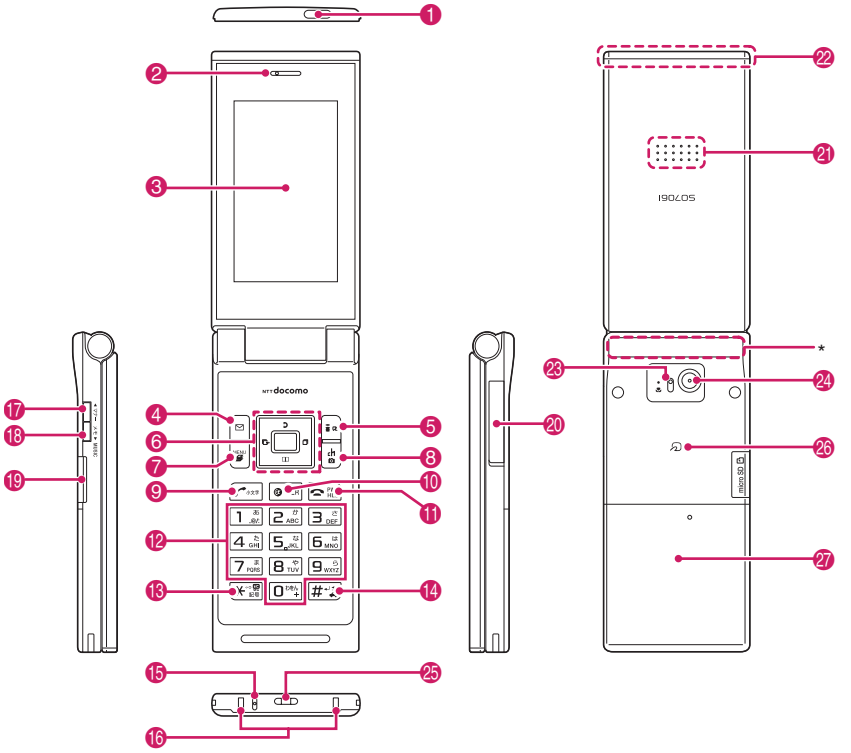


Other options and accessories→p.363

Before Using the Handset

Component Names and Functions 24
Display 27
Menu Selection 29
Changing the Main Menu 33
The Basic Operations on the Screens 34
Description of the Operations 36
Function Menu 37
Setting the FOMA Card 39
Attaching/Removing the Battery Pack 41
Charging 41
Checking the Battery Level ..... Battery level 44
Turning the FOMA Terminal On/Off ..... Power ON/OFF 44
Switching Between Japanese and English ..... Select language 45
Setting the Default ..... Initial setting 45
Setting the Clock 45
Notifying the Other Party of Your Phone Number ..... Caller ID Notification 46
Checking Your Own Phone Number ..... My Profile 46

Component Names and Functions



* : The Antenna of the FOMA terminal is built-in.

■Functions

❶ Infrared data port→p.257

❷ Earpiece

❸ Display

❹ [✉] Function key 1

- Performs the function displayed (principally the FUNC menu)→p.32
- Displays the mail menu

❺ [i] Function key 2

- Performs the displayed function→p.32
- Displays the i-mode menu
- Makes videophone calls→p.48
- Switches the character type when entering characters→p.306

❻ Multi-function keys

[▲]/[▼]

- Moves the cursor or the displayed contents, etc. up or down (scrolls continuously when the key is held down)
- [▲]: Displays Choku-Den→p.78
- [▼]: Displays the phonebook

[◀]/[▶]

- Moves the cursor to the left or right
- Scrolls the display to the previous or next screens by pages→p.34
- [◀]: Displays the Received calls record→p.53
- [▶]: Displays the Redial→p.53

■
- Performs the function displayed (“Select” or “Set”, mainly) →p.32

⑦ MENU **Function key 3**
- Performs the function displayed→p.32
- Displays the main menu/Simple Menu →pp.29, 33
- Displays the task change screen→p.283

⑧ ch **Function key 4**
- Performs the function displayed→p.32
- Displays the i-Channel list

⑨ **Send key**
- Makes voice calls→p.48
- Receives voice/videophone calls→p.59
- Switches the entered character into upper or lower case→p.306

⑩ CLR **Back (Clear) key**
- Undoes the last step in the operation→p.35
- Puts a call on hold→p.62
- Deletes the entered phone number or characters→pp.48, 307

⑪ **Power/End of operation/Hold key**
- Turns on the power (1 second or longer)/turns off the power (2 seconds or longer)→p.44
- Ends each function→p.35
- Ends a call→p.49
- Puts an incoming call on hold→p.62

⑫ 0 **to** 9 **Dial keys**
- Enters phone numbers, characters and numbers

⑬ ＊ **key**
- Sets the IC card lock (1 second or longer) →p.206
- Enters “＊” or dakuten/handakuten/kutoten →p.306

⑭ # **/Public mode (Driving mode) key**
- Sets Public mode (Driving mode) (1 second or longer)→p.62
- Enters “#” or the line feed “↵”→p.306
- Returns to the previous reading in 5-touch →p.306

⑮ **Mouthpiece/Microphone**

⑯ **Charging terminal**

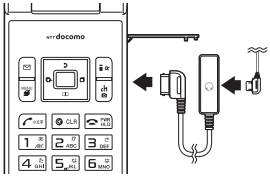
⑰ **(▲マナー) Volume up key**
- Sets Manner mode (1 second or longer)→p.86
- Raises the earpiece volume during a call→p.61
- Scrolls back the display to the previous screens by pages→p.34
- Connects to the site set as “Home URL”→p.148

⑱ **(▼メモ) Volume down key/MUSIC**
- Lowers the earpiece volume during a call→p.61
- Scrolls the display to the next screens by pages →p.34
- Reads out the current time (Voice clock)→p.64
- Plays recorded messages→p.65

⑲ **microSD card slot**
- Used to insert the microSD card→p.244

⑳ **External connecter**
- Connects an AC adapter (optional), DC adapter (optional), FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (optional) or Earphone Plug Adapter for External connector terminal (optional)* etc.

* : Connects the flat-plug stereo earphone set (optional) or the flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional), etc.



㉑ **Speaker (mono)**

㉒ **Illumination lamp**
- Flashes in the set color when a call/mail arrives →p.92
- Flashes when there is a missed call/new mail →p.92
- The center lamp lights in red while charging →p.44
- The center lamp flashes in red during shooting mode→p.119
- The center lamp flashes in blue while the auto timer is activated→p.119

㉓ **Lens selector switch**
- Switches ● (Standard)/🌷 (Macro) for the camera→p.118

㉔ **Camera**
- Shoots still images and movies
- Shoots the movie of scenery during videophone calls

㉕ **Through-hole for strap**

㉖ **FeliCa mark**
- Reads the IC card→p.202
- iC communication→p.259

㉗ **Back cover**

*** (▲マナー) and (▼メモ) are referred to as side keys in this manual.**

Functions that involve holding down keys for 1 second or longer

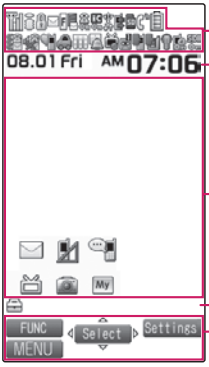
The functions available by holding down each key for 1 second or longer in the standby screen are as follows:

Key	Function	Ref. page
	Displays the Received address list.	p.177
	Displays the Sent address list.	p.177
2	Switches the Shield view.	p.90
5	Turns the display light on/off.	p.90
7	Displays the font setting screen.	p.93
8	Sets 2in1.	p.320
0	Enters “+”.	p.51
#	Sets/Releases Public mode (Driving mode).	p.62
*	Sets/Releases IC card lock.	p.206

Key	Function	Ref. page
	Adjusts the earpiece volume.	p.61
(▲マナー)	Sets/Releases Manner mode.	p.86
(▼メモ)	Activates the Music Player and Quits it when playing BGM.	p.280
	Check new messages	p.164
	Displays the i-αppli software list screen.	p.187
ch	Activates the function set in “Holding down ch-key” (Default: The Photo mode screen appears)	p.118
CLR	Clears the advising shortcut icons.	p.95

Display

- The symbols (such as , , , etc.) displayed on the screen are referred to as icons.
- A calendar, etc. can be set to the display.→p.89



The status of the FOMA terminal is indicated with icons in this area→p.27

Clock display→p.93

Shortcut icon display area
- etc. : Advising shortcut icons→p.94
- etc. : Pasted shortcut icons→p.94

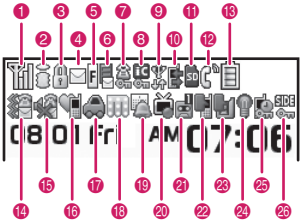
(1Seg), (Photo mode) and (My selection) are the default settings.

Task icon display area
- etc. : Task icons of the activated functions→p.283

Function /i-Channel ticker display area→pp.32, 153

Icons that indicates the status of the FOMA terminal

Display



	Icon	Description
1		Signal strength→p.44
		Out of service area/Radio wave does not reach→p.44
	self	Self mode→p.115
2	/	i-mode/i-mode communication in progress→p.136
	/ /	Packet communication in progress (no data exchange/sending/receiving)*
	/	Packet communication in progress (sending/receiving)*
3		SSL-compatible page displayed →p.138

	Icon	Description
4	/ (Red)	Unread mail/Inbox is full→p.163
		SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) is full →p.254
		Unread mail/SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) is full→pp.163, 254
	(Red)	Inbox is full/SMS in the FOMA card (UIM) is full→pp.163, 254
		Unread Area Mail→p.181
5	R/R (Red)	Unread MessageR/Full→p.179
	F/F (Red)	Unread MessageF/Full→p.179

Continued on next page

	Icon	Description
5		Unread message R and F (in red when each of them is full)→p.179
6	(Red)	Mail kept at the i-mode Center/Full →p.164
		"Receive option setting" is set to "ON" and a mail is kept at the i-mode Center→p.164
	(Red)	MessageR kept at the i-mode Center/Full→p.179
	(Red)	MessageF kept at the i-mode Center/Full→p.179
7		Dial lock→p.101
		Secret mode/Secret data only mode→p.103
		Original lock/Original lock released temporarily→pp.106, 107
		Secret mode or Secret data only mode and Original lock is set or released temporarily→pp.103, 106
8		IC card lock→p.206
9		microSD mode/MTP mode set→p.251
		USB cable connected and Communication mode/microSD mode/MTP mode set→p.251
		Handsfree compatible device connected and Communication mode/microSD mode/MTP mode set→pp.59, 251
		USB cable/Handsfree compatible device connected and Communication mode/microSD mode/MTP mode set→pp.59, 251
10		Infrared data exchange in progress →p.257
		Infrared remote control operated →p.261
		IC card authentication in progress →p.111
		iC communication in progress (sending/receiving data)→p.259
11		microSD card inserted→p.244
		microSD card (invalid) inserted →p.244

	Icon	Description
11		microSD reader/writer operated →p.252
		microSD being accessed→p.247
12		During a voice call→p.48
		64K data communication in progress*
		During a videophone call→p.48
		Switching between voice call and videophone call→pp.50, 60
13		Battery level→p.44
14		Vibrator→p.84
15		Ring volume set to "Silent"→p.61 Mail/Msg. ring time is set to "OFF" →p.85
16		Manner mode→p.86
17		Public mode (Driving mode)→p.62
18		Music&Video Channel program reservation set→p.269
19		Alarm notification function→p.289
20		1seg timer recording→p.214
21	to	Voice mail message→p.312
22	to	Record message→p.65
23	to	Record VP message→p.65
24		Display light set to "OFF"→p.90
		Shied view set to "ON"→p.90
		Shield veiw set to "ON", backlight set to "OFF"→p.90
25		Keypad being locked/standby (Timer set)→p.110
26		Side key guard set to "ON"→p.112

* : For details on the icons, refer to the "Manual for PC Connection" (PDF format) in the provided CD-ROM.

NOTE

- The display adopts state-of-the-art technology; some dots (points) may not light up while others may constantly light up due to its characteristics. Note that this phenomenon is not a failure.
- You can check the name of the displayed icons by selecting "SETTINGS"▶"Display"▶"Icons description".

Menu Selection

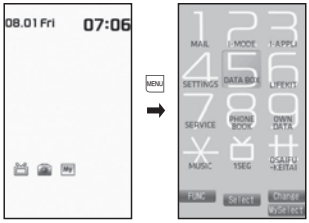
You can run, set, and check the FOMA terminal's functions in a variety of ways. There are various methods of the rest though the method of selecting the function from the main menu is general.

Selecting functions from the main menu

You can select the functions of the FOMA terminal from the main menu displayed by pressing MENU in the standby screen. The menus are sorted by function. →p.340

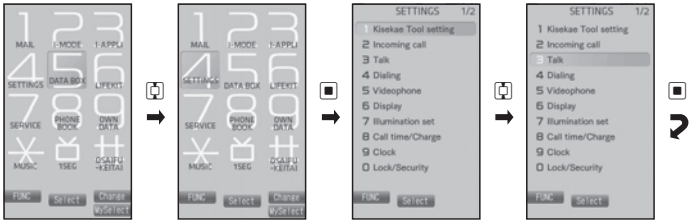
<Example: To set "Setting when folded">

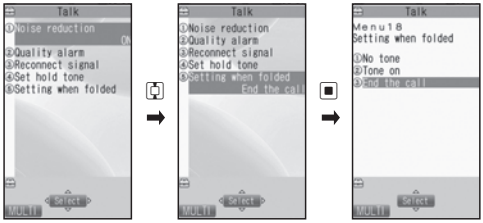
1 Press MENU on the standby screen to display the main menu



> **Tip**
> If you do not press any key for 15 seconds while the main menu is displayed, the main menu is turned off and returns to the previous screen.

2 Use ⊕ to move the highlight, then press ■ (Select) to select the displayed menu sequentially





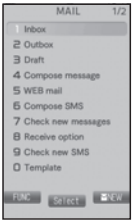
The highlighted item is displayed in two lines and the current setting is displayed.

> **Tip**
> Holding down ⊕ moves the highlight in sequence.

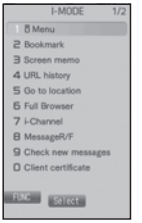
Accessing functions with the function keys

On each screen, you can access functions easily by pressing the function keys pre-assigned to the function.

1 Press the function key on the standby screen



Pressing ✉ displays the mail menu. →p.156

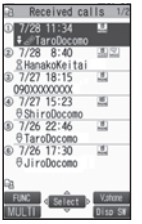


Pressing i displays the i-mode menu. →p.136

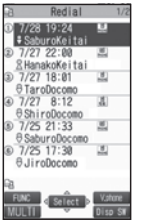
Pressing ch displays the Channel list. →p.153

Pressing ☎ displays the Choku-Den screen. →p.78

Pressing 📖 displays the phonebook list screen. →p.73



Pressing ☎ displays the Received calls screen. →p.53



Pressing ☎ displays the Redial screen. →p.53

NOTE

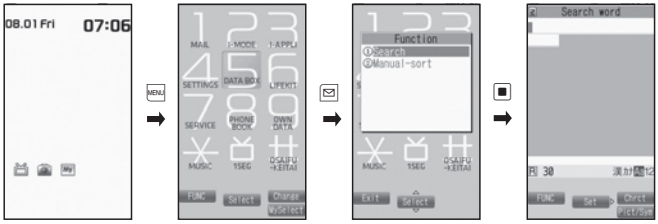
- When using the Simple Menu (p.33), pressing ✉ or i on the standby screen displays the Simple Menu's Mail menu or i-mode menu.

Searching menu items to access functions

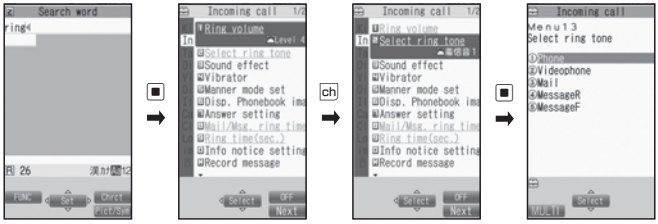
Even if you do not know the procedure to access the menu, you can still access the desired function by entering key words to search menu items.

<Example: To access “Select ring tone”>

1 Press MENU on the standby screen, then press ✉ (FUNC), and highlight “Search”, then press ■ (Select)



2 Enter “ring” and press ■ (Set), then select the displayed menu



The search result is displayed with an underline.

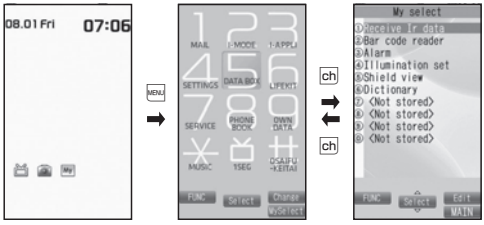
If there are two or more search results, press ch (Next) to move the frame.

Selecting functions from My select

By storing your frequently used functions (p.92), you can access the menus easily.

1 Press MENU on the standby screen to display the main menu, then press ch (MySelect) in sequence

Pressing ch switches between the main menu and My select.

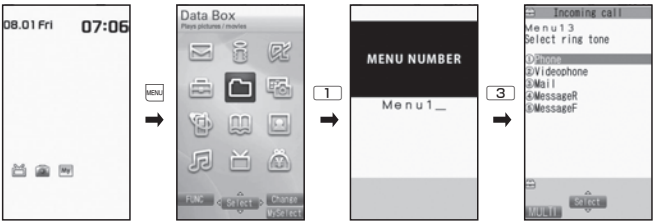


Accessing functions by selecting menu numbers

When the main menu is set to “Standard Menu” (p.33), you can access functions quickly by pressing the keys pre-assigned to the menu numbers (p.340).

<Example: To access “Select ring tone”>

1 Press MENU on the standby screen, then press 1 3 in sequence



How to use the function keys

The operation icons (Function display) corresponding to ✉, ■, ℹ, MENU, ch and the direction icons corresponding to ✥ are displayed on the screen. Only when the corresponding keys can be used, those icons are displayed.

■ Performing the functions assigned to the function key

Press the key for ❶ to ❺, the function is activated.

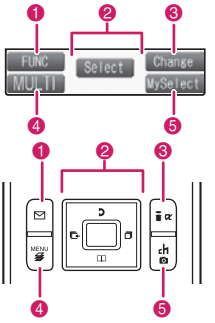
❶ includes (FUNC), (Exit), etc.
When the FUNC key is displayed, press ✉ to show the function menu.
→p.37

The center of ❷ includes (Select), (Set), (Play), (Dial) etc.

❸ includes (Edit), (Finish), (Chrct) etc.

❹ includes (MENU) and (MULTI).

❺ includes (ch), (Change), (Ir data), (Pict/Sym) etc.



■ Moving or scrolling the screen

Press ✥ in the direction you want to scroll.

[Notation]

■ Description of the function display

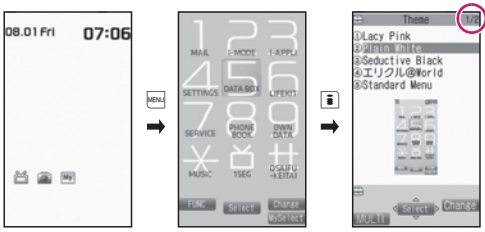
In this manual, operations related to the keys for the function display are generally described with the function display in the parenthesis, such as ■ (Select) and ✉ (FUNC).

Changing the Main Menu

You can change the design of the main menu (style for background or icon, etc.) as you want.

- When you change the design of the menu display using Kisekae Tool, the menu structure may change in accordance with frequency of using functions. Also, you cannot access some functions entering the menu number assigned to the functions. In this case, change the main menu to “Standard Menu” (p.33) or perform “Reset menu op. log” (p.91) so as to operate as described in this manual.

1 Press MENU on the standby screen, then press (Change) in sequence



Main Menu　　Theme

2 Select an item

“Lacy Pink” to **“Standard Menu”**

Switches the display design in each menu. When set to “Standard Menu”, you can access functions by entering the menu numbers.→p.32

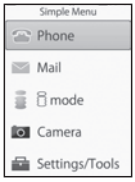
“Large Menu”

Large-font menu appears.

“Simple Menu”

Simple Menu consists of frequently used menus, and its character size is large and operation procedure is simple.→p.349

Sets the character size of the screens to “X-large” all at once. →p.93



Simple Menu

“Original theme”→p.91

You can change the icons and background image used on the main menu. You can also set the picture you shot as the background.

“Kisekae Tool”→p.97

You can change various design of the FOMA terminal such as the main menu all at once with the Kisekae Tool package.

■ Changing the Main Menu temporarily

Highlight an item on the theme screen and press (Change) to change the main menu temporarily. When the main menu is displayed again, the main menu before it sets is displayed.

NOTE

- When you set the menu that supports the user customizing, you can sort the menu items by selecting “Manual-sort” by pressing (FUNC) in the main menu.→p.284

[Notation]

■ Description of the main menu

The menu name may be different depending on the selected theme of Menu display set. Steps are described using default settings when the phone color is platinum white.

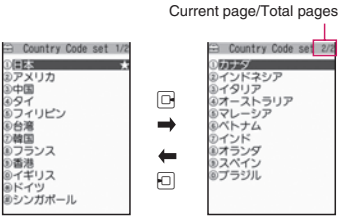
①MAIL	②I-MODE	③I-APPLI	④SETTINGS
⑤DATA BOX	⑥LIFEKIT	⑦SERVICE	⑧PHONE BOOK
⑨OWN DATA	⑩MUSIC	⑪1SEG	⑫OSAIFU-KEITAI

The Basic Operations on the Screens

● When items appear in multiple pages

1 Press [▷] to display other pages

To switch the page, press [◁] (or [▯] (▲マナー)) for the previous page and press [▷] (or [▯] (▼メモ)) for the next page.



■ **To display other pages using [▯]**

Pressing [▯] displays the previous page when the highlight is located at the top of the list, and pressing [▯] displays the next page when the highlight is located at the bottom of the list.

● Using the dial keys to select items

1 Press [1] to [9] [0] [＊] [#] corresponding to the menu numbers

The number corresponding to the dial key

● Selecting "YES/NO" or "ON/OFF"

1 Press [▯] to move the frame, then press [■] (Select)

To display images in 9 images display

1 Press [✥] to move the frame, then press [■] (Disp.)

Entering a security code

1 Enter the 4 to 8 digit security code, then press [■] (Set)

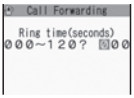
The numbers of the entered security code is displayed as "_".
The detail screen of the function is displayed when the security code is successfully entered.

■ **If the entered security code is incorrect**

A message notifying that the security code is wrong is displayed. Re-enter the security code from the beginning.

Entering numbers

1 Enter numbers by pressing [0] to [9]



To enter a 1-digit number or 2-digit number in a 3-digit number entry screen, press [0] twice or once before entering a number.

■ **To enter "3"**

▶[0][0][3]

To cancel operations, and to return to the standby screen

■ [CLR]

Press [CLR] to cancel the last operation, such as when you select wrong menu item. Though the previous screen appears basically, another screen may appear depending on the function.

■ [☎]

Press [☎] to complete operations such as settings and to return to the standby screen. Though the function is completed and the standby screen appears basically, another screen may appear depending on the current displayed screen and function. If you press [☎] during setting operation, the setting operation is canceled and the standby screen reappears.

Description of the Operations

In this manual, instructions for menu operations are briefly described in almost all cases as follows:

The example of description of operations and the actual operations

①　②　③　④　⑤

1 MENU ▶"LIFEKIT"▶"Alarm"▶Highlight the item to set ▶ ✉ (FUNC)

①: Press MENU on the standby screen.
②: Press ✥ to move the highlight to the menu in the double quotation mark, then press ■ (Select).
③: Press ✥ to move the highlight to the item in the double quotation mark, and then press ■ (Select).
Or, press 1 to 9 0 * # for the menu number in the double quotation mark.
④: Press ✥ to move the highlight.
⑤: Press the key for the function displayed in parentheses.

[Notation]

■ Omission of ■ in the "Select" and "Set" operations

- When a target function is selected from the main menu or list, such as example ② and ③, ■ (Select) is omitted.
- In the cases such as "Select an item" or "Enter your security code", ■ (Select) and ■ (Set) are omitted in the same way.
- When you are supposed to move to the next step without pressing ■ (Select), "Highlight xxx" is used, such as example ④.

■ Easy operations are preferred

- Though the operation of the main menu has been described, this manual gives priority to the operations by short cut keys operations (p.30).
- If you select the menu from the Simple Menu, refer to "Simple Menu function list" (p.349).

■ Omission of the descriptions after completing the operations

- The descriptions for the operations after completing the function are omitted.
- "To cancel operations, and to return to the standby screen"→p.35

■ Brief description of keys and menus

- In this manual, instructions for key illustrations/menu displays/holding down keys are simply described as follows:

	Key	Menu display	Holding down keys
Actual display/operation	1	Menu	Press and hold down # for 1 second or longer
Description in this manual	1	iMenu	# (1 second or longer)

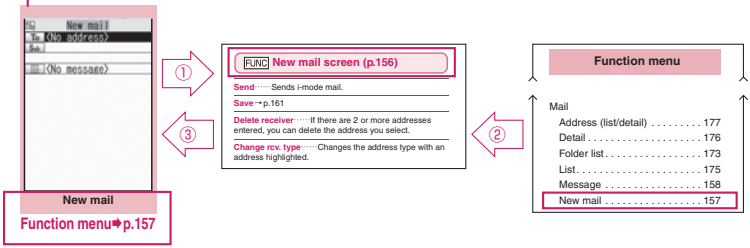
Function Menu

"Function Menu" is one of the menus of the FOMA terminal that can be accessed from the function display. The function menu activates supplementary functions of each screen.
For example, you can use the function menu to delete a mail after reading it, or to select the folder to save an image you shot with the camera.

● How to use the function menu

There are mainly three ways to use the function menus. Use the appropriate method depending on the situation.

① Refer to the explanation of the function menu items from the reference page stated with the operation screen.
② Refer to the explanation of the function menu items from the function menu index.
③ Find the procedure to display the operation screen from the reference page of the function menu.

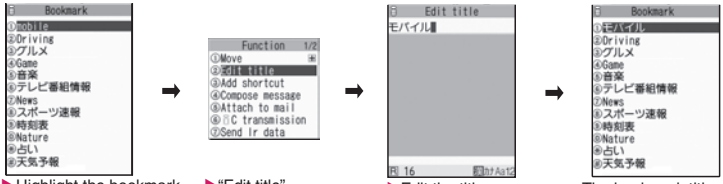


* "Function menu item" and "Function menu index" in the above illustration are only excerpts.

● Operation target on the list screen

In the function menu on the list screen, either data highlighted in the list or all the data in the list is targeted by the function. For example, "Edit title" or "Delete this" targets a highlighted title or data, and "Delete all" targets all the data.
When you select a function menu which targets one data in the list, such as "Edit title" or "Delete this", highlight the data, then press ✉ (FUNC).

<Example: To edit the bookmark title on the list screen>



▶Highlight the bookmark
▶✉ (FUNC)

▶"Edit title"

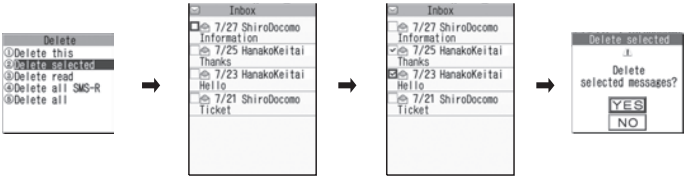
▶Edit the title
▶■ (Set)

The bookmark title changes.

About multiple-choice

When you delete unnecessary data, protect important data or move the data you do not want to be viewed by others to the secret folder, etc., you can select not only one data or all data but also multiple data. In this case, perform the following operation.

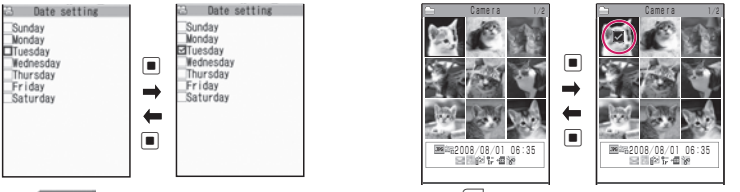
<Example: To delete multiple mail on the received mail list screen>



▶"Delete selected" ▶Check mails to delete ▶ (Finish) ▶"YES"

Marking a checkbox

When you use to move the frame to the item to select and press (Select), the checkbox changes from to . This means that the item is selected. Pressing (Select) switches between and . In the images display, appears when the item is selected. Nothing appears when unselected.



- When "FUNC" appears on the function display area, pressing (FUNC) allows you to use "Select all" or "Release all".

Menus which switch alternately

Depending on the menu, menu items switches alternately as follows:

<Example 1>

"When normal font is set"

<Example 2>

"When large font is set"

When the Phonebook detail screen is displayed in "Set normal font" mode, "Set large font" appears as in <Example 1>. If "Set large font" is selected, the font mode changes to large font mode, and "Set normal font" appears next time the function menu appears.

[Notation]

■ Description of the menus which switch alternately

Such menus are described as "**Set large font⇔Set normal font**".

NOTE

- When the displayed menu contains sub menus, " " appears on the right.
- The displayed contents of the function menu may vary or you may not be able to select the item of function menu depending on the operating function and settings. The function menu items you cannot select are displayed in gray.

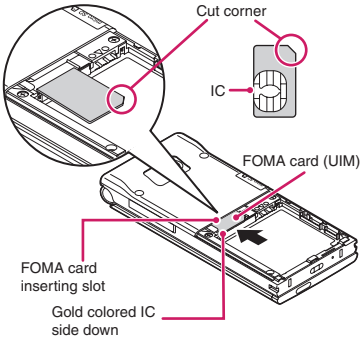
Setting the FOMA Card

The FOMA card is an IC card that contains private information such as your phone number.
Before inserting or removing the FOMA card, first turn the power off and remove the battery pack. →p.41
Note also that when you try to insert or remove the FOMA card, keep the FOMA terminal folded and held in your hand.

● Attaching/Removing the FOMA card

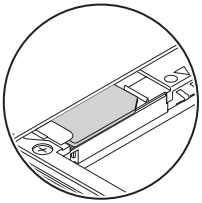
The illustration shows how to attach the FOMA card.

1 Put the FOMA card into the card inserting slot with the IC side downward as shown in the illustration



2 Insert the FOMA card until it is fixed

To remove the FOMA card, carefully pull it out straight from the following status.



Properly inserted

Security codes

You can set two security codes of PIN1 code and PIN2 code for the FOMA card (UIM). →p.100

FOMA card security function

The FOMA terminal incorporates the FOMA card security function (FOMA card operational restriction function) to protect your data and files.

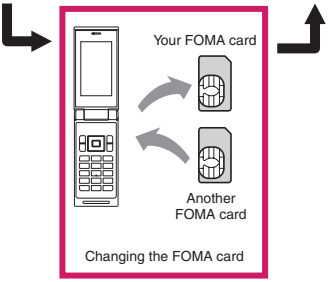
- When you download data or files from sites or receive data attached to mails, the FOMA card security function is automatically set to these data and files.
- Data and files with this function set are accessible only when the same FOMA card (UIM) used when downloading these data or files is used.
- Target data and files for the FOMA card security function are as follows:
  - File attached to i-mode mail (except for ToruCa)
  - Screen memo
  - Image inserted into Deco-mail® or signature
  - i-αppli (including i-αppli standby screen)
  - Image (including the animation and Flash movie)
  - Melody
  - Word/Excel/PowerPoint data
  - Image of ToruCa (detail)
  - Image downloaded from the Data Security Center
  - Program of the Music&Video Channel
  - Movable contents data
  - i-motion
  - Chara-den
  - Chaku-Uta®*/Chaku-Uta-Full®
  - PDF data
  - Kisekae Tool
  - Record Videophone message
  - Template including data to protect
  - Download dictionary
  - MessageR/F with attached file (melody/image)

  * : "Chaku-Uta" is a registered trademark of Sony Music Entertainment (Japan) Inc.
- The FOMA card (UIM) that was inserted when you downloaded or received data or files is referred to as "your FOMA card (UIM)" and other FOMA cards as "other FOMA card (UIM)" hereinafter.

Continued on next page

When the inserted FOMA card (UIM) was used to download data or receive mails, you can view or play the data that applies to the FOMA card security function.

When the inserted FOMA card (UIM) was not used to download data or receive mails, you cannot view or play the data that applies to the FOMA card security function.



Changing the FOMA card

NOTE

- If the FOMA card (UIM) is not attached or you replace the FOMA card (UIM) with another one, "" is attached to data and files with this function set and you cannot set these data to "Display setting" or "Select ring tone".
- Data and files with this function set are only can be moved and deleted with other FOMA cards (UIM).
- If you remove the FOMA card (UIM) or change to other FOMA card (UIM) when data or a file with this function set is set to "Display setting" or "Select ring tone", these settings are reset to the default settings. When your FOMA card (UIM) is inserted again, the settings return to your settings.

Settings for replacing the FOMA card (UIM)

When you replace the FOMA card (UIM) inserted to the FOMA terminal with other FOMA card (UIM), the following settings are changed:

- Functions of which settings are changed to settings stored on the newly inserted FOMA card (UIM)
  - Select language
  - SMS center selection
  - SMS validity period
  - PIN setting
  - Host selection of i-mode common set
- Functions that are reverted to the default setting
  - i-Channel setting
  - Access setting for Full Browser
- Functions that are set to "Invalid"
  - Cookie settings for Full Browser (Cookie information is kept)
- Functions of which current settings of the FOMA card (UIM) become invalid
  - Program setting of the Music&Video Channel (Set the program again)

FOMA card type

The FOMA card (UIM) (blue) has the following functional differences from the FOMA card (green/white).

Function	Blue	Green/White
Max number of digits for phone number to be stored in the FOMA card (UIM) phonebook	20 digits	26 digits
User certificate operation to use FirstPass	Not available	Available
WORLD WING	Not available	Available
Service Numbers	Not available	Available

WORLD WING

WORLD WING is DOCOMO's FOMA international roaming service that you can make or receive a call with your proper phone number even oversea using your FOMA terminal with the FOMA card (UIM) (green/white) and supporting services.

- For the customers who have subscribed to the FOMA service on September 1, 2005 or after, a separate subscription is not necessary. However, customers who declared that they did not require this service at the FOMA service subscription or who unsubscribe from this service need a separate subscription.
- For the customers who have subscribed to the FOMA service on August 31, 2005 or before without subscribing to "WORLD WING", a separate subscription is necessary.
- This service is not available in some payment plans.
- In case the FOMA card (UIM) (green/white) is lost or stolen in overseas, contact to DOCOMO as soon as possible and take the course of service interruption. Refer to the back of this manual for the inquiries numbers. Note that you are charged for the call and communication even after the FOMA card (UIM) (green/white) is lost or stolen.

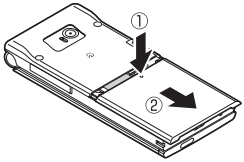
Attaching/Removing the Battery Pack

- Make sure to turn the FOMA terminal off before removing the battery pack. Note also that keep the FOMA terminal folded and held in your hand.

● Attaching

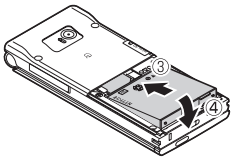
1 Remove the back cover

Pressing the back cover in direction ①, slide it in direction ② to remove the back cover.



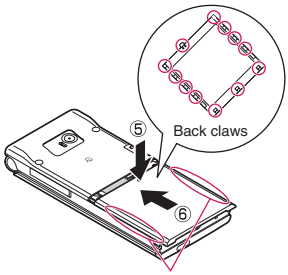
2 Attach the battery pack

With the "A" side of the battery pack facing up, attach the battery pack in direction ③ making sure that the "▲" mark of the battery pack fits the "▲" mark of the FOMA terminal (Phone), then press the battery pack down in direction ④.



3 Attach the back cover

Lift the back cover about 3 mm and fit the back claws in the groove of the FOMA terminal (Phone). Pressing the back cover in direction ⑤, slide it in direction ⑥ and press the back cover until the catch clicks shut.



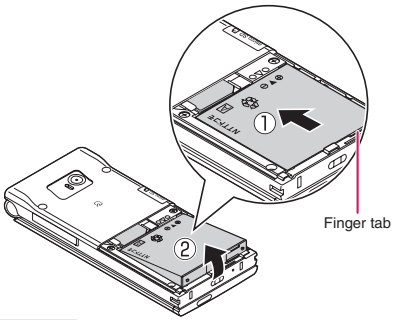
Make sure that there is no space between the Back cover and the FOMA terminal (Phone).

● Removing

1 Remove the back cover

2 Remove the battery pack

Press the tab on the side of the battery pack in direction ①, then lift upwards in direction ② to remove the battery pack.



NOTE

- Do not use excessive force when the tip of the back cover is inserted into the FOMA terminal. The finger tab of the back cover may be broken.

Charging

Use the specified Battery Pack SO03 for the FOMA terminal.

■ Battery pack life

- The battery pack is consumable. The amount of usable time decreases every time the battery pack is recharged.
- When a fully charged battery pack only lasts half as long as it did at the time of purchase, the battery pack life is almost over, so it is recommended to replace it with a new one. When the life of the battery pack is near end, the battery pack may expand a little according to the usage condition, but this is not a malfunction.
- The battery pack life may be shortened if i-αppli or videophone is used or 1seg is viewed for a long time while charging.

Li-ion00

To protect the environment, take used battery packs to NTT DOCOMO, the agency, the recycle shop, etc.

Continued on next page

■ Battery pack charging

- For details, refer to the manuals for the FOMA AC Adapter 01/02 (optional), FOMA AC Adapter for Global Use 01 (optional) and FOMA DC Adapter 01/02 (optional).
- FOMA AC Adapter 01 supports voltage of 100V AC only.
- FOMA AC Adapter 02 and FOMA AC Adapter 01 for Global Use support voltage from 100V AC to 240V AC, but the plug shape of the AC adapter is for 100V AC (domestic). For overseas use, the compatible conversion plug adapter is required. Do not charge the battery using the transformer for travel.
- When charging the battery pack, the battery pack must be attached to the FOMA terminal.
- You can receive calls during charging if the FOMA terminal is turned on. However, the battery level will fall during the call and the time required for charging will increase. Charging time also increases when “Charging” of “Backlight” setting is set to “All time ON”.
- When plugging in or out the connector, do it slowly and securely not to apply an excessive force.
- When you make a call or perform packet communication during charging in a high-temperature environment, the FOMA terminal’s temperature may rise and the charging may be stopped. If this occurs, stop a running function and wait for the temperature or the FOMA terminal to fall before you retry charging.

■ Do not charge the battery pack for a long period of time (several days) with the FOMA terminal turned on

- If you charge the battery pack for a long period of time with the FOMA terminal turned on, power to the FOMA terminal will be supplied from the battery pack once charging ends. As a result, you will only be able to use the FOMA terminal for a short time and the low-voltage alarm may sound immediately. In this case, recharge the battery pack correctly. Disconnect the FOMA terminal from the AC adapter (or desktop holder) or DC adapter, then set it again for recharging.

■ Battery usage rough time (The duration varies depending on the charging time and the deterioration of the battery pack)

Continuous Standby Time	
[FOMA/3G]	Stationary (“Auto”*): Approx. 580 hrs. In transit (“3G”*): Approx. 430 hrs. In transit (“Auto”*): Approx. 360 hrs.
[GSM]	Stationary (“Auto”*): Approx. 290 hrs.

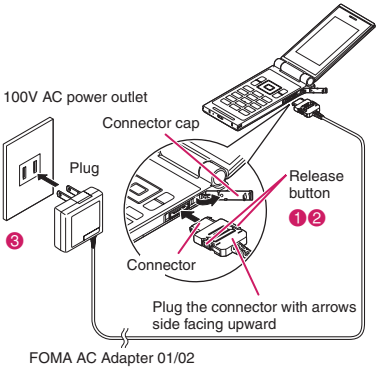
Continuous Talk Time	
[FOMA/3G]	Voice communications: Approx. 220 min. Videophone: Approx. 100 min.
[GSM]	Voice communications: Approx. 190 min.
1seg Viewing Time	
Normal: Approx. 280 min.	ECO mode: Approx. 350 min.

* : To switch networks, use “3G/GSM setting” (p.336).

- The continuous standby time in stationary is the average usage time when the FOMA terminal is folded and standing still while radio waves can be normally received.
- The continuous standby time in moving is the average usage time when the FOMA terminal is folded under condition of “stationary”, “moving”, and “out of service area” within the area where radio waves can be normally received.
- Note that the actual continuous talk/standby time and 1seg viewing time may decrease by as much as half depending on the following conditions: the battery pack charging level, the function settings, ambient environment such as temperature, the status of radio waves (out of service area or weak radio waves). It may shorten the talk (communication)/standby time to make i-mode communication, compose i-mode mail, transfer data, execute multi access, activate i-αppli or i-αppli standby screen, use camera, play movie/i-motion/music and view 1seg.
- Depending on the network condition of the country, talk (communications) and standby time may decrease.
- When using in Japan, talk (communications) and standby times will be longer if “3G/GSM setting” (p.336) is set to “3G”.

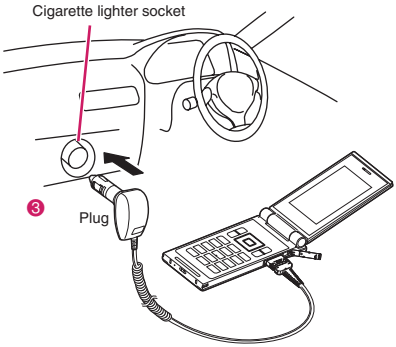
Charging the battery pack with the AC/DC adapter

■ AC adapter (optional)



FOMA AC Adapter 01/02

■DC adapter (optional)



FOMA DC Adapter 01/02

❶ **Open the external connector cap of the FOMA terminal**

❷ **Plug the AC/DC adapter connector horizontally into the FOMA terminal's external connector**

❸ **Plug the AC adapter into the outlet Plug the DC adapter into the cigarette lighter socket in your car**

Charging starts.

Standard charging time
Approx. 120 min.

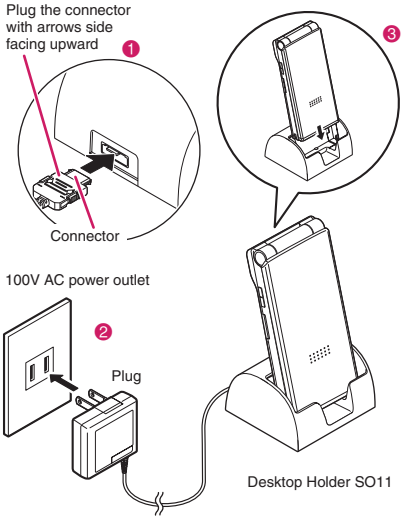
❹ **When charging is completed, remove the AC adapter/DC adapter connector horizontally from the FOMA terminal while pressing the release button**

Do not pull the connector with excessive force because this may cause a malfunction.

❺ **Unplug the AC adapter from the outlet Unplug the DC adapter from the cigarette lighter socket in your car**

❻ **Close the external connector cap of the FOMA terminal**

Charging the battery pack with the desktop holder



FOMA AC Adapter 01/02

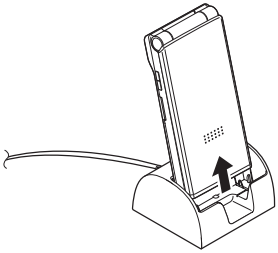
❶ **Plug the connector of the AC adapter (optional) horizontally to the terminal on the back of the desktop holder (optional)**

❷ **Plug the AC adapter into the outlet**

❸ **Hold down the desktop holder and place the FOMA terminal securely in the direction of the arrow**

Standard charging time
Approx. 120 min.

❹ **After charging is completed, hold down the desktop holder, then lift the FOMA terminal up in the direction of the arrow**



Continued on next page

NOTE

- The center illumination lamp lights up in red during charging. The charge lamp turns off when charging ends (Full charge). If the FOMA terminal is turned on, "" flashes during charging and "" lights when charging ends.
  You can set illumination for charge start/end. →p.92
- The battery pack cannot be charged separately. Always charge the battery pack while it is attached to the FOMA terminal.
- If the battery runs out, the center illumination lamp may not lights up right away, but the charging itself has started.

<AC adapter/DC adapter>

- When the center illumination lamp of the FOMA terminal (Phone) and "" on the display disappears, and the message "Charge unusual Stop charge" is displayed, disconnect the FOMA terminal from the AC adapter or DC adapter and remove the battery pack. Then set them again for recharging. If the same error occurs again, there may be a problem or fault on the AC adapter or DC adapter. Contact the NTT DOCOMO shop or service counter.
- The DC Adapter uses a 2A fuse. If the fuse (2A) blows, always use a fuse with the same specifications. Fuses (2A) are consumable items. Purchase a replacement fuse at your local car accessory shop, etc.

<Desktop holder>

- Attach the FOMA terminal to the desktop holder securely. Also, take care not to pinch the strap.

Checking the Battery Level

<Battery level>

The battery level is indicated only as a guide.

Checking the battery level with icon

When the FOMA terminal is turned on, the icon indicating the remaining battery level is displayed.

: Full charge.

: Partial charge.

: The battery is almost running out. Recharge the battery.

Checking the battery level with sound and animation

The current battery level is indicated by sound and animation.

1 MENU ▶"SETTINGS"▶"Other settings"▶"Battery level"

The check screen is displayed, and beeps sound in accordance with the level. The battery level animation disappears in about 3 seconds.

"3 short beeps" : Full charge.
"2 short beeps" : Partial charge.
"1 short beep" : The battery is almost running out. Recharge the battery.

When the battery runs out

The screen as shown on the left appears and the low-voltage alarm sounds. The alarm sounds for about 10 seconds and the power is turned off in about 1 minute. To stop this alarm, press any key (except for side keys).

NOTE

- The recharge battery screen and 3 short beeps sound during a voice call and the recharge battery screen ("Camera Off" message to the other party) appears during a videophone call to notify. Note that the call will be disconnected in about 20 seconds and the power turns off in about one minute.

Turning the FOMA Terminal On/Off

<Power ON/OFF>

Turning the FOMA terminal on

- Before turning the FOMA terminal on, make sure that the FOMA card is inserted correctly.

1 **(1 second or longer)**

After Wake-up screen appears, the standby screen or initial settings screen appears. If you have just attached the battery pack or you turn the FOMA terminal back on immediately after turning it off, "Wait a minute" message may appear for a short time.

■ **When "圏外" appears**

You are outside the FOMA service area or in a place where radio waves do not reach. Move to a place where the radio reception level icon such as "" appears. The reception level is displayed as follows:

Standby

■ **If the Initial setting screen appears** →p.45

■ **If the PIN1 code/PIN2 code entry screen appears** →p.100

NOTE

- When you change the FOMA card (UIM), you have to enter the 4 to 8 digit security code after turning on the FOMA terminal. The standby screen appears when the security code is successfully entered. When you enter wrong security code for 5 times, the FOMA terminal turns off (however, you can turn on the FOMA terminal again).

NOTE

- If the battery runs out or "Auto power OFF" activates then the power is turned off, a screen appears indicating that the power was turned off last time.

Turning the FOMA terminal off

1. **(2 second or longer)**
   The shutdown screen "SO706i" appears and the power is turned off.

Turning the FOMA terminal on/off automatically <Auto power ON/OFF>

Set the Auto power function, the power supply automatically on or off at the specified time.

- The FOMA terminal does not turn off during using another function, even if the Auto power OFF set time is reached. In addition, the FOMA terminal does not turn off when the alarm notification time or the i-αppli Auto-start time is the same as the Auto power OFF set time. The FOMA terminal turns off after finish the function.
- If the FOMA terminal turns off, the Music&Video Channel program is not downloaded and reserved update of the software or 1seg timer recording is not available. Note above when setting Auto power OFF.

<Example: To turn the FOMA terminal on automatically>

1. **MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"Clock"▶"Auto power ON"**
   ■ **To turn the FOMA terminal off automatically**
   ▶"Auto power OFF"
2. **"Active"▶Enter the time▶Select whether to repeat or not**
   ■ **To cancel the Auto power ON/OFF**
   ▶"Inactive"

NOTE

- Before entering an area such as an aircraft or hospital where there is electronic equipment that uses extremely precise control systems or very low signal levels and the use of mobile phones is prohibited, set the "Auto power ON" setting to "Inactive" and then turn the FOMA terminal off.

Switching Between Japanese and English <Select language>

You can switch the languages between Japanese and English to display function names and messages on the display.

1. **MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"Display"▶"Select language"▶"English"**
   ■ **To change from English to Japanese**
   ▶"日本語"

NOTE

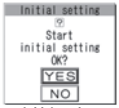
- When the FOMA card (UIM) is inserted, Select language setting is stored on the FOMA card (UIM).
- When "Select language" is set to "English", only two options of "ON/OFF" are available for "Info notice setting".

You can switch announcement language between Japanese and English for outgoing and incoming calls in some announcements.→p.316

Setting the Default <Initial setting>

After turning the FOMA terminal on, you can set "Set main time", "Change security code", "Character size" and "Keypad sound" as initial settings.

1. **Initial setting screen▶"YES"**
2. **Set the main time→p.46**
3. **Change the security code→p.101**
   The default setting is "0000" (4 zeros).
4. **Set the font size→p.93**
5. **Set the keypad sound→p.85**
6. **Check the contents about Software Update, then select "OK"**



Initial setting

NOTE

- When you set all functions, the initial setting screen no longer appears when you turn on the FOMA terminal.

Setting the Clock

Use "Set main time" to set the date and time for the FOMA terminal. Use "Set sub clock" to show/hide the sub clock or set the display mode.

- The FOMA terminal offers the function to retrieve the time information (Greenwich Mean Time, GMT) and time zone information (Area you are in) and adjust time automatically.
- There are different time zones from GMT. If multiple cities or areas are registered in the same time zone, "Change" appears. Press [i] to change cities or areas.

Setting the main clock <Set main time>

1 MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"Clock"▶"Set main time"▶"Auto time adjust"

■ **To set summer time**

▶"Summer time"

When set to "ON", time is displayed with 1 hour added.

2 Select any item:

Auto……Adjusts the date and time of the main clock automatically.

> **Auto**……Adjusts the date and time automatically based on the retrieved time information and time zone information. Local time appears during international roaming.
>
> **Manual(Time zone set)**……Select a time zone to display the local time.

Manual(Date time set)……Set the date and time of the main clock manually. Select a time zone, and enter the date and time.

■ **To enter the date and time**

Use ✥ to move the highlight, then use the dial keys to enter the numbers.

NOTE

- After you set the date and time, you can use functions such as "Alarm" or "Schedule" which manages the date and time.
- The adjustable range of the date and time is between 00:00 on January 1, 2004 and 23:59 on December 31, 2037.

<Auto time adjust>

- Time is automatically adjusted e.g. when the power is turned on with a FOMA card (UIM) inserted.
- A several-second time lag may occur. Time may not be adjusted depending on the signal status or i-αppli set as the standby screen.
- Time may not be adjusted depending on the overseas carrier's network.

Setting the sub clock <Set sub clock>

1 MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"Clock"▶"Set sub clock"▶"display method"

■ **To set summer time**

▶"Summer time"

When set to "ON", time is displayed with 1 hour added.

2 Select any item:

Auto……Displays the sub clock automatically during international roaming. If the main time "Auto time adjust" is set to "Auto", the main time automatically changes to the local time, but the Japan time appears for the sub clock.

Always……Select a time zone to always display the local time for the sub clock.

OFF……Hides the sub clock.

3 "YES" or "NO"

Select "YES" to display the sub clock.

If "OFF" is selected in Step 2, this step is skipped.

NOTE

- The sub clock appears only when "Size" under "Clock display" is set to "Small".
- If "Auto" is selected here and "GMT+09" is not selected as time zone under "Set main time", the Japan time appears for the sub clock (If the time zone is "GMT+09", the sub clock does not appear in Japan.

Notifying the Other Party of Your Phone Number

<Caller ID Notification>

The FOMA terminal can send your phone number (caller ID) to the other party's phone (Display) when you make a call.

- Since the phone number is important information, please take care when you send your caller ID.
- You cannot perform the setting when " " is displayed.

1 MENU▶"SERVICE"▶"Caller ID Notification"▶Select any item:

Activate/Deactivate……Sets whether to send your caller ID or not.

Check setting……Checks the current Caller ID Notification settings.

NOTE

- This function is available only when the other party's phone is capable of displaying the caller ID.
- If you hear a message requesting your caller ID, make a call again after setting your caller ID activated.

Checking Your Own Phone Number

<My Profile>

You can display and check your phone number (own number) stored in your FOMA card (UIM).

1 MENU 0

NOTE

- You can easily quote the information stored in "My Profile" when entering the owner information (such as name or mail address) on websites, etc. →p.307
- You can check your i-mode address by selecting "i-mode menu"▶"iMenu"▶"English"▶"Options"▶"Mail Settings"▶"Confirm Settings".
- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, press ⊡ to switch the My Profile display.
- Reset My Profile in B mode when you exchange the FOMA card (UIM) while using 2in1. →p.291

Voice/Videophone Calls

■Making a Voice/Videophone Call

Making a Voice/Videophone Call 48
Switching a Voice/Videophone Call During a Call (Caller) 50
Making International Calls ..... WORLD CALL 51
Using Handsfree Call During a Call ..... Hands-free 52
Using the Redial/Dialed Calls/Received Calls Record ..... Redial/Dialed calls/Received calls 53
Using Chaku-moji ..... Chaku-moji 55
Setting Caller ID Notification 56
Sending Push Signals ..... Pause dial 57
Using the Prefix Function 57
Setting Sub-addresses When Making Calls ..... Sub-address setting 58
Setting the Alarm Used for Reconnection ..... Reconnect signal 58
Blocking Out Ambient Noise ..... Noise reduction 58
Making Handsfree Calls in the Car ..... In-car Hands-free 59

■Receiving a Voice/Videophone Call

Receiving a Voice/Videophone Call 59
When the Other Party Switches a Voice/Videophone Call (Caller) 60
Using the Dial Keys to Answer a Call ..... Answer setting 60
Ending/Holding Calls with the FOMA Terminal Folded ..... Setting when folded 61
Adjusting the Earpiece Volume ..... Volume 61
Adjusting the Ring Volume ..... Ring volume 61

■Settings for when you cannot take calls

Holding the Ringing/Current Call ..... Answer hold/Holding 62
Using the Public Mode (Driving Mode) ..... Public mode (Driving mode) 62
Using the Public Mode (Power OFF) ..... Public mode (PowerOFF) 63
When You Cannot Answer a Received Call ..... Missed calls 64
Having the Caller Leave a Message ..... Record message 64
Having Callers Leave a Message During an Incoming Call ..... Quick message 65
Playing/Erasing Recorded Messages and Voice Memos 65

■Setting the Videophone

Using Chara-den 66
Setting Functions for the Videophone 67
Using the Videophone Connecting to External Devices 68

Making a Voice/Videophone Call

* **FOMA SO706i does not contain front camera. A substitute image (Chara-den) or rear camera image will be sent to the other party. A substitute image (Chara-den) can be changed to an image in "My picture", etc. using "Select image".→p.67**

1 Enter the phone number of the other party

The "Enter phone number" screen appears.
Always start by entering the area code, even for calls within the same area.
You can enter up to 80 digits for the phone number.
However, only the last 26 digits are displayed.

Enter phone number

Function menu➡p.49

<When you enter a wrong number>

■ **To insert a number**
Press [◇] to move the cursor to the number to the left of the position where you want to insert the number, then enter the number.

■ **To delete a number**
Press [◇] to move the cursor to the number you want to delete, then press [CLR].
Hold down [CLR] for 1 second or longer to delete all the numbers to the left of the cursor and the number in the cursor position.

■ **To re-enter the number**
Move the cursor to the beginning or end of the number and hold down [CLR] for 1 second or longer to return to the standby screen.

<Videophone>

■ **To change a substitute image (Chara-den)**
▶[✉] (FUNC)▶"Select image"▶"Chara-den"▶Select Chara-den

2 [☎] (voice call) / [▯] (V. phone)

<Voice call>

The "In-call" screen appears.
" [☎] " flashes while dialing and lights up during the call.

In-call

■ **If you hear the busy tone**
The line is busy. Call again after a while.

■ **If you hear a message saying that the other party cannot be reached**
The other party's mobile phone is not turned on or is out of signal range. Call again after a while.

■ **If you hear a message requesting your caller ID**
Call again with caller ID notification enabled.
→p.46

<Videophone>

The "Videophone in-call" screen appears.
" [▯] " flashes while dialing a videophone call and lights up during the call.

Videophone in-call

Function menu➡p.49

Illustrations Dick Bruna
© copyright Mercis bv, 1953-2008
www.miffy.com

■ **If a videophone call is not connected→p.50**

■ **To switch between substitute image and camera image**
▶[■] (Change)
Each time you press [■] (Change), the substitute image and camera image switch.

■ **To switch the main screen**
▶[■] (1 second or longer)
"Change main disp."→p.49

■ **To enlarge the image to be sent**
▶Adjust the zoom using [◇]
Zoom→p.128

■ **To mute the voice to send**
▶[▯] (▲マナー) (1 second or longer)
The "MUTE" icon is displayed.
Press [▯] (▲マナー) (1 second or longer) again cancels muting.

■ **To switch a voice/videophone call during a call→p.50**

■ **To put the current voice/videophone call on hold→p.62**

■ **When the 2in1 is in Dual mode**

The Outgoing number selection screen appears. Select a phone number.

3 **after talking**

NOTE

<Videophone call>

- If you make a videophone call to an emergency number (110, 119 or 118) from the FOMA terminal, the call is automatically changed to a voice call.
- You cannot receive i-mode mail or a MessageR/F during a videophone call (you can receive SMS). Received mail is kept at the i-mode Center and can be retrieved using "Check new messages" after the videophone call.
- When you are using videophone and recording 1seg simultaneously with the camera during charging, the "Camera Off" message may appear and the camera may turn off depending on the temperature of the FOMA terminal.
- Digital communication charges are still applied to the caller when the substitute image is displayed during a videophone call.

What is the Videophone

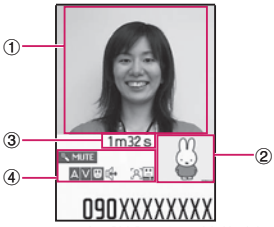
You can use the videophone call function between the terminals that support the DOCOMO videophone system.

- DOCOMO videophone conforms to "the 3G-324M*2 standard set down in the international 3GPP*1 standards". Your FOMA terminal cannot connect to a videophone terminal that uses a different system from DOCOMO videophones.

*1: 3GPP (3rd Generation Partnership Project)
A regional standardization body established to develop commonly applied technical specifications for 3rd-generation mobile communications systems (IMT-2000).

*2: 3G-324M
An international standard for 3rd-generation mobile videophones.

■ **How to view the videophone screen**



Illustrations Dick Bruna © copyright Mercis bv,1953-2008
www.miffy.com

① Main screen (Camera image of the other party is displayed at the time of purchase)
② Sub-screen (Your substitute image is displayed at the time of purchase)
③ Call duration
④ Settings
: Sending or receiving voice/Transmission error
: Sending or receiving video/Transmission error
: Sending camera image/Sending substitute image
: Hands-free ON/OFF
MUTE: Muting microphone (in silence)
: Photo mode (Portrait/Scenery/Close-up)
: Key operation mode (DTMF mode*1/Whole action mode*2/Parts action mode*2)
: Sending Chara-den

*1: "Send DTMF tone/DTMF tone OFF" →p.50
*2: "Using Chara-den" →p.66

FUNC Enter phone number screen (p.48)

Notify Caller ID →p.56

Prefix numbers →p.58

Chaku-moji →p.55

Int'l call →p.52

Multi Number →p.319

Add to phonebook →p.70

Compose message* →p.156

Select image……Selects the image used during a videophone call from "Chara-den".
Select "Release settings" to cancel the setting.

* : Not available when 2in1 is in B mode.

FUNC Videophone in-call screen (p.48)

Substitute image⇔Camera image……Switches between the camera image and the substitute image.

Change main disp.……Changes the main display.
The screen changes in the order of "Displaying the image from the other party's camera on your main screen"→"Displaying your image on your main screen"→"Displaying only the image from the other party's camera"→"Displaying only your image"

V.phone settings……Sets the screen for videophone call.

Visual prefer.……Sets the image sent to and received from the other party from "Normal/Prefer img qual/Prefer motion spd".
This setting is only retained during the call.

Continued on next page

Brightness……Five brightness levels (-2 to 0 to +2) are available.

White balance……Sets image color tones. →p.123
This setting is also applied to the equivalent camera functions.

Color mode set……Selects the image effect from "Normal/Sepia/Monochrome".
This setting is only retained during the call.

Photo mode……Sets modes suited to the scene being shot. →p.122

Chara-den set.……Set the following when Chara-den is used. This setting cannot be set for the camera images.

Switch Chara-den……Selects the character to be displayed.

Action List……Checks the available actions and the corresponding keys. You can also view the action list by pressing [*].

Change Action……Changes the Action mode.

Switch image……Displays the image selected in "Substitute image" (p.67) on the other party's display.

Display light……Sets lighting of backlight.

All time ON (default)……Turns the backlight on all the time.

15 seconds ON……Turns the backlight on for 15 seconds only.

Own number……Displays your phone number during a videophone call.

Send DTMF tone⇔DTMF tone OFF……Sets/cancels push signal transmission mode during Chara-den. Except for Chara-den, videophone calls are always in push signal transmission mode.

Change to voice→p.50

● If a videophone call is not connected

When a videophone call is not connected, the cause of the failure appears.

- The cause may not appear depending on the situation.
- Depending on the type of other party's phone or the possible lack of a network service subscription, the reason may not accurately reflect the other party's actual status.

Display	Cause
Check number then redial	Phone number is not available
Busy	The line is busy
Busy with packet transmission	The other party is using packet communication
Out of service area/ power off	The other party is out of service area or the phone is turned off
Your call is being forwarded	The call is being forwarded (A Videophone call is made when the forwarding number is for a 3G-324M-compatible videophone.)
Redial using voice call	The phone for the forwarding number is not compatible with videophone calls.
Please activate caller ID before dialing again	The other party sets the Caller ID request service.
Your call cannot be connected	The other party sets the Nuisance call blocking service.
Upper limit has been exceeded Connection failed	The upper limit set for a Limit billing plan (Type Limit and Family Wide Limit) is exceeded.
Connection failed	Set the caller ID notification to "ON" and retry You connected without notifying your caller ID (when dialing into visualnet, etc.) • This message may also appear in other situations.
Please make your call from the i-mode web page	You attempted to make a videophone call to watch V-live without browsing the i-mode official site.

- If the videophone call is not connected, your call is automatically switched to a voice call when you set "Auto redial as voice" to "ON". However, the call may not be handled in this way if you call an ISDN synchronous 64K, ISDN videophone which does not support the 3G-324M standard (as of May, 2008) or if you dial a wrong number. Note that call charge may be applied in some cases.

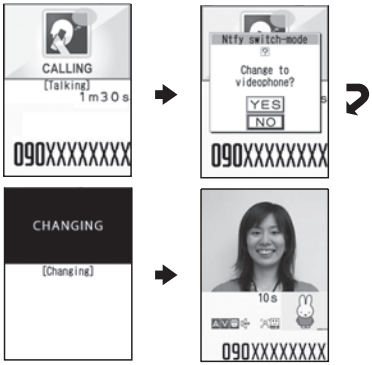
Switching a Voice/Videophone Call During a Call (Caller)

- You can use this function with the terminals compatible with voice call/videophone call switch.
- You can switch the voice call only when you are the caller.
- To switch the call, the receiver needs to set "Ntfy switch-mode" to notify the switch beforehand. →p.67

<Example: To switch a voice call to a videophone call>

1 In-call screen (p.48)▶[■] (V. phone)▶ "YES"

While switching, the screen which indicates that the calls are being switched appears and the voice guidance is played.



The digital communication fee is charged after the appearance of this screen.

Illustrations Dick Bruna © copyright Mercis bv, 1953-2008 www.miffy.com

■ **To switch a videophone call to a voice call**

▶Videophone in-call screen (p.48)▶✉ (FUNC)▶"Change to voice"

NOTE

- It takes about 5 seconds to switch the calls. Note that the signal quality may affect how long it takes.
- You cannot switch the calls during calling in the following cases:
  - When the other party is holding the call
  - When the other party activates Record message
- The displayed call duration is reset to 0 second each time the calls are switched. However, the total time for voice and videophone call is displayed after ending a call.
- Depending on the other party's communication conditions or the signal quality, you may not be able to switch the calls and the call may be canceled.
- When the call is switched, the first dialed or received call is registered to the Redial/Dialed calls records or Received calls records.

<When switching from voice call to videophone call>

- If the caller is using i-mode, the i-mode communication is canceled to switch to videophone.
- If the other party is using packet communication (including i-mode), you receive the message "No Switch" meaning you cannot switch the calls.
- You cannot switch the calls when "Call Waiting" is activated.

Making International Calls

<WORLD CALL>

WORLD CALL is an international dialing service that can be used from DOCOMO mobile phones.
FOMA service subscribers are also subscribed to "WORLD CALL" when they subscribe to the FOMA service. (This excludes subscribers who declared that they did not require the service.)

- WORLD CALL can be used to call around 240 countries and regions worldwide.
- The "WORLD CALL" is charged with your monthly call charges.
- In addition to dialing a phone number, you can make an international call by adding "+" or selecting "Int'l call" or "Prefix numbers" from the function menu in the enter phone number screen, Redial/Dialed calls screen, Received calls screen or Phonebook detail screen.
- This service is not available in some payment plans.

For additional information regarding WORLD CALL, refer to the contact information provided on the back of the manual.

"International videophone calls" can be made to users of some specific overseas 3G mobile terminals by pressing [V] (V. phone) to make the call after using the dialing procedure below.

- See the DOCOMO website for information on accessible countries and operators.
- Depending on the other party's terminal, the image of the other party displayed on your FOMA terminal may be distorted or the connection may fail when making a international videophone.

Using dial keys to make international calls

1 Dial the number in the following order: 010→Country code→Area code (Long distance code)→The other party's phone number

"009130" can be added first.
If the area code (long distance code) begins with "0", omit the first "0". However, to call to ordinary phones in Italy, "0" is required.

2 [Call]

The international call is made.

Quick and simple procedures for making an international call

- You can store the country codes and IDD prefix codes in "Int'l dial assistance".

● Using "+" to make an international call

By using the "+" that is automatically replaced with the "IDD Prefix Code" set in the "Auto int'l call set.", you can make international calls without dialing the IDD prefix code.

Continued on next page

- As “Auto int’l call set.” in “Int’l dial assistance” is set to “ON” (automatically added) at the time of purchase, the FOMA terminal automatically dials the IDD prefix code.

1 On the standby screen, dial the following; + (0 (1 second or longer)) →Country code→Area code (Long distance code)→The other party’s phone number

If the area code (long distance code) begins with “0”, omit the first “0”. However, to call to ordinary phones in Italy, “0” is required.

2 ▶“Dial”

The international call is made.

■ **To make a call without converting “+” into the IDD prefix code**

▶“Original phone No.”

* Not available in this terminal.

■ **To cancel the call**

▶“Cancel”

Making an international call from the function menu

You can make an international call by adding a country code and IDD prefix code from the function menu.

- You can use the international dial function from the “Enter phone number” screen and the detail screens of “Phonebook/Received calls/Dialed calls/Redial” screens.

<Example: To use the international dial function from the enter phone number screen>

1 Enter the phone number of the other party

2 (FUNC)▶“Int’l call”▶Select the country code▶Select the IDD prefix code

The selected country code and IDD prefix code are added. If the area code (long distance code) begins with “0”, the first “0” is automatically deleted (except when “Italy” is selected for the country code).

3

The international call is made.

Making the setting for the international call <Int’l dial assistance>

You can set the automatic conversion of “+”, and also edit and store the country codes and IDD prefix code for international calls.

1 MENU▶“SETTINGS”▶“Dialing”▶“Int’l dial assistance”▶Select any item:

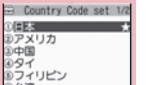
Auto int’l call set.……You can set the automatic conversion of “+” when you make an international call.

▶“ON”▶Select a country code▶Select an IDD prefix code

■ **When you do not convert automatically ▶“OFF”**

Country Code setting……Stores up to 22 country names and country codes used when you make an international call. See the DOCOMO website for information on country codes.

▶Highlight an item▶ (Edit) ▶Enter the country name▶ Enter the country code

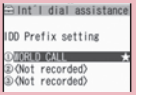


Country Code setting

Function menu➡p.52

IDD Prefix setting……Stores the IDD prefix name and IDD prefix code used when you make an international call. Up to 3 entries can be stored.

▶Highlight an item to be stored or changed▶ (Edit) ▶Enter the IDD prefix name▶ Enter the IDD prefix code



IDD Prefix setting

Function menu➡p.58

FUNC Country Code setting screen (p.52)

Edit……Edits the country code.

Delete……Selects the deleting method from “Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all”.

“About multiple-choice”→p.38

Using Handsfree Call During a Call <Hands-free>

You can hear the other party’s voice from the speaker while talking.

1 In-call screen (p.48)▶ (ON)

“ ” appears and you can hear other party’s voice through a speaker during a handsfree call. While your terminal is ringing, you can switch to handsfree operation by pressing (ON / Off).

Ex. Voice call

Ex. Videophone call

Illustrations Dick Bruna
© copyright Mercis bv, 1953-2008
www.miffy.com

■ **To cancel the handsfree operation**

▶Press [i] ([Off]) during a handsfree call

"[icon]" disappears when you make a voice call.

"[icon]" is changed to "[icon]" in case of videophone.

● Notes on using the handsfree operation

It is recommended to keep a distance of about 30 cm from the FOMA terminal during a handsfree call. If the distance is longer or shorter than 30 cm, the other party may find it difficult to hear you or your voice may sound differently.

NOTE

- Move to an area where your call will not disturb other people before switching to a handsfree call.
- When a call is finished, the handsfree setting is canceled.

Using the Redial/Dialed Calls/ Received Calls Record

<Redial/Dialed calls/Received calls>

Information on dialed or received calls, including the caller's phone number and the date and time are stored in the Redial/Dialed calls/Received calls record. You can make a call to the other party easily by using these records.

- When you make calls to the same phone number repeatedly, the latest entry is stored as the Redial record and separate entries are stored for the Dialed calls record.
- The Redial record can hold up to 30 phone numbers for voice/videophone calls.
- The Dialed calls/Received calls record stores up to 30 voice/videophone call entries and 30 packet communication or 64K data communication entries.
- If the maximum number of logs is exceeded, logs are overwritten starting with the oldest one.

<Example: To make a call from the Redial/Received calls list screen>

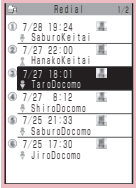
1 On the standby screen▶[redial] (Redial)/[received] (Received calls)

The "Redial screen (list)"/ "Received calls screen (list)" appears.

■ **To check the Dialed calls**

▶[MENU]▶"OWN DATA"▶ "Dialed calls"

The "Dialed calls screen (list)" appears.



Ex. Redial (list)

Function menu➡p.54

2 Highlight the Redial/Received calls record entry

■ **To make a call after checking the details of the Redial/Received calls record**

▶Select the Redial/ Received calls record entry

The "Redial screen (detail)" or "Received calls screen (detail)" appears.

Ex. Redial (detail)

Function menu➡p.54

3 [call] (voice call)/[i] (V. phone)

● Checking the number of missed calls

■ **To confirm only the missed calls from the Received calls record**

▶[MENU]▶"OWN DATA"▶"Received calls"

Total number of received calls, the number of missed calls and the number of unconfirmed missed calls appear.

When you select "Missed calls", only the missed calls appears.

■ **Redial/Dialed calls/Received calls record icons**

Icon*1	Description
PHONE / MISS / MISS	Incoming and outgoing/missed/ unconfirmed missed voice calls
INTL PHONE / INTL MISS / INTL MISS	Incoming and outgoing/missed/ unconfirmed missed international voice calls
PHONE / MISS / MISS	Incoming and outgoing/missed/ unconfirmed missed videophone calls

Continued on next page

Icon*1	Description
PHONE / MISS / MISS	Incoming and outgoing/missed/unconfirmed missed international videophone calls
B *2	Incoming and outgoing calls to B mode for 2in1 setting
MSG / MSG	Recorded voice record message/videophone message
	Received calls with Chaku-moji
PACKET / PACKET MISS / MISS	Outgoing/Incoming/missed/unconfirmed missed packet communication
64k / MISS / MISS	Incoming and outgoing/missed/unconfirmed missed 64K data communication
NO CONNECT	Incoming packet communication or 64K data communication that is received without external device connected
GMT	Incoming and outgoing calls when the time zone is not "GMT+09" regardless of the "Auto time adjust" setting (if summer time is set, the summer time setting applies)

*1: Some icons look different between the detail screen and the list screen.
*2: Displayed only when the 2in1 is in Dual mode.

NOTE

- If you use 2in1, up to 30 records are stored for each phone number. Also, when set to Dual mode, up to 30 Redial/Dialed calls/Received calls records for both phone numbers and total of the 60 records are displayed.
- If the same phone number is registered in the multiple phonebook entries with different names, the name retrieved by the phonebook search in the order of reading is displayed in the Redial/Dialed calls/Received calls record. →p.73

<Redial/Dialed calls>

- Setting "Restrict dialing" deletes all the Redial/Dialed calls records.
- If you make a call by selecting Multi number from the function menu, the registered name and number of the additional number are displayed under the phone number in the Redial screen (detail)/Dialed calls record screen (detail). If you make a call without using the function menu, nothing is displayed even when "Set Multi Number" is set to additional number.

<Received calls>

- When "Missed calls display" in the "Ring time(sec.)" is set to "Not display" and you receive a call of which ring tone sounded for shorter time than the time set in the "Set mute seconds", the call is not displayed on the Received calls record.
- If the caller is using "Dial-in", a number different from the "Dial-in" number may be displayed.

NOTE

- When you have subscribed to Multi number and make a call from the Received calls record screen, the phone call is made from the number which received the call regardless of the "Set Multi Number" setting.
- When you receive a call for additional number of Multi number, the registered name of the additional number are displayed under the phone number in the Received calls record screen (detail).

FUNC Redial/Dialed calls/Received calls screen (p.53)

Notify Caller ID*1 →p.56

Prefix numbers*1 →p.58

Chaku-moji*1 →p.55

Int'l call*1 →p.52

2in1/Multi Num.*1……When 2in1 is set to ON and Dual mode, selects from "Number A/Number B/Cancel number" (p.323) (not available when A mode or B mode is set).
Selects from "Basic number/Additional number 1/Additional number 2/Cancel number" (p.319) at the Multi Number when 2in1 set to OFF.

Ring time*2*3……Displays the missed call record entries with the ringing times.

Add to phonebook →p.72

Look-up phonebook……"Accessing the phonebook from the Redial or Dialed Calls record" →p.74

Add shortcut →p.94

Compose message*4 →p.156

Compose SMS*4 →p.182

Sent address*5*6……Displays the sent address list.

Received address*2……Displays the received address list.

Select image……Selects the image used during a videophone call from "Chara-den".
Select "Release settings" to cancel the setting.

Set large font⇔Set normal font*3……Switches the character size of the displayed name. →p.93

Delete……Selects the deleting method from "Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all".
"About multiple-choice" →p.38

*1: Available only for the detail screen.
*2: Available only for the Received calls screen.
*3: Available only for the list screen.
*4: Available only when 2in1 is in A mode or Dual mode, and selecting the record screen for the A mode.
*5: Available only for the Redial/Dialed calls screen.
*6: Not available when 2in1 is in B mode.

NOTE

- Selecting "Delete all" from the Redial/Dialed calls record deletes all the Redial and Dialed calls records. Note that selecting "Delete this" or "Delete selected" for the Redial record does not delete the entries of Dialed calls record, and selecting "Delete this" or "Delete selected" for the Dialed calls record does not delete the entries of the Redial record.

<Compose message>

- When the phonebook stores the phone number and the mail address, an address listed first is used as destination to create a message.

Using Chaku-moji <Chaku-moji>

When making a voice call or videophone call, you can send a message (Chaku-moji) to the other party to show the summary of the call, etc. beforehand.

- 5 Chaku-moji messages are stored at the time of purchase. You can change the pre-installed Chaku-moji messages.
- You can include pictographs or face marks in Chaku-moji, and you can send a message of up to 10 characters including pictograph/symbol/double-byte character/single-byte character.
- For details on Chaku-moji and the compatible models, refer to the DOCOMO website or "Mobile Phone User's Guide [Network services]".

Making a call with a message

You can add Chaku-moji when making a voice or videophone call from the "Enter phone number" screen and the detail screen of the "Phonebook" or "Redial/Dialed calls/Received calls".

<Example: To make a call with Chaku-moji from the enter phone number screen>

1 Enter phone number screen (p.48)▶ (FUNC)▶"Chaku-moji"▶Select any item:

Create message……Enters Chaku-moji. You can enter up to 10 characters.

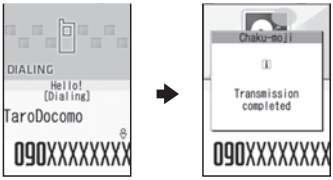
Select message……Selects from the stored Chaku-moji.
You can edit Chaku-moji by pressing (Edit) on the message selection screen.

Sent messages……Selects from the previously sent Chaku-moji. You can edit Chaku-moji by pressing (Edit) on the sent message screen.

■ To delete the entered Chaku-moji (to make a call without Chaku-moji)

▶ (FUNC)▶"Chaku-moji"▶"Create message"▶Clear all the entered Chaku-moji

2 (voice call) / (V. phone)



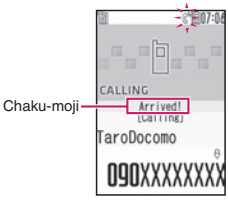
When the other party's terminal receives Chaku-moji, the result "Transmission completed" appears.

NOTE

- Sending Chaku-moji is charged. Receiving Chaku-moji is not charged.
- You can store up to 30 Chaku-moji in the sent messages record (if you use 2in1, up to 30 sent messages records when set to each mode, and up to 30 sent messages records for each and total of the 60 records are stored when set to Dual mode). When you send same Chaku-moji repeatedly, only the latest one is recorded. When the entries exceed the maximum number, entries are overwritten from the oldest entry.
- If the receiver's terminal is under the following conditions, Chaku-moji cannot be sent. In this case, no sending charges apply.
  - The terminal is not compatible with Chaku-moji ("Transmission failed" appears)
  - Chaku-moji does not appear on the screen of the receiver terminal because of the "MSG display settings" on the receiver terminal ("Transmission failed" appears)
  - Public mode (Driving mode) is set
  - The ringing time for recording message is set to 0 second.
  - " " or the FOMA terminal is turned off.
- Depending on the signal status, sending result does not appear on the sender terminal even when the receiver terminal receives Chaku-moji. In this case, sending charges apply.
- You cannot send or receive Chaku-moji when using the FOMA terminal overseas.

When you receive a voice or videophone call with a message

The Chaku-moji appears on the ringing screen. The Chaku-moji disappears when you answer the call.



Ex. Voice call

Continued on next page

NOTE

- Even when you receive a call whose ring tone sounded for shorter time than the time set in the "Set mute seconds" of "Ring time (sec.)", Chaku-moji is displayed and recorded in the Received calls record.
- Depending on the status of the sender or receiver, Chaku-moji may not be displayed even if you receive a call with Chaku-moji.
- When the Original lock is set to "Chaku-moji", Chaku-moji is not displayed even if you receive a call with Chaku-moji. In this case, Chaku-moji is stored to the Received calls record after releasing the lock.

Displaying a message from the Received calls record

When you receive Chaku-moji, the " " icon appears on the Received calls record, and you can check the Chaku-moji message on the "Received calls screen (detail)".

NOTE

- Even when you make a call using the Received calls record, the Chaku-moji in the record is not sent.

Editing and setting messages

1 MENU▶"SERVICE"▶"Chaku-moji"▶ Select any item:

Create message……Stores or edits frequently used Chaku-moji. You can store up to 30 Chaku-moji (including 5 pre-installed).
▶Highlight an item to be stored or edited▶ (Edit)▶ Enter the Chaku-moji

Create message list

Function menu➡p.56

MSG display settings……Sets the Chaku-moji display setting when you receive a call with Chaku-moji.

Display all messages……Displays all Chaku-moji messages.

Only number in PH-book……Displays only the Chaku-moji messages from senders stored in the phonebook.

Calls with Caller ID……Displays only the Chaku-moji messages from senders providing the caller ID.

Hide all messages……Hides all Chaku-moji messages.

FUNC Create message list screen (p.56)

Edit……Edits Chaku-moji.

Delete……Selects the deleting method from "Delete this/ Delete selected/Delete all".
"About multiple-choice"→p.38

NOTE

- You cannot delete the pre-installed Chaku-moji. Even when you change a pre-installed Chaku-moji and delete the Chaku-moji, it is restored to the default.

Setting Caller ID Notification

Set whether to display your phone number (caller ID) on the other party's phone (display) each time you make a call.

- Take care when informing others of your phone number, as this is important personal information.
- You can set Caller ID Notification all at once.→p.46

Adding the "186"/"184" prefix to the other party's phone number

To provide your caller ID, add the "186" prefix when you dial the phone number. To withhold your caller ID, use the "184" prefix.

■To provide your phone number
186 - "The other party's phone number" - (voice call)/ (videophone call)

■To withhold your phone number
184 - "The other party's phone number" - (voice call)/ (videophone call)

Selecting from the function menu

Select "OFF" or "ON" from the function menu the "Enter phone number" screen and the detail screens of "Phonebook"/"Received calls"/"Dialed calls"/"Redial".

<Example: To make a voice call from the Enter phone number screen>

1 Enter the phone number of the other party

2 (FUNC)▶"Notify Caller ID"▶"OFF" or "ON"

■ To cancel "Notify Caller ID"
▶"Cancel prefix"
When "Cancel prefix" is selected, the "Caller ID Notification" setting is applied.

3 [ ] (voice call)/[ ] (videophone)

NOTE

- This function is available only when the other party's phone can display caller ID.
- If you hear a message requesting your caller ID, show your caller ID.
- When making an international call, "186"/"184" may be disabled. Select "Notify Caller ID" from the function menu.
- If you make a call with the "186"/"184" prefix, the phone number including this prefix is recorded in the Redial/Dialed calls.

Sending Push Signals

<Pause dial>

By sending push signals from the FOMA terminal, you can use services such as ticket ordering and bank balance requests.

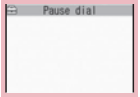
Storing dialing data as pause dial record entries

You can store the dialing data used as push signals to Pause dial beforehand. Inserting P (pause) into the dialing data allows you to send data with a separation where a pause lies.

- You can store 1 dialing data, consisting of up to 128 characters.
- You can enter numbers from 0 to 9, the # and ✳ symbols, and P (pause) for dialing data.
- You cannot enter P (pause) in succession or at the beginning of the dialing data.

1 [MENU]▶"SETTINGS"▶"Dialing"▶"Pause dial"

The "Pause dial" screen appears.



Pause dial

Function menu➡p.57

■ **If there is dialing data already stored**

The stored dialing data appears.

2 [ ] (Edit)▶Enter the dialing data

Press [0] to [9], [#] and [✳] to enter the dialing data.

■ **To enter P (pause)**

▶[✳] (1 second or longer)

FUNC Pause dial screen (p.57)

Edit……Edits the dialing data.

Send pause dial……Enters the phone number of the other party and sends the dialing data.
Each time you press [ ], the dialing data up to P (pause) is transmitted.

Delete……Deletes the stored dialing data.

Transmitting the dialing data as a pause dial

1 [MENU]▶"SETTINGS"▶"Dialing"▶"Pause dial"▶[■] (Send)

2 Dial the phone number of the destination▶[ ]

The FOMA terminal calls the entered phone number and displays the dialing data up to the first P (pause) while the dialed phone is ringing. P (pause) is not displayed.

3 [ ]

Each time you press [ ], the dialing data up to P (pause) is transmitted. Once the FOMA terminal has finished sending the last number, the in-call screen reappears.

■ **To transmit all the dialing data at once**

▶[ ] (1 second or longer)▶"Send at one time"

It may not be possible to send all the data at once to some recipients.

NOTE

- Some phones may be unable to receive push signals.

Using the Prefix Function

You can store the prefix numbers such as IDD prefix code and 186/184 for notifying/withholding your caller ID beforehand and add these prefix numbers when you make calls.

Storing the prefix numbers

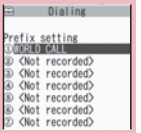
<Prefix setting>

- You can store up to 7 prefix numbers.
- You can enter numbers from 0 to 9 and the #, ✳ and + symbols.

Continued on next page

1 MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"Dialing"▶"Prefix setting"

The "Prefix setting" screen appears.



Prefix setting

2 Highlight the item to store or change▶ (Edit)

3 Enter the name to be stored

You can enter up to 8 double-byte or 16 single-byte characters.

Function menu➡p.58

4 Enter the numbers (prefix)

You can enter up to 10 digits.

FUNC Prefix setting screen (p.58)/IDD Prefix setting screen (p.52)

Edit……Edits the prefix number or IDD prefix code.

Delete this • Delete all……Deletes one or all prefix numbers/IDD prefix codes.

Making a call with the Prefix numbers <Prefix numbers>

- You can add the prefix numbers from the "Enter phone number" screen and the detail screens of "Phonebook/Received calls/Dialed calls/Redial" screens.

<Example: To make a voice call by adding prefix numbers from the enter phone number screen>

1 Enter the phone number of the other party

2 (FUNC) ▶"Prefix numbers"▶Select the stored name▶

Setting Sub-addresses When Making Calls <Sub-address setting>

You can set whether to specify "✳" in the phone number as a separator so that the numbers following "✳" are recognized as a sub-address (ON/OFF).

- Sub-addresses are used in ISDN to identify calls made from specific communications devices and to select content in "V-live".

1 MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"Dialing"▶"Sub-address setting"▶"ON" or "OFF"

NOTE

- In the following cases, "✳" does not function as a sub-address separator. The entered number including "✳" is recognized as an ordinary phone number:
  - When the "✳" is entered at the beginning of a phone number
  - When "✳" immediately follows "186"/"184" at the beginning of a phone number
  - When "✳" immediately follows a number entered using "Prefix numbers"
  - When the phone number contains "✳590#/✳591#/✳592#"

Setting the Alarm Used for Reconnection <Reconnect signal>

When the signal quality deteriorates during a voice/videophone call and the call drops out, the FOMA terminal will automatically reconnect the call if the signal quality quickly improves. Set the type of alarm when a call is reconnected for this function.

- The interval for reconnection varies depending on communication conditions or the signal quality. It takes about 10 seconds.

1 MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"Talk"▶"Reconnect signal"▶Select an alarm tone

Select from "No tone/High tone/Low tone".

NOTE

- Call charges apply in the interval (up to about 10 seconds) for reconnection.

Blocking Out Ambient Noise <Noise reduction>

This function suppresses ambient noise and makes it easier for the other party in a voice or videophone call to hear you.

1 MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"Talk"▶"Noise reduction"▶"ON" or "OFF"

Making Handsfree Calls in the Car <In-car Hands-free>

You can make or receive voice calls with handsfree compatible devices by connecting the FOMA terminal to handsfree compatible devices such as the In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (optional) or a car navigation system. For information on how to use the handsfree device, refer to the manual provided with the device. The FOMA In-Car Hands-Free Cable 01 (optional) is required to use the In-Car Hands-Free Kit 01 (optional).

NOTE

- To operate from the handsfree device, set the USB mode to "Communication mode".
- The display and ring tones used for incoming calls and mail are as specified in the FOMA terminal settings.
- When the handsfree device is set to emit the sound from the handsfree device, the ring tone still sound through the handsfree device even when the FOMA terminal is set to Manner mode or the ring volume is set to "Silent".
- When the Public mode (Driving mode) is set, operation for incoming calls and messages is as specified in the "Public mode (Driving mode)" settings.
- When the Record message is set, operation for incoming calls is as specified in the "Record message" settings.
- When the handsfree device is set to emit the sound from the FOMA terminal, operation when the FOMA terminal is folded during a call is as specified in "Setting when folded". When the handsfree device is set to emit sound from the handsfree device, folding the FOMA terminal does not affect the call status regardless of the "Setting when folded" setting.

Receiving a Voice/ Videophone Call

*** FOMA SO706i does not contain front camera. A substitute image (Chara-den) or rear camera image will be sent to the other party. A substitute image (Chara-den) can be changed to an image in "My picture", etc. using "Select image".→p.67**

1 Voice/Videophone call is received

The ring tone sounds and the illumination flashes. The "Ringing" screen/"Videophone ringing" screen appears.

■ **When you receive a call with Chaku-moji**

The Chaku-moji appears on the ringing screen/ videophone ringing screen.→p.55

Ringing

Function menu➡p.60

Videophone ringing

Function menu➡p.60

■ **To put a voice/videophone call on hold while the FOMA terminal is ringing→p.62**

2 [call]

The "In-call" screen/"Videophone in-call" screen appears.

■ **Operations during a videophone call**

You can perform various operations such as changing the camera image to the substitute image and muting the sound.→p.48

■ **When the other party switches a voice/ videophone call during a call→p.60**

■ **To put the current voice/videophone call on hold→p.62**

3 To end the call, press [end]

Display while receiving a call

■ **When the other party's phone number is notified**

The other party's phone number appears on the screen. When the caller is stored in the phonebook, the name stored in the phonebook appears (only the name is displayed while Keypad lock is set).→p.70

- If the same phone number is registered in the multiple phonebook entries with different names, the first name retrieved by the phonebook search in the order of reading appears.→p.73
- If the caller is stored as secret data, the name or other information does not appear and only the phone number appears.
- When you receive a call for additional number of Multi number, the registered name of the additional number is displayed on the ringing screen.

■ **When the other party's phone number is not notified**

The reason of not notifying appears.

FUNC Ringing screen/Videophone ringing screen (p.59)

Call Rejection……Terminates the receiving call without answering.

Call Forwarding……Forwards the call.
The call is forwarded regardless of the "Call Forwarding" setting "Activate/Deactivate".

Voice Mail……Connects the call to the voice mail service center.
The call is connected to the voice mail service center regardless of the "Voice Mail" setting "Activate/Deactivate".

Change Display……Switches the display from additional number 1 or 2 to the number from which the call is forwarded. This can be selected when receiving multi number call (for additional number 1 or 2) and the call is forwarded at the same time.

NOTE

- You can receive a call using a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional). →p.298
- If you have subscribed to the Call waiting, Voice mail or Call forwarding service, activate "Set in-call arrival" and set "Incoming Call Mng" to "Answer", you will hear a short double-beep ("bibip") when you receive a call when you are already on a call.
  - If you subscribe to the Voice mail or Call forwarding service, you can answer the call by ending the current call.
  - If you subscribe to the Call waiting service, you can answer the voice call by putting the current call on hold and you can answer the videophone call by ending the current call.
- You can set the incoming call management from the caller who is not stored in the phonebook. →p.114
- You can set the incoming call restriction for each phone number stored in the phonebook. →p.112

<Videophone>

- It may take a few seconds to switch from a camera image to a substitute image (Chara-den) depending on the Chara-den.

When the Other Party Switches a Voice/Videophone Call (Caller)

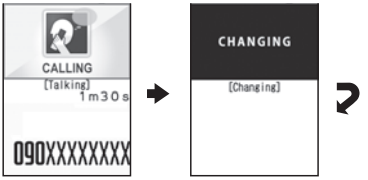
When you receive a voice/videophone call, the other party can switch the call between voice call and videophone call.

- The receiver cannot switch a voice call to a videophone call.
- To switch the call, the receiver needs to set "Ntfy switch-mode" to notify the switch beforehand. →p.67
- You can use this function with the terminals compatible with voice call/videophone call switch.

<Example: When the other party switched a voice call to a videophone call>

1 In-call screen (p.48)▶The other party switches to a videophone call

While switching, the screen which indicates that the calls are being switched appears and the voice guidance is played.
When the voice call is switched to the videophone call, the substitute image is sent to the other party.



Illustrations Dick Bruna
© copyright Mercis bv,
1953-2008
www.miffy.com

■ **When the other party switched a videophone call to a voice call**

▶Videophone in-call screen (p.48)▶The other party switches to a voice call
The videophone call is switched to the voice call.

Using the Dial Keys to Answer a Call <Answer setting>

You can use this setting to turn off the ring tone or answer the phone quickly when you receive a call.

1 MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"Incoming call"▶"Answer setting"▶Select any item:

Any key answer……Valid for voice calls. You can answer the call by pressing any of the following keys.
[Answer], [■] (Answer) , [0] to [9], [#], [*], [CLR], [i], [ch], [✥]
* For videophone calls, you can answer the call only by ordinary key operations ([Answer], [■] (Subst.)).

Quick silent……Pressing any of the following keys or opening the FOMA terminal stops the incoming call reaction while the caller continues to hear the ring tone.
[0] to [9], [#], [*], [CLR], [✥], [ch] or [i] (for voice calls only)
To answer the call, press [Answer] or [■] (Answer/Subst.).

OFF……You can answer the call only with [ ] or [■] (Answer/Subst.).

NOTE

- Even when "Quick silent" is set, the "Any key answer" function is used in Manner mode.

Ending/Holding Calls with the FOMA Terminal Folded

<Setting when folded>

You can set how your FOMA terminal operates when it is folded during a voice or videophone call.

1 [MENU]▶"SETTINGS"▶"Talk"▶"Setting when folded"▶Select any item:

No tone……Mutes the sound. The other party does not hear the hold tone.

Tone on……Puts a call on hold (holding). When the FOMA terminal is folded, the other party hears the hold tone. For videophone calls, the image for holding is sent to the other party.

Speaker ON……The hold tone is sent to the other party and also plays through the speaker.

Speaker OFF……Only the other party hears the hold tone.

End the call……Ends the call. It is the same operation as pressing [ ].

NOTE

- When Manner mode is set, no sound is played through the speaker even if "Speaker ON" is set.
- When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected, this function is disabled.
- Even if the "Tone on" setting is selected, folding the FOMA terminal activates the "No tone" setting if "Call Waiting" is switched on.

Adjusting the Earpiece Volume

<Volume>

1 On the standby screen▶[ ] (1 second or longer)▶Adjust the volume with [ ]

Pressing [ ] (1 second or longer) displays the earpiece volume screen. If no operation is conducted for 2 seconds or longer when the earpiece volume screen is displayed, the earpiece volume screen is expired.

You can adjust the volume in 6 steps from "Level 1" (quietest) to "Level 6" (loudest).

■ To adjust the earpiece volume during a call

During a voice call: [ ] (1 second or longer)
During a videophone call: [ ]

- You can also adjust with [ ] (▲マナー)/[ ] (▼メモ).

NOTE

- If you adjust the volume during a call, the adjusted setting is retained after you end the call.

Adjusting the Ring Volume

<Ring volume>

You can adjust the volume of the ring tone for a incoming call, mail, MessageR/F in 6 steps for each type of call. You can also set to silent or to gradually get louder.

1 [MENU]▶"SETTINGS"▶"Incoming call"▶"Ring volume"▶Select an item to adjust its volume

Select "Phone" to adjust the ring tone volume for voice calls and 64K data communication.
Select "Mail" to adjust the ring tone volume for i-mode mail, Area Mail, SMS or packet communication.

2 Use [ ] to adjust the ring volume▶[■] (Set)

■ To raise the volume gradually

▶Press [ ] in "Level 6"

When set to "Step", the ring volume becomes louder and louder in every 3 seconds.

■ To set to silent

▶Press [ ] in "Level 1"

An icon appears in the standby screen to confirm that a "Silent" ring tone is set.

: "Phone" or "Videophone" is set to "Silent"
: "Silent" is set for "Mail", "MessageR" and/or "MessageF".
: Both "" and "" are set.

NOTE

- The ring volume setting specified for "Phone" in this function is also applied to the "Select ring tone" setting for a voice call, the alarm tones for "Schedule" and "To Do list".

Holding the Ringing/Current Call <Answer hold/Holding>

<Example: To put the ringing call on hold>

1 While ringing▶[ ]

The FOMA terminal makes three rapid beeps and puts the call on hold.
The caller hears a message saying that you cannot answer at the moment and the call is held without hanging up.

■ **To put the current call on hold**
▶During a call▶[CLR]

■ **To end the call during answer hold/holding**
▶[ ]

2 Press [ ] to resume the call
You can also use [CLR] to cancel holding when you put the current call on hold.

NOTE
- Call charges apply while putting the ringing call or current call on hold.

Setting the hold tone <Set hold tone>

You can set the guidance messages to the other party during the answer hold.
- You cannot change the hold tone that is played during a call.

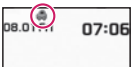
1 [MENU]▶"SETTINGS"▶"Talk"▶"Set hold tone"▶"On hold tone" ▶Select the hold tone
Select from "Tone 1/Tone 2/Voice announce 1*/Voice announce 2*".
* : Not available when no Voice announce is recorded.

Using the Public Mode (Driving Mode) <Public mode (Driving mode)>

The Public mode is an automatic answering service provided to keep manner in public circumstances. During Public mode, a caller hears a message that you cannot answer the call because you are driving or you are in the place you have to refrain from calling (on the train or bus, in the theater, etc.), then the call ends.

- Public mode can only be set/released from the standby screen. (It can also be set/released when the " " icon is displayed.)
- You can still make calls when the FOMA terminal is in Public mode.
- This function is not available during data communication.
- When you receive a call of "User unset" while Caller ID Request is set to "Activate", caller ID request message is announced. (The Public mode message is not announced.)

1 On the standby screen▶[#] (1 second or longer)



Public mode is set and " " appears.
When you receive a call, the caller hears the message "I can't answer the call because I am driving or I have to refrain from calling now. Please call back later."

■ **To release the Public mode (Driving mode)**
▶On the standby screen▶[#] (1 second or longer)
Public mode is canceled and " " disappears.

NOTE
- The Public mode setting takes priority when "Record message" is "ON".
- The Public mode setting takes priority when Manner mode is set at the same time.
- If you make a voice call to an emergency number (110, 119 or 118) while Public mode is set, Public mode is released.
- The following tones do not sound in Public mode:
  - Ring tone for voice/videophone call
  - Ring tone for mail or message
  - Alarm tone
  - Charge sound
  - Software tone for i-αppli
  - Ring tone for packet communication/64k data communication

● When Public mode (Driving mode) is set

The FOMA terminal does not ring when you receive a voice or videophone call. Calls are logged in the "Received calls" record as "Missed calls" record, and the "Missed call" shortcut icon appears on the standby screen.
- A caller making a voice call hears a message that you cannot answer the call because you are driving or you are in the place you have to refrain from using mobile phones, then the call ends.
- A caller making a videophone call sees the Public mode video message on his or her display, then the call ends.

- If the FOMA terminal is set to Public mode (Driving mode) while network services are activated, voice calls and videophone calls are handled as shown in the **Table 1** (p.63).
- When you receive a mail, the ring tone does not sound and the "New mail" shortcut icon appears on the standby screen.

NOTE

- If the power is off or "圏外" is displayed, the message for "圏外" is announced instead of the Public mode message even when Public mode is set.

Using the Public Mode (Power OFF) <Public mode (Power OFF)>

The Public mode (Power OFF) is an automatic answering service provided to keep manner in public circumstances. During Public mode (Power OFF), a caller who made a call while the FOMA terminal is turned off hears a message that you cannot answer the call because you are in the place you have to turn off the mobile phone (in the hospital, on the airplane, around the priority seat on the train, etc.), then the call ends.

1 On the standby screen▶

[＊][2][5][2][5][1]▶[ ]

Public mode (Power OFF) is set. (Nothing changes on the standby screen.)

When you receive a call after setting Public mode (Power OFF) and turning off the FOMA terminal, the caller hears the message "The person you are calling is in an area where cell phone should not be used. Please call back later."

■ To cancel the Public mode (Power OFF)

▶On the standby screen▶

[＊][2][5][2][5][0]▶[ ]

■ To check Public mode (Power OFF) setting

▶On the standby screen▶

[＊][2][5][2][5][9]▶[ ]

● When Public mode (Power OFF) is set

The setting is valid until "＊25250" is dialed to release the Public mode (Power OFF). The setting is not canceled only by turning on the FOMA terminal.
The Public mode (Power OFF) message is announced even when you are in an out-of-service area or where the reception is very poor.

- A caller making a voice call hears a message that you cannot answer the call because you are in the place you have to turn off the mobile phone, then the call ends.
- A caller making a videophone call sees the Public mode (Power OFF) video message on his or her display, then the call ends.
- If the FOMA terminal is set to Public mode (Power OFF) while network services are activated, voice calls and videophone calls are handled as shown in the **Table 1** (p.63).

[Table 1] Handling of received calls when network services and Public mode (Driving mode/Power OFF) are set

Service	When a voice call is received	When a videophone call is received
Voice Mail Service	• Connects to the Voice mail service center after announcing the Public mode message.*	• Connects to the Voice mail service center without showing the Public mode video message.
Call Forwarding Service	• Transfers the call to the forwarding number after announcing the Public mode message.* • The Public mode message is announced or not depending on the setting of the call forwarding service.	• Transfers the videophone call to the forwarding number without showing the Public mode video message. • The connection is not established when the videophone for the forwarding number is not compatible with 3G-324M.
Nuisance Call Blocking	• Ends the call after showing the message that the connection could not be established for the barred callers. • Ends the call after announcing the Public mode message for other callers.	• Ends the call after showing the video message that the connection could not be established for the barred callers. • Ends the call after showing the Public mode video message for other callers.
Caller ID Request	• Ends the call after announcing the caller ID request message for the callers who do not provide the caller ID. • Ends the call after announcing the Public mode message for the callers who provide the caller ID.	• Ends the call after showing the caller ID request video message for the callers who do not provide the caller ID. • Ends the call after showing the Public mode video message for the callers who provide the caller ID.

* : If the ring time is set to 0 second, the Public mode message is not announced and the "Voice Mail Service" or "Call Forwarding Service" is applied. In addition, they are not recorded in the "Received calls" record and "Missed call" shortcut icon does not appear.

When You Cannot Answer a Received Call <Missed calls>

When you cannot answer a received call, the appears on the standby screen. When you select , you can check the date, time and the caller ID about the call.

● "Advising shortcut icons"→p.94

1 On the standby screen▶■▶Select " "

The Received calls list screen appears.→p.53

To check the information with the FOMA terminal folded

When there is a missed call or new mail (i-mode mail, Area Mail and SMS), the illumination keeps on flashing. When you press (▼メモ), you can confirm the caller or sender in the voice.

1 Press (▼メモ) with the FOMA terminal folded

Notify it with a voice according to the setting of "Info notice setting".

● Illumination flashing

When there is a missed call or new mail, the illumination continues flashing according to the following patterns and colors:

- Voice call/Videophone
  Lighting pattern: Slow Beat
  Flashing color: Citrine orange
- New mail/Area mail
  Lighting pattern: Slow Beat
  Flashing color: Light purple

■ Flashing conditions

- If "Missed call" under "Illumination set" is set to "OFF", the illumination does not work when there is a missed call.
- If "Missed mail" under "Illumination set" is set to "OFF", the illumination does not work when a new mail arrives.
- The illumination does not flash in Public mode (Driving mode).

■ To turn off the lamp

- Selects the icon for "Missed call" or "New mail" in the display or push CLR (1 second or longer) to check the description.

Setting the Notification Method for Missed Calls <Info notice setting>

You can set the notification type when (▼メモ) is pressed.

● The following shows options and actions:

Item	When there is a missed call, new mail, etc.	When there is no missed call, new mail, etc.
ON	"Bibip, bibip" tone.	"Bibip" tone.
OFF	The Confirmation Tone does not sound.	

1 MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"Incoming call"▶"Info notice setting"▶"ON" or "OFF"

■ When ボイス(Voice) is selected

If you set "日本語" (Japanese) in "Select language", you can select "電子音" (electronic sound), "ボイス" (voice) and "OFF".

You can set the voice to read out (ON) the name or not (OFF) when the caller is stored in the phonebook, when a message is recorded or when a mail arrives.

NOTE

- This function alerts you using a "YES" indication when the "Missed call", "New mail", etc. shortcut icon is displayed on the standby screen.→p.94
- You cannot use (▼メモ) to check for missed calls or new mail in the following cases:
  - When Side key guard is set to "ON"
  - When playing music with the Music Player/ Music&Video Channel
- The volume set in the "Phone" in the "Ring volume" setting is used (if "Phone" is set to "Silent" or "Step", the volume is set to "Level 2").
- Opening the FOMA terminal during the notification stops the notification.
- If the reading of caller's name is not stored in the phonebook or the name stored in the phonebook is not displayed, the caller's name is not read out even when "名前通知" (name notification) of "ボイス" (voice) is set to "ON" in Japanese language mode.

Having the Caller Leave a Message <Record message>

When you cannot answer a voice or videophone call, this function allows you to record a message from the caller on your FOMA terminal.

● The voice call can record 5 messages up to 20 seconds, and the videophone call can record 2 messages up to 20 seconds for each 1 case.

Setting Record message

1 MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"Incoming call"▶"Record message"▶Select any item:

ON……Select the desired type of answer message from "Japanese 1/Japanese 2/English/Voice announce 1*/Voice announce 2*", then set the record message.

OFF……Cancels the Record message setting.

* : Not available when no Voice announce is recorded.

2 **Enter the ringing time (between 000 to 120 seconds in 3 digits)**

The record message is set and "" and "" appear on the standby screen.

NOTE

- To give priority to "Record message" function when "Voice Mail", "Call Forwarding" and "Record message" are set at the same time, set the ringing time of Record message shorter than that of Voice mail and Call forwarding.
- If the mute time set in "Ring time(sec.)" is longer than the ringing time set for the Record message function, the FOMA terminal switches directly to Record message without ringing first. To have the FOMA terminal ring before it records a message, make sure that the ringing time for Record message is longer than the mute time.
- You can use "Ring tone/Image" (for each phonebook entry) to set an answer message for each phone number and "Ring tone/Image" (for the phonebook group) to set an answer message for each group.

When "Record message" is set

The record message activates when the set time is elapsed.

- To the caller of a voice call, the answer message is played and the recording starts.
- To the caller of a videophone call, the "Preparing" image is sent and the answer message is played, then the "Recording" image is sent and the recording starts.

■ When message recording starts

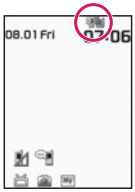
- The recording screen appears. The caller's voice can be heard through the FOMA terminal earpiece during message recording.

Ex. Voice call

■ To answer a voice/videophone call while recording

▶

■ When message recording ends



- The original screen reappears and the "Missed call" and "Record message" shortcut icons appear on the standby screen. You can check the contents by selecting the one of the shortcut icons.→p.65
- Number of recordings are displayed with icons on the icon display area at the top of the screen.

 to : Recorded voice messages (1 to 5)

/ : Recorded videophone messages (1 or 2)

NOTE

- When Manner mode is set, you cannot hear the caller's voice during a message recording.
- You cannot answer another call while recording a message.

Having Callers Leave a Message During an Incoming Call <Quick message>

Even when the "Record message" function is not set to "ON", you can record messages while receiving a call by pressing a key.

1 **While ringing▶(▼メモ)**

The recording of the message starts.

■ To set Manner mode when recording starts

▶While ringing▶(▲マナー)

NOTE

- You cannot set "Record message" to "ON" with this operation.
- If a voice/videophone call arrives when full of voices/videos, Record message does not activate but the call keeps ringing (with operational conditions set in "Manner mode set" when (▲マナー) is pressed).

Playing/Erasing Recorded Messages and Voice Memos

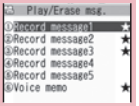
- When there is a recorded message which has not been played, "" (Record message) or "" (Record VP message) appears on the standby screen.

Continued on next page

<Example: To check the recorded message which has not been played>

1 On the standby screen▶■▶Select "" (Record message) or "" (Record VP message)

The "Play/Erase msg." screen or "Play/Erase VP msg." screen appears. "★" appears for the recorded item.



Play/Erase msg.

Function menu➡p.66

■ **To play the recorded message with the menu operation**

▶MENU▶"LIFEKIT"▶"Play/Erase. msg." (voice) or "Play/Erase. VP msg."

2 Select the item to play

<Record message/Voice memo>

The FOMA terminal beeps and playback begins. When the playback ends, the FOMA terminal gives 2 short beeps and the "Play/Erase msg." screen reappears.

You can also play the messages by pressing (▼メモ) on the standby screen.

■ **To play the next message while playing a message**

▶ (▼メモ)

Each time you press (▼メモ), the recorded messages are played from the newest one. Voice memos are played last.

■ **To stop the playback**

▶■ (Stop) or CLR

The "Play/Erase msg." screen reappears.

<Record Videophone message>

The playback starts. When the playback ends, the "Play/Erase VP msg." screen reappears.

■ **To play another message while playing a message**

▶

■ **To adjust volume while playing a message**

▶

■ **To switch ON/OFF of the speaker while playing a message**

▶ (FUNC)▶"Speaker ON" or "Speaker OFF"

■ **To pause the playback**

▶■ (Stop)

To resume playback, press ■ (Play).

■ **To stop the playback**

▶CLR

The "Play/Erase VP msg." screen reappears.

■ **To make a voice/videophone call to the phone number displayed while playing a message**

▶ (voice call) / (V. phone)

■ **To erase the playing message**

▶ (FUNC)▶"Erase"▶"YES"

NOTE

- When 2in1 is in A mode or B mode, "★" does not appear for the recorded message recorded in the unused phone number. When set to "Dual mode", "★" appears for the recorded message recorded in the both phone numbers.

FUNC Play/Erase msg. screen (voice/video) (p.66)

Play……Plays the message.

Delete this……Erases one recorded message or voice memo.

Delete rec. msg.*……Erases all the recorded messages. Voice memos are not erased.

Delete all……Erases all the recorded messages and voice memos.

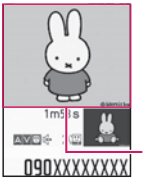
* : Available only with the Play/Erase msg. screen.

Using Chara-den

This function sends a cartoon character instead of your own image when you make a videophone call. "What is Chara-den?"→p.237

- You can display your favorite Chara-den if you set "Substitute image" of "Select image" to "Chara-den" beforehand.
  You can also use Chara-den by setting Chara-den in the phonebook or Ring tone/Image function.

1 Sending a substitute image (Chara-den) on videophone▶Control your character by pressing the dial keys



Pressing a dial key makes the character perform the action assigned to that key. "Using Chara-den characters"→p.238

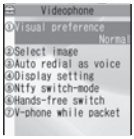
Chara-den

Illustrations Dick Bruna
© copyright Mercis bv, 1953-2008
www.miffy.com

Setting Functions for the Videophone

1 MENU ▶"SETTINGS"▶"Videophone"

The "Videophone settings" screen appears.



Videophone settings

2 **Select any item:**

Visual preference……Selects the image quality of videophone calls from "Normal/Prefer img qual/Prefer motion spd".

Select image→p.67

Auto redial as voice……Sets whether to switch to a voice call when a videophone call cannot be made (ON/OFF).

Display setting

Main display……Selects the image displayed on the main display from "Other side/My side".

Ntfy switch-mode→p.67

Hands-free switch……Sets whether to switch to Handsfree automatically when starting a videophone call (ON/OFF).

V-phone while packet→p.67

Setting an image to send <Select image>

- You can set a JPEG image whose file size is 100K bytes or less and not larger than 854 dots wide × 854 dots high, or a GIF image whose file size is 100K bytes or less and not larger than 854 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 854 dots high (except for the files with restrictions).

1 **Videophone settings screen (p.67) ▶ "Select image"▶Select any item:**

On hold……Sets the image sent for a call on answer hold.

Holding……Sets the image sent while holding a call.

Substitute image……Sets the image.

Record message……You can set the image sent while recording videophone messages.

Preparing……You can set the image sent while preparing for recording videophone messages.

Voice memo……Sets the image sent while recording the voice memo.

2 **Select the image to be sent:**

Pre-installed……Sends only a message.

Original……Sends an image and a message.
To change the image, select an image from My picture from "Change setting" of the function menu.

Chara-den*……Sends the image selected in "Substitute image".
Function menu of Chara-den list screen→p.238
Priority order for Chara-den setting→p.71
To change the Chara-den, select a Chara-den from Chara-den list from "Change setting" of the function menu.

* : Available only when "Substitute image" is selected.

Setting for Switching between Voice Call and Videophone Call <Ntfy switch-mode>

You can set whether to notify the other party that your FOMA terminal supports the switch between a voice call and a videophone call.

- The other party cannot switch the call when set to "Indication OFF".
- You cannot set this function during a call or while " " appears.

1 **Videophone settings screen (p.67) ▶ "Ntfy switch-mode"▶Select any item:**

Indication ON • Indication OFF……Activates or deactivates the Ntfy switch-mode.

Check Indication……Displays the "Ntfy switch-mode" setting.

Setting the answer mode when you receive a videophone call during i-mode <V-phone while packet>

- As the multi access function cannot be used for videophone, incoming videophone calls during i-mode communication or while sending or receiving mails are handled according to this setting.→p.360

1 **Videophone settings screen (p.67)▶"V-phone while packet"▶Select any item:**

V-phone priority……Switches to the videophone ringing screen. When you answer the incoming videophone, i-mode communication is disconnected.

Packet downld priority……Rejects the incoming videophone call.

Continued on next page

V-phone answerphone……If you have subscribed to the "Voice Mail Service", the videophone call is connected to the Voice Mail service center regardless of "Activate/Deactivate" setting of Voice Mail. When you have not subscribed to this service, "Packet downld priority" is activated.

Call forwarding……If you have subscribed to the Call Forwarding Service, the videophone call is forwarded regardless of "Activate/Deactivate" setting of "Call Forwarding". When you have not subscribed to this service, "Packet downld priority" is activated.

NOTE

<Visual preference>
- If the signal quality deteriorates during a videophone call, the image may become grainy or patchy regardless of the settings in "Visual preference".

<Select image>
- If you delete the original still image, the "pre-installed" image is displayed (sent).
- When the Chara-den character set as the substitute image is deleted and the "Chara-den" substitute image cannot be displayed, the pre-installed "ミッフィー (Miffy)" is sent. If you delete the pre-installed "ミッフィー (Miffy)", the "Pre-installed" substitute still image is sent.

<Auto redial as voice>
- When a videophone call is switched and redialed as a voice call, the call is charged as a voice call and digital communication charges are not applied.
- When a call is redialed, only the voice call records are logged in the "Redial/Dialed calls" record.
- Even if "Auto redial as voice" is set to "ON", it may not be possible to redial due to the conditions of the network or the other party, such as busy.

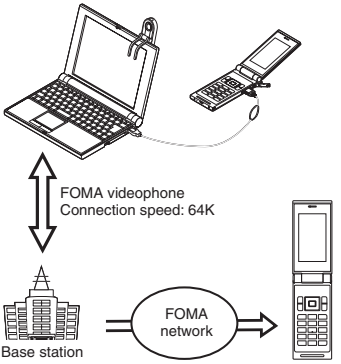
<Hands-free switch>
- The FOMA terminal does not switch to handsfree mode automatically in the following cases even when "Hands-free switch" is set to "ON":
  - While Manner mode is set
  - When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected (however, the microphone operation follows the "Select microphone" setting)
  - When holding a call or Record message is activated for the incoming call

<V-phone while packet>
- Even when set to "V-phone priority", you cannot answer the videophone call if you are using multi access such as using the i-mode communication during a voice call.
- When set to "Packet downld priority", "V-phone answerphone" or "Call forwarding", the received videophone calls are recorded as "Missed calls" in the "Received calls".
- Even when set to "V-phone priority" or "Packet downld priority", "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" service is activated if the ring time for the "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" service is set to 0 second.

Using the Videophone Connecting to External Devices

You can make or receive videophone calls from external devices such as the PC by connecting to the FOMA terminal with the FOMA USB Cable with Charge Function 01/02 (Optional).
To use this function, you have to install a videophone application on the dedicated external device or PC and prepare commercially available devices such as an earphone/microphone and USB compatible Web camera.
- Set the USB mode setting to "Communication mode". There is no specific settings for connecting external devices.
- For details on the operational environment, settings, operations of the videophone application, refer to the manuals supplied with the external terminals.
- "ドコモテレビ電話ソフト (DOCOMO Videophone Software)" (Japanese) is available as the application which is compatible with this function. You can download the Software from the website of DOCOMO Videophone Software (Japanese). (For details of the PC operating environment, etc., refer to the support website.)

http://videophonesoft.nttdocomo.co.jp/



NOTE
- You cannot make a videophone call from the external device during a voice call.
- When you have subscribed to either of the Call Waiting service, Voice Mail Service or Call Forwarding and you receive a videophone call from an external device during a voice call, you can answer the call after ending the current call. When you receive a voice call, videophone call or 64K data communication during a videophone call from the external device, you can answer these calls in the same way.

Phonebook

Phonebooks Available with the FOMA Terminal 70
Adding Information to the Phonebook ..... Add to phonebook 70
Adding Phonebook Entries from the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records 72
Renaming Groups..... Group setting 72
Making a Call from the Phonebook..... Search phonebook 73
Editing the Phonebook..... Edit phonebook 76
Deleting a Phonebook Entry ..... Delete data 76
Checking the Phonebook Storage Status ..... No. of phonebook 76
Setting Different FOMA Terminal Actions for Each Phone Number and Mail Address
..... Ring tone/Image 77
Using Choku-Den ..... Choku-Den 78
Using Dialing Shortcuts ..... Two-touch dialing 79
Storing the Phonebook at the Data Security Center..... Data security serv. 79

Phonebooks Available with the FOMA Terminal

Your FOMA terminal contains two phonebooks. One is the phonebook in the FOMA terminal (Phone) itself, for which you can set a range of functions, and the other is the UIM (FOMA card) phonebook, which can also be used in other FOMA terminals. Each phonebook can be used differently depending on the purpose.

Differences between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and FOMA card (UIM) phonebooks

■Phonebook data

Entry	FOMA terminal (Phone)	FOMA card (UIM)
Number of entries	Up to 1,000 entries	Up to 50 entries
Group	No Group, Group 01 to 19	No Group, Group 01 to 10
Phone number storage	4 numbers per entry (4,000 numbers in total in the phonebook)	1 number per entry
	You can select from 23 icons	" " only
E-mail address storage	3 addresses per entry (3,000 addresses in total in the phonebook)	1 address per entry
	You can select from 5 icons	" " only
Image storage	1 sill image and 1 Chara-den per entry (respectively 100 in total in the phonebook)	—
Other data storage	Name, Reading, ZIP code, Address, Birthday, Memo	Name, Reading

■Features of the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook

The following utility functions can be used with entries stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook:

- "Choku-Den"→p.78
- "Two-touch dialing"→p.79
- "Ring tone/Image"→p.77
- "Restrictions"→p.112
- Storing as secret data→p.103
- Secret code setting→p.75

■Features of the UIM phonebook

As phonebook entries are stored on the FOMA card (UIM), you can transfer your phonebook entries to another FOMA terminal simply by switching the FOMA card (UIM). This makes the UIM phonebook very useful when you use multiple FOMA terminals.

Displaying names

■Voice and videophone calls

When receiving a call with caller ID notified from someone who is stored in the phonebook, the phone number and caller's name is displayed.

When a still image is stored in the phonebook, the image is displayed. However, depending on the size and amount of data of the stored image, it may take time to display the image. The caller's name is also displayed in the "Received calls", "Dialed calls" and "Redial" records.

■Displaying names for i-mode mail and SMS

When you send/receive i-mode mail or SMS to/from someone who is stored in the phonebook, his/her name is displayed in the sent/received mail list/detail screen or address list.

Adding Information to the Phonebook <Add to phonebook>

- The entry cannot be stored unless the "Name" field is filled.

1 MENU▶"PHONEBOOK"▶✉ (FUNC)▶"Add to phonebook"▶Select a phonebook▶Enter a name

You can enter kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabets, numbers, symbols and pictographs (Phone only).
You can store up to 16 double-byte or 32 single-byte characters for "Phone" and 10 double-byte or 21 single-byte alphanumeric characters only (including some single-byte symbols) for "UIM".

2 Check the reading▶■ (Set)

■ When the reading is incorrect

Correct the reading using katakana (single-byte for "Phone" and double-byte for "UIM"), single-byte alphabet, numbers and symbols.
You can store up to 32 single-byte characters for "Phone" and 12 double-byte or 25 single-byte alphanumeric characters only (including some single-byte symbols) for "UIM".

3 Select any item:

(group)……Selects a group number among "Group 01-19" for "Phone" or among "Group 01-10" for "UIM". If no group is selected, the entry is automatically assigned to "No Group".

(phone number)……Enters the phone number.

- Also select an icon for "Phone". You can enter up to 26 digits for the phone number. Once you have stored the first phone number, the "<Not stored>" option appears on the Phonebook edit screen. Select this option to store an additional phone number.
- You can enter 20 digits for a blue FOMA card (UIM), and 26 digits for a green/white FOMA card (UIM).

(mail address)……Enters the e-mail address. You can enter up to 50 single-byte alphabets, numbers and symbols.
Also select an icon for "Phone". Once you have stored the first e-mail address, the "<Not stored>" option appears on the Phonebook edit screen. Select this option to store an additional e-mail address.

(address)……Enters the ZIP code and street address. Enter the 7 single-byte numbers for ZIP codes. You can enter up to 50 double-byte or 100 single-byte kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabets, numbers and pictographs.

(birthday)……Enters the contact's birthday (year, month and day).
Any year from 1800 to 2099 can be set.

(memorandums)……Enters a memo (short note). You can enter up to 100 double-byte or 200 single-byte characters which include kanji characters, hiragana, katakana, alphabets, numbers and pictographs.

(image)……Shoots or selects the image displayed when you receive a call from the contact.

(Chara-den)……Selects the "Chara-den" character displayed as the substitute image for videophone calls.

(memory No.)……Memory numbers are automatically* assigned when an entry is stored in the phonebook, but can be changed to any number between 000 and 999.

* : Assigned to the available number between 010 to 999 from the smallest number. If no number is available from 010 to 999, it is assigned to the available number between 000 to 009.

4 (Finish)

NOTE

- Phonebook entries stored using symbols or pictographs may not be displayed correctly when data are transferred by the infrared communication, etc.
- Enter the correct domain when storing e-mail addresses. The domain is the part of the address that follows the "@" symbol.
However, if the contact's e-mail address is in the "[phone number]@docomo.ne.jp" format, store just the phone number as the e-mail address.
- "2in1 setting" in Phonebook is specified according to the 2in1 mode at registration. The setting of "Phonebook 2in1 setting" (A/B/AB) is displayed on the Phonebook list screen or Phonebook detail screen when 2in1 mode is in Dual mode. However, when attaching the phonebook to a mail or copying it to the UIM phonebook, Phonebook 2in1 setting is not to be sent.

Mode	Phonebook 2in1 setting
Dual mode	A
A mode	A
B mode	B
OFF	A

You can change the Phonebook 2in1 setting in "2in1 setting". →p.322

<Chara-den settings priority sequence>

- The priority order for Chara-den settings is as follows:
① Chara-den setting of Ring tone/Image (for individual)
② Chara-den setting of Ring tone/Image (for group)
③ Chara-den stored in the phonebook entry
④ Substitute image in Select image

When phonebook editing is interrupted

You can resume editing the phonebook entry which is stopped being edited because of the emit of the low-voltage alarm or activation of a task of Tool groups using Multitask, etc.

1 MENU▶"PHONEBOOK"▶(FUNC)▶"Add to phonebook"▶Select the destination▶"Recall"

When you are re-editing the entry, if you cancel editing without storing the changes, the data being edited is erased.

■ To add a new phonebook entry
▶"New"

Adding Phonebook Entries from the Redial, Dialed Calls and Other Records

You can add information to the phonebook from the "Received calls", "Dialed calls", "Redial", "Received address", "Sent address", "Text reader", Site screen or enter phone number screen, etc.

<Example: To add information from the "Received calls" record to the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook>

1 Received calls screen (p.53)▶ (FUNC)▶"Add to phonebook"▶ "Phone"

■ **To add to the FOMA card (UIM)**
▶"UIM"

2 "Add"▶Search for the phonebook entry to add the information

Searching the phonebook→p.73

■ **To add a new phonebook entry**
▶"New"

■ **To add information to the UIM**
▶"New" or "Overwrite"

3 Display the phonebook detail screen▶ (Select)

Phone number is automatically entered and the phonebook editing screen appears.
Editing the phonebook→p.76

4 After completing the changes, press (Finish)

■ **If a message appears asking whether to overwrite existing data**
▶"YES"

NOTE

- The "Notify Caller ID" setting ("Notify" or "Not notify") displayed in the "Dialed calls" and "Redial" records is not stored in the phonebook.

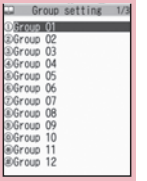
Renaming Groups <Group setting>

You can assign your stored phonebook entries to groups according to the contact role ("Work", "Friends", etc.) or by hobby ("Baseball", "Football", etc.). This allows you to use the phonebook as if it were divided into different volumes according to purpose.

- "No Group" cannot be renamed.

1 Phonebook list screen (p.73)▶ (FUNC)▶"Group setting"

The "Group setting" screen appears.



Group setting

Function menu➡p.72

2 Select a group▶Enter the new group name

The " " icon appears next to UIM groups.
You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 21 single-byte characters.
If the same name is used for groups on the FOMA terminal (Phone) and UIM, they are displayed as separate groups.

FUNC Group setting screen (p.72)

Edit group name……Edits the group name.

Ring tone/Image→p.77

Reset group name……The changed group name is reset to the default name assigned at the time of purchase.

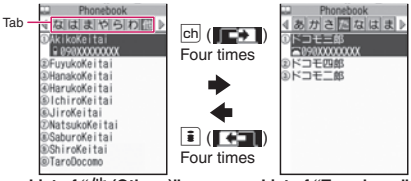
NOTE

- Resetting the group name does not clear the "Ring tone/Image" setting.

Making a Call from the Phonebook <Search phonebook>

You can make a call by searching for the phonebook entry from the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook or the FOMA card (UIM) phonebook.

- When tabs appear on the phonebook list screen, you can switch the display as follows:
  <Example: To switch tabs from "他 (Others)" to "Ta-column" in the Alphabet display>



List of "他 (Others)" List of "Ta-column"

NOTE

- You can use to switch pages within the same tab.
- You cannot switch the tab with ( ) when you store to the Choku-Den or compose a message with using the Look-up phonebook.

Searching for the phonebook entry of the person you want to make a call

1 MENU ▶ **"PHONEBOOK"**

The "Phonebook list" screen appears.

Phonebook list

Function menu➡p.74

■ **To make a voice call from the list screen**

▶Highlight the phonebook entry you want to call▶ (voice call)

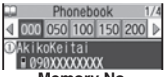
If the phonebook entry contains multiple phone numbers, the call is made to the first phone number stored for that entry.

■ **To switch the tab display**

▶ (FUNC)▶"Change Display"

Select the tab from "Alphabet/Memory No./Group".

Alphabet



Memory No.

Group

2 **Select the phonebook entry you want**

The "Phonebook detail" screen appears.

Phonebook detail

Function menu➡p.75

3 **Use to display the phone number you want▶ (voice call) or (V.phone)**

■ **To send a mail**

▶Use to display the e-mail address you want▶ (MAIL)

"Composing and Sending i-mode Mail"→p.156

NOTE

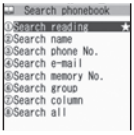
- Pressing during a call displays the group search screen and pressing displays the column search screen.

Searching for the phonebook entry by specifying the search method

You can search for a phonebook entry using any of 8 search criteria; reading, name, phone number, e-mail address, memory number, group or "column" in Japanese phonetics (a, ka, sa, ta, na, etc.) or all.

- Search results are displayed in the sequence shown below based on the reading entered when the entry was stored (except for memory number search).
  katakana → alphabets → numbers → symbols → the reading of caller's name is not stored
  * If a space is placed at the beginning, it is searched first.

1 **On the standby screen ▶ ▶ (FUNC)▶Search phonebook**



■ **To display your preferred search method first**

▶Highlight the search method that you want to display first▶ (Prefer)▶"OK"

"★" appears next to the preferred search method. Pressing on the standby screen displays the phonebook search screen with your preferred method.

■ **To cancel your preferred search method setting**

▶On the standby screen▶ ▶CLR▶Highlight the search method with the star "★"▶ (Reset)

Continued on next page

2 Select the search method:

Search reading……▶**Enter the reading**▶[ ]
Enter the reading from the beginning. You do not need to enter the entire name.

Search name……▶**Enter the name**▶[ ]
Enter the name from the beginning. You do not need to enter the entire name.

Search phone No.……▶**Enter the phone number**▶[ ]
Enter some digits numbers of the phone number. You can also search the phone number by entering a part of the phone number and press [ ] on the "Enter phone number" screen (p.48).

Search e-mail……▶**Enter the e-mail address**▶[ ]
You do not need to enter the entire address.

Search memory No.……▶**Enter the 3 digits memory number.**
You cannot search the UIM phonebook by memory number.

Search group……▶**Select the group you want**
Note that the UIM phonebook uses different groups from the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook.

Search column……▶**Press the key for the "column" (tab) you want to search**

1: "a" column	2: "ka" column
3: "sa" column	4: "ta" column
5: "na" column	6: "ha" column
7: "ma" column	8: "ya" column
9: "ra" column	0: "wa" column
＊: Others (alphabet or number, etc.)	

Search all……All the stored phonebook entries are displayed in the "Alphabet" tab.

When the search ends, the "Phonebook list" screen that meets the searching conditions appears. " " is displayed for the UIM phonebook.

Phonebook list

Function menu➡p.74

● Accessing the phonebook from the Redial or Dialed Calls record

You can access the stored phonebook detail screen from the function menu of "Received calls", "Dialed calls", "Redial", "Received address" or "Sent address" screen by selecting "Look-up phonebook".

FUNC Phonebook list screen (p.73)

- The available functions vary depending on the searching method and display method.

Add to phonebook→p.70

Connect to Center……Stores the phonebook data at the DOCOMO Data Security Center.→p.79

Search phonebook……Select the search type and call the phonebook entry.→p.73

Sort[*1]……Sorts the phonebook list in a selected criteria.

Change Display……Select from "Alphabet/Memory No./Group".

Ring tone/Image→p.78

Restrictions→p.112

Group setting→p.72

Copy to microSD[*2]→p.248
- When "Copy all" is selected, you can select whether to copy the My Profile data in addition to the phonebook data.

iC transmission[*2]→p.259

iC trans. all[*2]→p.260

Send Ir data[*2]→p.258

Send all Ir data[*2]→p.258

No. of phonebook→p.76

Attach to mail[*2]……Displays a new mail screen with the phonebook data attached.

Set large font⇔Set normal font……Switches the displayed font size between "Big font/Standard font".
→p.93

microSD phonebook⇔Original phonebook……Refers to the phonebook in the microSD card or the FOMA terminal (Phone).

Delete data……Selects the deleting method from "Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all".
"About multiple-choice"→p.38
- "Delete all" deletes the phonebook on the FOMA card (UIM).

*1: Available on the result screen displayed when the phonebook is searched by entering a condition such as Search reading.
*2: Not operate for the phonebook stored in the FOMA card (UIM)

FUNC Phonebook detail screen (p.73)

Edit phonebook→p.76

Notify Caller ID→p.56

Chaku-moji→p.55

Dial setting

- **Prefix numbers**→p.58
- **Int'l call**→p.52
- **2in1/Multi Num.**……When 2in1 is set to ON and Dual mode, selects from "Number A/Number B/Cancel number" (p.323) (not available when A mode or B mode is set).
  Selects from "Basic number/Additional number 1/Additional number 2/Cancel number" (p.319) at the Multi Number when 2in1 set to OFF.
- **Select image**……Selects the image used during a videophone call from "My side/Chara-den".
  Select "Release settings" to cancel the setting.

Ring tone/Image*1→p.77

Restrictions*1→p.112

Move to top*1……Moves the displayed phone number/mail address to the top when multiple phone numbers/mail addresses are stored in one phonebook entry.

Add to Choku-Den*1→p.78

Add shortcut→p.94

Compose message*2→p.156

Attach to mail*1*2……Displays a new mail screen with the phonebook data attached.

Compose SMS*2→p.182

iC transmission*1→p.259

iC trans. all*1→p.260

Send Ir data*1→p.258

Send all Ir data*1→p.258

Copy to microSD*1→p.248

Copy

- **Name**……Copies the name. The copied name can be pasted into input and other screens.→p.308
- **Phone number***3……Copies the phone number. The copied phone number can be pasted into input and other screens.→p.308

Secret code*1→p.75

- **Set code**……Sets the secret code (4 digits).
- **Check code**……Confirms the set secret code.
- **Release settings**……Cancels the set secret code.

Set secret*1*4→p.103

Copy to UIM*5→p.255

Set large font⇔Set normal font……Switches the displayed font size between "Big font/Standard font".→p.93

Delete data→p.76

*1: Not operate for the UIM phonebook.
*2: Not available when 2in1 is in B mode.
*3: Depending on the selected item, one of "Mail address/Address/Birthday/Memorandums" appears.
*4: "Release secret" when referring to the phonebook of the secret data.
*5: "Copy from UIM" when referring to the UIM phonebook.

NOTE

<Add to Choku-Den>
- When stored to Choku-Den, "★" appears on the function menu.

● Secret code

When the mail address of the other party is "[phone number]@docomo.ne.jp" and he/she sets a secret code, you have to specify "[phone number + secret code]@docomo.ne.jp" as the e-mail address.
There are 2 ways to send an e-mail to such a destination.

- Set a secret code for the phonebook entry from the phonebook detail screen function menu (when referring to the mail address, the secret code is automatically added to the mail address in the phonebook).
- Store the mail address with a secret code in the phonebook.

NOTE

- Secret code settings are valid only to mail addresses in "[phone number]@docomo.ne.jp" or "phone number" format.
- You cannot set secret codes for the UIM phonebook.

Editing the Phonebook
<Edit phonebook>

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.73)▶ ✉ (FUNC)▶"Edit phonebook"▶Edit the respective items

Edit the required items using the procedure used in "Add to phonebook".
Adding information to the phonebook→p.70

■ **To store in a new memory number**

▶Select "No"▶Enter a memory number (000 to 999) that has not already been stored.
The original phonebook entry is left in its pre-edited state and the edited entry is stored as a new phonebook entry with a different memory number.

2 After editing, press ℹ (Finish)▶"YES"

■ **To add information to the UIM**

▶ℹ (Finish)▶"Overwrite" or "Add"
Selecting "Overwrite" stores the edited information.
Selecting "Add" leaves the original phonebook entry unchanged and stores the edited entry as a new phonebook entry.

NOTE

- When the edited entry is stored to the Choku-Den, the Choku-Den is also changed.

Deleting a Phonebook Entry
<Delete data>

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.73)▶ ✉ (FUNC)▶"Delete data"▶Select any item:

Delete phone No.*……Deletes the selected phone number (e-mail address, address, birthday, memorandums, image or "Chara-den" character).

Delete this……Deletes the phonebook entry.

* : Depending on the selected item, one of "Delete mail add./Delete address/Delete birthday/Delete memorandums/Delete image/Delete Chara-den" appears.

NOTE

- If you delete a phone number or mail address in the phonebook entry in which multiple phone numbers or mail addresses are stored, the order of the subsequent phone numbers or mail addresses moves up.

Checking the Phonebook Storage Status <No. of phonebook>

1 Phonebook list screen (p.73)▶ ✉ (FUNC)▶"No. of phonebook"

■ **Phone (the phonebook stored on the FOMA terminal)**

Phonebook : Displays the number of entries stored in the phonebook. Number of stored data/1,000 (storage limit)
Secret : Displays the number of entries stored as secret data. (This can only be displayed in "Secret mode" or "Secret data only mode".)
Image : Displays the number of images stored in the phonebook. Number of stored data/100 (storage limit)
Chara-den : Displays the number of "Chara-den" characters stored in the phonebook. Number of stored data/100 (storage limit)

■ **UIM (the phonebook stored on the FOMA card (UIM))**

Phonebook : Displays the number of entries stored in the phonebook. Number of stored data/50 (storage limit)

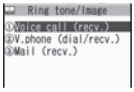
Setting Different FOMA Terminal Actions for Each Phone Number and Mail Address <Ring tone/Image>

You can set different ring tones or answer messages for the Record message depending on groups, phone numbers or e-mail address in the phonebook. This function is useful when you want to distinguish the caller only by the ring tone.

- You cannot set this setting for "No Group" on the FOMA terminal (Phone) or the phonebook or groups on the FOMA card (UIM).
- The Ring tone/Image functions are disabled when the caller does not notify the caller ID. It is recommended to set the "Caller ID Request" service.

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.73)▶ ✉ (FUNC)▶"Ring tone/Image"

The "Ring tone/Image" screen appears.
"★" appears next to the selected function.
The available functions vary depending on the item selected in the phonebook detail screen.



Ring tone/Image

■ **To set this function for each group**
▶Group setting screen (p.72)▶ ✉ (FUNC)▶"Ring tone/Image"

2 Select the item to distinguish

Select the item from "Voice call (recv.)/V.phone (dial/recv.)/Mail (recv.)".
- When "Mail (recv.)" is selected, this function is applied not only i-mode mail but SMS.

3 Select any item:

"★" appears next to the selected function.

■ **To release a selected function**
▶Highlight the function with "★"▶ 🗑 (Reset)
The function is released and the "★" disappears.

Ring tone[*1]……Sets ring tones to distinguish the caller of the phone or sender of mail.
"Changing the Ring Tone"→p.82

Image[*1*2]……Sets images to distinguish the caller of the phone. "Changing the Display"→p.88

Chara-den setup[*3]……Selects Chara-den to be displayed as the substitute image for videophone calls.

Set illumination[*1]……Sets the illumination pattern and color to distinguish the caller of the phone or sender of mail.
"Setting the Flashing Mode of the Illumination"→p.92

Vibrator[*1]……Sets vibration patterns to distinguish the caller of the phone or sender of mail.
"Setting the Vibration to Notify You of Incoming Calls"→p.84

Answer message[*2]……Changes the answer message used when record message[*4] or quick message starts up depending on the caller.
"Having the Caller Leave a Message"→p.64

*1: You can also distinguish the incoming 64K data communication.
*2: Available only when "Voice call (recv.)" or "V.phone (dial/recv.)" is selected.
*3: Available only when "V.phone (dial/recv.)" is selected.
*4: You need to set "Record message" to "ON" beforehand.

■ **When you set Ring tone/Image**

An icon appears in the phonebook detail screen indicating that each item is set.

- : Ring tone (voice/videophone call)
- : Ring tone (mail)
- : Illumination (voice/videophone call)
- : Illumination (mail)
- : Vibration (voice/videophone call)
- : Vibration (mail)
- : Image (voice/videophone call)
- : Answer message (voice/videophone call)
- : Chara-den (videophone call)

NOTE

- You cannot set this setting for the phonebook stored as the secret data. Even if the setting is made for the group, it is disabled for the phonebook entry stored as the secret data.
- The "Mail (recv.)" setting set for a phone number is activated when you receive an SMS or the sender's e-mail address is "[phone-number]@ docomo.ne.jp".
- Refer to the following pages for the priority when the Ring tone/Image settings and other settings for incoming calls, etc. are duplicated.
  - Ring tone priority→p.83
  - Vibrator priority→p.84
  - Image priority→p.83
  - Illumination priority→p.93
  - Chara-den priority→p.71

Checking the Ring tone/Image settings

You can check the phonebook entries or groups set in "Ring tone/Image" by function or item.

1 Phonebook list screen (p.73)▶ (FUNC)▶"Ring tone/Image"

The "Ring tone/Image" screen appears.
"★" appears next to the items to which this function is set.

2 Select the function or item with "★"▶Highlight the function or item with "★"▶ (FUNC)▶Select any item:

Check settings……Checks the setting status.
▶Highlight the function or item with "★"* ▶Check the phonebook or group which is set

Release settings……Releases all the settings of the functions marked with "★".

* : The number of the selected items (the number of times ■ is pressed) varies depending on the function or setting specified.

Using Choku-Den <Choku-Den>

By storing frequently used phonebook to Choku-Den, you can make a call or send a mail quickly.

- You can store up to 5 Choku-Den by quoting the stored data (such as phone number) from the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook.
- When mail addresses are stored to Choku-Den, you can compose i-mode mail to all the members easily.
- You cannot use this function in Secret data only mode.
- You can use this function in Secret mode, but you cannot add the phonebook stored as secret data to Choku-Den.

Adding to Choku-Den

1 On the standby screen▶

The "Choku-Den" screen appears.
When there is a stored data, the Choku-Den screen of the first tab with the stored data appears.

Choku-Den

Function menu➡p.79

■ **To change the location to add**

▶Use to move the tab
You can also use 1 to 5 to move to the tab of the respective number.

2 (Store) ▶Search the phonebook

Searching the phonebook→p.73

■ **To change the added contents**

▶ (Edit)

3 ■ (Select)

The "Quote phonebook" screen appears.

Quote phonebook

4 Use to select a checkbox (□)

Select only one phone number and mail address to add respectively.
When a checkbox (□) is selected, other phone numbers or mail addresses are displayed in gray and the checkbox cannot be selected. To select another checkbox, release the selected checkbox first.

5 (Finish)

NOTE

- The setting of "Phonebook 2in1 setting" is displayed on the Choku-Den screen when 2in1 mode is in Dual mode.
- When an image is stored in the phonebook, the image in the phonebook is added to Choku-Den.

Making a call/composing a mail from Choku-Den

<Example: To make a call>

1 Choku-Den screen (p.78)▶Use [ ] to display Choku-Den screen to make a call

You can also use [1] to [5] to move to the tab of the respective number.

2 Use [ ] to select "CALL"

■ **To compose a mail**
▶Use [ ] to select "MAIL" →p.156

■ **To make a videophone call**
▶Use [ ] to select "VIDEO PHONE"

FUNC Choku-Den screen (p.78)

Store/Edit……Adds a phonebook to Choku-Den which is not stored or edits the stored Choku-Den. →p.78

Image……Changes the image displayed in Choku-Den by selecting an image from "My picture".

Broadcast mail……Displays the new mail screen with all mail addresses stored to Choku-Den are entered to the address. →p.156

Release this • Release all……Releases one or all Choku-Den.

NOTE

<Image>
- You can add an image whose file size is 100K bytes or smaller and whose width or height is 854 dots or smaller.
- You cannot add images other than JPEG or GIF.

Using Dialing Shortcuts

<Two-touch dialing>

By assigning memory numbers "000" to "009" to phone numbers in the phonebook, you can call those phone numbers only by pressing one of [0] to [9] (last digit of the memory number) and [ ].

1 [0] to [9]▶[ ] (voice call)/[ ] (V.phone)

NOTE

- If the phonebook entry contains multiple phone numbers, the call is made to the first phone number stored for that entry.

Storing the Phonebook at the Data Security Center

<Data security serv.>

You can store the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook at the DOCOMO Data Security Center. The stored phonebook can be restored to the FOMA terminal or updated by connecting to the Data Security Center.

- Data Security Service is a pay service you need to apply for. If you have not subscribed to the service and try to connect to the Data Security Center, the notification screen appears.
- The service is not available when out of i-mode service area or the power is off.
- Follow the procedure below to restore the phonebook or set the auto update (Japanese): [ ]▶"iMenu"▶"マイメニュー" (My Menu)▶"電話帳お預かり" (Data Security)
- For details on how to use the Data Security Service, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

1 [MENU]▶"LIFEKIT"▶"Data security serv."▶"Connect to Center"

■ **To set about sending images in the phonebook**
▶"Sndg img in Phonebook"▶"ON" (default: "OFF")
The images stored in the phonebook are also stored at the Data Security Center.

2 Enter your security code▶"YES"

The FOMA terminal connects to the Data Security Center to start saving the phonebook.

3 [ ] (Finish)

NOTE

- You cannot store the phonebook stored in the FOMA card (UIM) at the Data Security Center.
- A phonebook entry with an image larger than 100K bytes cannot be stored or updated.

Restoring/updating the phonebook

The phonebook data stored at the Data Security Center can be stored on the FOMA terminal from the site of the Data Security Center.
You can also edit the phonebook data stored at the Data Security Center from a PC, etc.
For details on how to use, refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version”.

NOTE

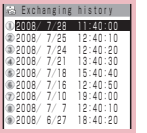
- Automatic update is not performed when another function is activated while updating the phonebook.
- When the phonebook is not updated, it is notified with “ ” shortcut icon.
- When you restore the phonebook data stored at the Data Security Center to the FOMA terminal, icons stored with phone number or mail address may be replaced with “ ” or “ ”.
- Deleting the FOMA terminal’s phonebook also deletes the phonebook in the Data Security Center when updated. To download the phonebook in the Data Security Center to the FOMA terminal, follow the procedure below (Japanese):
  ▶“iMenu”▶“マイメニュー” (My Menu)▶“電話帳お預かり” (Data Security)▶“お預かりセンター” (Data Security Center)▶Enter your i-mode password▶“決定” (Select)▶“ケータイへダウンロード” (Download to Phone)▶“OK”
  Download starts in about 15 seconds. Redisplay the standby screen.

Checking the communication log with the Data Security Center

- You can check up to 30 communication logs. If the maximum number of logs is exceeded, logs are overwritten starting with the oldest one.
- On the communication log detail screen, the transmission results, dates, transmission details, data sizes, sending results to the Data Security Center, reception results of the mobile phone and number of data files left in the Data Security Center appear.

1 MENU▶**“LIFEKIT”▶“Data security serv.”▶“Exchanging history”**

The “Exchanging history” screen appears.



Exchanging history

Function menu➡p.80

2 **Select the communication log item**

FUNC **Exchanging history screen (p.80)**

Delete this • Delete selected • Delete all……Select the deleting method. “About multiple-choice”→p.38

Sound/Screen/Light Settings

■Sound Settings

Changing the Ring Tone ..... Select ring tone 82
Setting 3D Sound ..... Sound effect 84
Setting the Vibration to Notify You of Incoming Calls ..... Vibrator 84
Changing the Ringback Tone ..... Melody Call setting 84
Setting the Keypad Tone ..... Keypad sound 85
Setting the Confirmation Tone for Charging ..... Charge sound 85
Setting the Clock Alarm Tone ..... Clock Alarm Tone set 85
Setting the FOMA Terminal to Warn You before a Call Drops Out ..... Quality alarm 85
Setting the Ring Time for Incoming Mail ..... Mail/Msg. ring time 85
Enabling the Tone to Ring through the Earphone and Speaker ..... Headset usage setting 85
Switching Off the FOMA Terminal's Tone ..... Manner mode 86
Modifying Manner Mode ..... Manner mode set 86

■Screen/Light Settings

Changing the Display ..... Display setting 88
Displaying Phonebook Images When You Receive Calls ..... Disp. Phonebook image 89
Setting the Color for Incoming Call Display ..... Disp. call/receive No. 90
Preventing Others from Peeping the Screen ..... Shield view 90
Setting the Display and Keypad Lighting ..... Backlight 90
Changing the Display Design ..... Display design 91
Changing the Menu Display 91
Setting the Illumination Flashing ..... Illumination set 92
Changing the Font ..... Font 93
Setting the Clock Display ..... Clock display 93
Using Shortcut Icons ..... My shortcut 94
Selecting the Icons to Display on the Standby Screen ..... Icons setting 96
Setting the Kisekae Tool ..... Kisekae Tool setting 97

Changing the Ring Tone

<Select ring tone>

You can set the ring tone and receiving screen in each voice call, videophone call or i-mode mail. You can also set the ring tone for specified phone number, mail address or group of phonebook respectively. →p.77

- Guide to the melody list →p.241
- Setting the sending screen →p.88

1 MENU ▶"SETTINGS"▶"Incoming call"▶"Select ring tone"▶Select an item to set a ring tone:

Select the item from "Phone/Videophone/Mail/MessageR/MessageF".

- When "Phone" is selected, the ring tone for voice calls and 64K data communication is set.
- When "Mail" is selected, the ring tone for i-mode mails, SMS and packet communication is set.

2 "Select ring tone"▶Select any item:

Melody……Select the ring tone or melody.

i-motion……Select the i-motion/Chaku-Uta® downloaded to the FOMA terminal or a movie (i-motion) shot using the camera.
When you receive a call, the video or sound for the selected i-motion is played (Chaku-motion).

Music……Sets the Chaku-Uta-Full®. Set any item from the following when the Chaku-Uta-Full® contains the portion where the ring tone is specified by the provider:

Fullsong ring tone……Sets the whole song as the ring tone.

Point ring tone……Sets a part of the song as the ring tone.
▶Use [◇] to specify the portion (displayed in orange) to set as the ring tone▶[■] (Set)
When you select "Movable contents" folder, select "YES" and select the destination folder.

Voice announce……Sets the message recorded using "Voice announce".

Random melody……Selects a folder containing stored melodies. When you receive a call or message, one of the melodies stored in the folder played at random.

OFF……The FOMA terminal plays no ring tone.

■ **To set the calling/receiving display**
▶"Select calling disp." or "Select receiving disp."
In "Ringing" screen, select an image from the My picture or i-motion.
In "Select receiving disp.", select an image from the My picture.

3 Select the ring tone

When you select a melody, the FOMA terminal plays the melody.
Press [ ], [#], [✉], [i] or [ch] to stop the melody playback.

■ **Pre-installed ring tones, melodies and alarms**

Track Title	Track Title
着信音1 to 5	Grand Clock
Go For It!	Elevator
Sophisticated Lady	Whistle
Classy Walts	Piano Man
Kanon	Hand Bell
Forest	Brilliance
Cuckoo Clock	Typewriter
School Chime	Vibe X Vibe

■ **Pre-installed Chaku-Uta-Full®**

Track Title
What Can U Do (Mashup Style)

NOTE

- Some i-motion (i-motion with video only) and Chaku-Uta-Full ® cannot be specified to the ring tone.
- An i-motion with sound only (an i-motion with no video, such as a singer's voice) cannot be specified as the receiving display.
- Flash movies can be set in the Select calling disp. / Select receiving disp., but the ring tone used is the tone set in "Select ring tone".
- Even if the movie/i-motion can be set as Chaku-motion or image displayed for incoming calls, you cannot set these movie/i-motion in the following cases:
  - When the movie/i-motion is transferred to a PC or other FOMA terminal through infrared data exchange function, IC communication function or DOCOMO keitai datalink (p.329), then returned to the FOMA terminal (Phone)
  - When the movie/i-motion is copied from a microSD card to the FOMA terminal (Phone) (including the case that the movie/i-motion is copied from the FOMA terminal (Phone) to a microSD card, then copied to the FOMA terminal (Phone))
- When you select the i-motion in the Movable contents folder, the selected i-motion is moved to the Inbox folder of "i-motion".

NOTE

- When you select the Chaku-Uta-Full® in the Movable contents folder and “Fullsong ring tone” is set, the selected Chaku-Uta-Full® is moved to the Inbox folder of “Music”. When “Point ring tone” is set, the selected portion is clipped as an i-motion and stored in the folder of “i-motion”.
- When you set Chaku-Uta-Full® stored on the FOMA terminal (Phone) as a ring tone with “Point ring tone”, it is not clipped as an i-motion and the selected portion is set to the ring tone.
- The ring tone is played at the volume set in “Ring volume” while selecting the ring tone.
- If you set an i-motion that includes both video and sound as the ring tone and receiving display, the FOMA terminal plays the i-motion set as the ring tone.
- If you set something other than an i-motion that includes both video and sound as the ring tone and then set an i-motion that includes both video and sound as the receiving display, the FOMA terminal plays the i-motion set as the receiving display.
- When the i-motion is set to the ring tone for mail, the default ring tone of “Mail” is used for the ring tone of packet communication. The special screen appears when packet communication is received regardless of the incoming screen settings.
- When you set Chaku-Uta-Full® which contains the jacket image as the ring tone, the jacket image is not displayed when you receive a call.
- When multiple mails or MessageR/F are received at the same time, the operation of the ring tone becomes as follows:

Received contents	Operation of the ring tone
Multiple mails are received	The ring tone set for the last received mail is used.
Mail and MessageR/F are received at the same time	
MessageR/F are received at the same time	The ring tone set for MessageR is used.

NOTE

<Ring tone priority for incoming calls>

- When the ring tone settings for incoming calls are duplicated, the priority is assigned as follows:
  ①Ring tone for Multi number (additional number 1, 2)
  ②Ring tone for Ring tone/Image (for individual)
  ③Ring tone for Ring tone/Image (for group)
  ④Ring tone for B mode of 2in1
  ⑤Ring tone for Select ring tone/Kisekae Tool setting
  * The priority is assigned as follows in the Ring tone/Image (② above) and the Ring tone/Image (③ above).
    ①i-motion for Ring tone
    ②i-motion for Calling display
    ③i-motion for Ring tone (i-motion with no video, such as a singer's voice), melody or Chaku-Uta-Full®

<Ring tone priority for mails (including SMS)>

- When the ring tone settings for mails are duplicated, the priority is assigned as follows:
  ①Ring tone for Ring tone/Image (for individual)
  ②Ring tone for Ring tone/Image (for group)
  ③Ring tone for Select ring tone/Kisekae Tool setting

<Image priority>

- When the image settings for incoming calls are duplicated, the priority is assigned as follows:
  ①Image setting for Ring tone/Image (for individual)
  ②Image setting for “Ring tone/Image (for group)”
  ③Still image stored in the phonebook
  ④Image setting for B mode of 2in1
  ⑤i-motion for Select ring tone
  ⑥Display setting/Kisekae Tool setting
  * The priority is assigned as follows in the “Ring tone/Image (for individual)” (① above) and the “Ring tone/Image (for group)” (② above):
    ①i-motion for Ring tone
    ②i-motion or still image/image for Select calling disp.

Setting 3D Sound <Sound effect>

Enjoy rich sounds of melodies, voice/videophone call and mail ring tones, sound effects and i-motion when an earphone/microphone (optional) is connected.

1 MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"Incoming call"▶"Sound effect"▶"Stereo&3D sound"▶"ON" or "OFF"

● Sound effects

Create 3-dimensional and resonating sounds using an earphone/microphone. Sound effects allow you to enjoy i-αppli games and melody playback with richer and more realistic sound.
Playing i-motion with sound effects adds effects such as "natural third dimension", "rich low sound" and "clear instrumental or voice sound" to sounds heard through earphone.

- An icon appears for i-motion with sound effects on the movie list screen. →p.226

NOTE

- Individuals feel differently about 3 dimension. If sound bothers you, set this function to "OFF".
- Setting this function to "ON" does not add effects to sounds heard through the built-in speaker.
- This function is not available if "Headset usage setting" is set to "Headset+speaker". To enable the function, set the setting to "Headset only".

Setting the Vibration to Notify You of Incoming Calls <Vibrator>

You can set different vibration patterns to notify you when you receive a voice call, videophone call or mail.

1 MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"Incoming call"▶"Vibrator"▶Select an item to set the vibration:

Select "Phone" to set the vibration for voice calls and 64K data communication.
Select "Mail" to set the vibration for i-mode mail, Area Mail, SMS and packet communication.

2 Select the vibration pattern:

Pattern 1-Pattern 3……Vibrates in each pattern. When you switch the highlighted item while selecting an item, the FOMA terminal vibrates in the highlighted pattern.

Melody linkage……The FOMA terminal vibrates in a pattern matched to the melody set as the ring tone.

OFF……The FOMA terminal does not vibrate.

■Icons on the standby screen while setting the vibration pattern

: The vibration starts when receiving either voice or videophone calls.
: The vibration starts when receiving either mail/MessageR/F.
: Both " " and " " are set.

NOTE

- When the vibration is set, take care that the vibration does not move the FOMA terminal towards fire (e.g. on a space heater) or cause it to fall off a table, etc.
- Even when "Melody linkage" is selected, the FOMA terminal not always vibrates to the melody. When no vibration pattern is set for the melody or when an i-motion or Chaku-Uta-Full® is set as the ring tone, the FOMA terminal vibrates in Pattern 2.
- When receiving Area Mail, vibration is linked with the beep sound (when the buzzer sounds) or follows the settings in "Mail" under "Vibrator" (when an incoming Area Mail sounds).

<Vibrator priority>

- When the vibrator settings are duplicated, the priority is assigned as follows:
  ①Vibrator for "Ring tone/Image (for individual)"
  ②Vibrator for "Ring tone/Image (for group)"
  ③Vibrator setting

Changing the Ringback Tone <Melody Call setting>

You can set whether to change the tone heard by the other party or not (YES/NO) when you receive a voice call.

1 MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"Incoming call"▶"Melody Call setting"▶"YES" or "NO"

When you select "YES", accesses the Melody Call i-mode site. Packet communications charges apply when accessing an IP site, i-mode menu site or free music corner except the setup site.
Follow the instructions on the screen to set.

NOTE

- Melody Call is not activated when the other party dial up from a videophone call.

Setting the Keypad Tone <Keypad sound>

- Setting this function to “OFF” also disables the battery level tone and the warning tone.
- The keypad sound is played at the level set in “Volume” during a call, and fixed at the same level while not talking on the phone.

1 MENU▶**“SETTINGS”▶“Other settings”▶“Keypad sound”▶“ON” or “OFF”**

Setting the Confirmation Tone for Charging <Charge sound>

This function sets to emit a sound when charging starts or is completed.

- When the screen other than Standby screen is displayed or when Manner mode or Public mode (Driving mode) is set, the charge sound does not ring.

1 MENU▶**“SETTINGS”▶“Other settings”▶“Charge sound”▶“ON” or “OFF”**

Setting the Clock Alarm Tone <Clock Alarm Tone set>

You can change the clock alarm tone for Alarm, Schedule, To Do list and 1Seg booking program.

1 MENU▶**“SETTINGS”▶“Clock”▶“Clock Alarm Tone set”▶Select any item:**
Select the alarm tone from “Melody/i-motion/Music/Voice announce/OFF”.

Setting the FOMA Terminal to Warn You before a Call Drops Out <Quality alarm>

The FOMA terminal emits an alarm tone to warn you that the signal quality is deteriorating and the call is likely to drop out.

- The call may drop out without a warning tone if the signal quality worsens very quickly.

1 MENU▶**“SETTINGS”▶“Talk”▶“Quality alarm”▶Select an alarm tone**
Select the alarm tone from “No tone/High tone/Low tone”.

Setting the Ring Time for Incoming Mail <Mail/Msg. ring time>

You can set a ring time when you receive mail or a MessageR/F.

1 MENU▶**“SETTINGS”▶“Incoming call”▶“Mail/Msg. ring time”▶Select an item to set the ring time:**
Select “Mail” to set the ring time for i-mode mail, Area Mail and SMS.

2 **“ON”▶Enter the ring time (01 to 30 seconds in 2 digits)**

■ **To turn off the ring tone**
▶“OFF”
When “Vibrator” is activated, the vibration stops.

Enabling the Tone to Ring through the Earphone and Speaker <Headset usage setting>

You can set the FOMA terminal to play the ring tone or alarm notification through the earphones and speaker when a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected.

1 MENU▶**“SETTINGS”▶“External connection”▶“Headset usage setting”▶“Headset+speaker” or “Headset only”**

NOTE

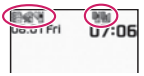
- If “Ring volume” is set to “Silent”, there is no sound from the earphone or speaker.
- When “Phone vol.” and “Mail vol.” in the Manner mode (Original) is set to other than “Silent”, the ring tone still sound. However, Manner mode (Manner mode and Super silent) is set, the ring tone sounds only from the earphones.

Switching Off the FOMA Terminal's Tone <Manner mode>

You can set the FOMA terminal not to play the ring tones or keypad tones through the speaker with a single key operation.

- Refer to the **Table 1** (p.87) and **Table 2** (p.87) for details of Manner mode setting.
- In "Manner mode set", you can select "Manner mode/Super silent/Original" as the FOMA terminal operation mode when Manner mode is set.

1 On the standby screen▶(▲マナー) (1 second or longer)



You can set the Manner mode by pressing (▲マナー) (1 second or longer) during a voice call.
The FOMA terminal is set to Manner mode, " " appears, and the information specified in "Manner mode set" is displayed.

: The FOMA terminal notifies you using "Vibrator"

: "Ring volume" is set to "Silent"

to : "Record message" and "Record VP message" is set to record messages (The number indicates the number of recorded messages)

During a voice call, the FOMA terminal emits a short double-beep ("bibip") and a message appears notifying you that Manner mode is set.

■ **To cancel Manner mode**

▶On the standby screen▶(▲マナー) (1 second or longer)
You can cancel the Manner mode by pressing (▲マナー) (1 second or longer) during a voice call.
Manner mode is canceled and " " disappears.
During a voice call, the FOMA terminal emits a short double-beep ("bibip") and a message appears notifying you that Manner mode is canceled.

NOTE

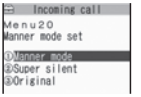
- Even in Manner mode, the camera shutter clicks.
- When the vibration is set, take care that the vibration does not move the FOMA terminal towards fire (e.g. on a space heater) or cause it to fall off a table, etc.

Modifying Manner Mode <Manner mode set>

You can select the FOMA terminal operations used in Manner mode.

1 MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"Incoming call"▶"Manner mode set"

The "Manner mode set" screen appears.



Manner mode set

2 Select any item:

Manner mode……Mutes all tones played through the speaker and uses vibration to notify you of incoming calls, etc. However, confirmation tones played through earpiece (when a voice memo or memo is played) are not muted.

Super silent……Mutes all tones played through the speaker and confirmation tones played through the earpiece and uses vibration to notify you of incoming calls, etc.

Original→p.88

[Table 1] When you set Manner mode

Item	Manner Mode	Super silent	Original (displays the Original manner mode settings)
Record message activation	Record message (p.65) setting		“Record message” setting
Vibrator	ON		“Vibrator” setting
Ring volume for voice/videophone call and 64K data communication	Silent		“Phone vol.” setting
Ring volume for mail, packet communication, MessageR/F and Area Mail	Silent		“Mail vol.” setting
Area Mail beep tone	Silent		“Level 6”*
Alarm volume (including snooze function)	Silent		“Alarm vol.” setting
i-αppli volume	Silent		“i-αppli vol.” setting
Schedule/To Do List/Cost limit alarm volume	Silent		“Phone vol.” setting
Activation and completion tones for recorded messages, voice memos, etc.	ON	OFF	“VM tone” setting
Keypad sound	OFF		“Keypad sound” setting
Microphone sensitivity during calls	Up		“Mic sensitiv.” setting
Holding tone	Silent		“Phone vol.” setting Played at “Level 1” when set to other than “Silent”
On hold tone	Silent		“Phone vol.” setting Played at “Level 2” when set to “Step”
Low-voltage alarm	OFF		“LVA tone” setting Even when “Phone vol.” is set to “Silent”, the low-voltage alarm sounds at “Level 1” when “LVA tone” is set to “ON”.
Reading out received mails	“Phone” setting of “Ring volume” Played at “Level 2” when set to “Silent” or “Step” Valid only when “Read out message” in the function menu of the received mail detail screen is selected		
Voice clock (Standby, Snoozing) Missed call/new mail confirmation tones when the FOMA terminal is folded	Silent		“Phone vol.” setting Played at “Level 2” when set to “Step”
ToruCa acquisition tone	Silent		“Phone vol.” setting Played at “Level 4” when set to “Step”

* : If all the following are set to “OFF” or “Silent”, the beep tone does not sound:
“Phone vol.” “Mail vol.” “Alarm vol.” “i-αppli vol.” “Keypad sound” “Record msg.” “LVA tone” “VM tone”

[Table 2] When earphones are connected

Item	Manner Mode	Super silent	Original (displays the Original manner mode settings)
Reading out received mails	“Phone” setting of “Ring volume” Played at “Level 2” when set to “Silent” or “Step”		
Voice clock (during standby or snooze) and missed call/new mail confirmation tones when the FOMA terminal is folded	“Phone” setting of “Ring volume” Played at “Level 2” when set to “Silent” or “Step”		“Phone vol.” setting Played at “Level 2” when set to “Step”
Music Player volume	Volume setting of the Music Player (p.278)		
1seg viewing/recording playback volume	Volume setting for 1seg viewing/recording playback (p.210)		

Setting the Original manner

You can set your preferred Manner mode setting.

- The following are the default settings of the "Original" manner mode:
  - Record msg.: OFF
  - Vibrator: ON
  - Phone vol.: Silent
  - Mail vol.: Silent
  - Alarm vol.: Silent
  - i-αppli vol.: Silent
  - VM tone: ON
  - Keypad sound: OFF
  - Mic sensitiv.: Up
  - LVA tone: OFF

1 Manner mode set screen (p.86)▶"Original"▶Select any item:

Record msg.……Sets the Record message.→p.64

Vibrator……Sets the vibrator.→p.84

Phone vol.……Sets the ring tone volume for voice/videophone calls and 64K data communication.→p.61

Mail vol.……Sets the ring tone volume for mail, packet communication and MessageR/F.→p.61

Alarm vol.……Sets the volume of the alarm.→p.284

i-αppli vol.……Sets the volume of the i-αppli.→p.189
However, "Step" cannot be set.

VM tone……Sets confirmation tones for "Record msg.", "Voice memo", etc.

Keypad sound……Sets the keypad sound.→p.85

Mic sensitiv.……Selects from "Normal/Up" for the microphone sensitivity during calls.

LVA tone……Sets the low-voltage alarm.
"When the battery runs out"→p.44

2 Set the respective items▶[i] (Finish)

NOTE

- The record message function set in "Original" starts up after the ringing time set in "Record message" (p.64) (when set to "OFF", the recording starts after 13 seconds).
- If the microphone sensitivity during calls is set to "Up", the volume of the voice heard by the other party raises even if you speak quietly. The microphone sensitivity is set to "Normal" when shooting movies in "Camera" mode.

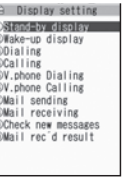
Changing the Display

<Display setting>

You can also set the still images you shot or downloaded images as the standby screen, dialing/calling screen, etc.

1 [MENU]▶"SETTINGS"▶"Display"▶"Display setting"

The "Display setting" screen appears.



Display setting

2 Select any item:

Stand-by display……Changes the standby screen image.→p.89

Wake-up display……Specifies a message or image displayed when the FOMA terminal is turned on.

- **OFF**……Does not display an image, etc.
- **Message**……Enters a message. You can enter up to 50 double-byte or 100 single-byte characters.
- **My picture**……Selects an image to be displayed from My picture.

Dialing/Calling/V.phone Dialing/V.phone Calling/Mail sending/Mail receiving……Sets the image displayed when making/receiving voice/videophone calls or sending/receiving mails (i-mode mails and SMS).

■**Dialing/V.phone Dialing/Mail sending setting**
Select from My picture.

■**Calling/V.phone Calling/Mail receiving setting**
"Changing the Ring Tone (Step 2)"→p.82

Check new messages・Mail rec'd result……Selects the image displayed for "Check new messages" (i-mode mails and messages), "Check new SMS" or mail received result screen from My picture.

NOTE

- Some i-motion cannot be specified.

Changing the standby screen image

- Some screens change its image depending on the timing.
- This function sets the standby screen when 2in1 is in A mode or "2in1 setting" is set to OFF. The settings are not applied when set to "B mode" or "Dual mode". Set "Standby display" of "2in1 setting".

1 Display setting screen (p.88)▶"Stand-by display"▶Select any item:

OFF……No image is displayed.

Calendar……Sets a calendar.

Background……For the background image for the calendar, selects one from My picture.

No background……Displays the calendar only.

My picture……Selects the standby screen image. To set "Stand-by books", select "ミッフィー おばけ", "地球の歩き方 1 to 5" or "世界遺産 1 to 6" from "Pre-installed".

i-motion*……Selects the i-motion to be displayed on the standby screen.

i-αppli display……Sets the i-αppli standby screen. →p.198
When the i-αppli standby screen is set, "★" is displayed.

Random display……Displays an image in the specified folder at random each time you open the FOMA terminal or display the standby screen.

* : When you select the i-motion in the Movable contents folder, the content is moved to the Inbox folder of the FOMA terminal, then set.

■ When the screen for setting the display style is displayed

▶Select the display style▶Check the image▶ [■] (Set)

The following display styles are available:

- Centering disp. (centering an image on the screen)
- Fit in disp. (enlarging/reducing an image size until its height or width fits to the screen)
- Arrange disp. (displaying images from upper left side in order)
- Full-screen disp. (enlarging or clipping an image to fit it into the screen size)

NOTE

- You may not select how to display depends on images you select.
- When "Bigger" is set to "Clock display" and Calendar is also set, "Big" is applied.
- If a movie or i-motion is set in the standby screen, it is played when you open the FOMA terminal.

NOTE

- When a Flash movie or GIF animation is set as the standby screen, the movie or animation is played when the following operations are performed (no sound):
  - FOMA terminal is opened
  - [CLR] is pressed on the standby screen
  - Return to the standby screen from another screen

  If Keypad lock, etc. is active, Flash movies do not work. Release the lock.

<Flash movie that works as clock>

- If the Flash movie clock stops, play the Flash movie to restart the clock. If the time is not correct, it will be adjusted within a minute after playback ends.

<Priority sequence for standby screen>

- Priority is assigned as follows when standby screen settings are duplicated:
  ①Standby screen (i-αppli)
  ②Display setting/Kisekae Tool setting

When you set the calendar for the standby screen

The calendar appears on the standby screen. You can quickly and easily refer to previous or next calendar dates or activate the schedule.

■To check the adjacent months on the calendar

Press [■] on the standby screen to select the shortcut icons or calendar. After using [◎] to highlight the calendar, press [■] (Select). The shortcut icons disappear and you can check the calendar of previous or next month with [◎].

■To activate the schedule function

When the calendar of the previous or the next month can be displayed with [◎] or [◎], press [■] (Select) to launch the schedule function and store a scheduled event for the displayed month.

Displaying Phonebook Images When You Receive Calls <Disp. Phonebook image>

You can set whether to display a still image when receiving a voice/videophone call from a phone number of which still image is stored in the phonebook (ON/OFF).

1 [MENU]▶"SETTINGS"▶"Incoming call"▶"Disp. Phonebook image"▶"ON" or "OFF"

Setting the Color for Incoming Call Display

<Disp. call/receive No.>

You can display names, phone numbers or mail address on the Redial/Received calls screen or sent/received address list screen with their font color changed.

1 MENU ▶"SETTINGS"▶"Incoming call"▶"Disp. call/receive No."▶Select a color

■ To revert the setting to the original

▶ch (Reset)

NOTE

- Press i (Change) to switch the number of colors to be selected from 16 to 256. The pallet of 16 colors and 256 colors switches each time you press i (Change).
- This setting may change depending on the "Color pattern" setting. To return to the setting corresponding to "Color pattern", press ch (Reset) after changing this setting.
- When you use 2in1, information of Number A/Address A are displayed in the color set in this function. To display the information of Number B/Address B in different color, set "Disp. call/receive No." of "2in1 setting".

Preventing Others from Peeping the Screen

<Shield view>

You can make it difficult for others to see the contents on the display.

1 2 (1 second or longer)

Shield view is set and "" appears.

■ To release the setting

▶2 (1 second or longer)

NOTE

- You cannot set or release shield view during editing the text or i-αppli is activated.

Setting the Display and Keypad Lighting

<Backlight>

1 MENU ▶"SETTINGS"▶"Display"▶"Backlight"▶Select any item:

Lighting……Selects "ON" or "OFF".
Enter the waiting time for the Power saver mode (01 to 20 minutes in 2 digits) when you set the Power saver mode to "ON".

- You can also change the backlight operation (ON/OFF) with 5 (1 second or longer).
- Setting the normal lighting settings for the backlight to "OFF" displays the "" icon on the standby screen.
- If you set the Power saver mode to "ON", the standby screen turns off when the specified waiting time has elapsed. If any key is pressed during the Power saver mode, the Power saver mode is canceled.

Charging……Selects "Standard" or "All time ON".

- When set to "Standard", the backlight lights up with the setting of Lighting ON (not enter Power saver mode).
- When set to "All time ON", the backlight of the screen lights up all the time (when there is no operation for about 15 seconds, the brightness is set to "Dark").

Area……Selects "LCD+Keys" or "LCD".

Brightness……Selects backlight brightness from "Bright/Middle/Dark".

NOTE

- When "Lighting" is set to "ON", the backlight turns on when a call is received and lights for about 15 seconds when you turn the FOMA terminal on, press one of the keys, or unfold the FOMA terminal. The backlight also stays on while using the camera or playing a movie/i-motion. If you select "OFF", the backlight does not turn on. However, the backlight turns on during movie shooting regardless of the "Lighting" setting.

Changing the Display Design
<Display design>

You can change the text, background and the background pattern for the function keys.

1 MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"Display"▶"Display design"▶Select any item:

Color pattern……Selects the color pattern from "White/Yellow/Blue/Red/Black".

Icon pattern……Selects the design for the Battery icon or Antenna icon from Pattern "1" to "5".

Soft key……Selects the background pattern for the function keys from Pattern "1" to "3".

NOTE

- There are some screens or functions that are not affected by the changes made to the settings of this function, such as i-mode sites.

Changing the Menu Display

Setting the menu display mode
<Menu display set>

You can change the display of the branch settings (functions) of "Settings" and the main menu design. You can also set the last one function of the Main Menu and Simple Menu.

1 MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"Display"▶"Menu display set"

The "Menu display set" screen appears.

Menu display set

2 Select any item:

Menu display……Selects the display mode for the branch settings from "List/Detail".

Theme……Selects the background or icon for the main menu from "Lacy Pink/Plain White/Seductive Black/エリクル@World (Ericle@World)/Standard Menu/Large Menu/Simple Menu/Original theme/Kisekae Tool".
- When Original theme is selected→p.91
- When Kisekae Tool is selected→p.242

Memory focus……Sets whether to highlight the last selected main setting when the Main Menu or Simple Menu is redisplayed (Last one function).

Reset menu op. log*……Resets the menu for the automatically sort of menu items (p.33).

* : Only available on the menu display that supports this function.

NOTE

- Last one function memorize the main menu icon when a branch menu is displayed. The icon is not memorized when the operation is interrupted while sub item is selected.

Changing the main menu screen

You can change the icons and background image used on the main setting selection screen (main menu).

1 Menu display set screen (p.91)▶"Theme"▶"Original theme"

The "Original theme" screen appears.

Original theme

Function menu➡p.92

2 Select any item:

Mail • i-mode • i-αppli • Settings • Data box • LifeKit • Network service • Phonebook • Own data • MUSIC • 1Seg • Osaifu-Keitai……Selects the icon images for the main menu from My picture.

Background image……Selects the background image for the main menu from My picture.

NOTE

- You cannot set the following images:
  - 100KB-or-larger image
  - JPEG image larger than 854 dots wide × 854 dots high
  - GIF image larger than 854 dots wide × 480 dots high or 480 dots wide × 854 dots high
- If the image is larger than the display area, the size is reduced without changing the aspect ratio, and displayed in the middle if the image is smaller than the display area.

FUNC Original theme screen (p.91)

- This setting is displayed only when you change the Original theme setting.

Reset……Restores the changed main menu icon or background image to the default settings.

All reset……Restores all the main menu icons and background image to the default settings.

Creating My select <My select>

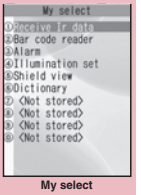
You can store the frequently used functions as "My select" and easily call them up. →p.31

- You can store up to 10 My select entries.
- You can set the main menu of "Mail", "i-mode" or "i-αppli" or each item under "Settings", "Data Box", "LifeKit", "Service", "Phonebook", "Own data", "MUSIC", "1Seg" and "Osaifu-keitai" as My select.
- You cannot store the same function twice.

1 MENU ▶ ch **(MySelect)**

The "My select" screen appears.

2 **Highlight an item to be stored or changed ▶ (Edit) ▶ Use to select the function**



My select

Function menu➡p.92

FUNC My select screen (p.92)

Add to org. menu……Creates My select.

Sort……Press to move the highlighted menu then sort My select.

Add shortcut icon→p.94

Reset my select……Restores the menu to the default settings.

Release……Removes one function from My select.

Release all……Removes all the stored functions from My select.

Setting the Illumination Flashing <Illumination set>

Set the illumination flashing mode of receiving a voice/videophone call or mail. You can also set the illumination for power-on/off, alarm or time signal.

1 MENU ▶ **"SETTINGS" ▶ "Illumination set" ▶ Select any item:**

Dialing……Set the illumination (ON/OFF) for voice/videophone call reception.

Incoming Call, Incoming V.phone, Call light, Mail receiving, Mail sending……Select the illumination lighting pattern/flashing color.

- To disable the illumination flashing, set the pattern to "OFF".
- "Incoming Call" can set illumination for receiving a voice call or 64K data communication.
- "Mail receiving" can set illumination for receiving i-mode mail, SMS or packet communication.
- You can set different lighting patterns/flashing colors respectively for calls or messages from specific phone numbers, mail addresses and groups. →p.77

Missed mail……Set the illumination (ON/OFF) for new mail.

Missed call……Set the illumination (ON/OFF) for missed calls.

Open phone, Close phone……Select the illumination lighting pattern/flashing color.
To disable the illumination flashing, set the pattern to "OFF".

Power ON……Set the illumination (ON/OFF) for power-on.

Power OFF……Set the illumination (ON/OFF) for power-off.

Charging start, Charging end, To Do, Schedule/Alarm……Select the illumination lighting pattern/flashing color.
To disable the illumination flashing, set the pattern to "OFF".

Time signal……Select the illumination pattern, color and cycle (30 minutes/60 minutes).
To disable time signal, set the pattern to "OFF".

Exchanging data……Set the illumination (ON/OFF) for infrared communications.

Play sound……Set the illumination (ON/OFF) for music playback.

Activate 1Seg……Set the illumination (ON/OFF) for 1seg activation.

Demo play……Flashes the illumination in order in patterns other than Random and Melody linked. (Color is all in "Rainbow")

■ **To check the pattern or color for each setting**

▶[i] (Play)

NOTE

- When the Pattern/Color list screen is displayed, illumination flashes in the highlighted pattern or color.
- If Pattern is set to "Melody linked" but the melody-linkage-compatible pattern is not registered, the default pattern applies.
- Area Mail Illumination works as follows:
  - Pattern: Flashes in Mail linkage when beep sounds, and follows this function's settings when new mail tone sounds.
  - Color: Red (Ruby red)
- If you receive multiple mail at the same time, the illumination flashes according to the illumination setting of the last received mail.

<Illumination priority for reception>

- When the illumination settings are duplicated, the priority is assigned as follows:
  ① Illumination for ring tones/images
  ② Illumination for group ring tones/images
  ③ "Incoming Call" or "Incoming V.phone" under Illumination set

Changing the Font <Font>

You can change the characters displayed on the screen to your favorite font (typeface).

1 On the standby screen▶[7] (1 second or longer)▶Select any item:

Font type……Selects "Gothic" or "Ming-cho".

Thickness……Selects "Thin" or "Bold".

Character size……Sets the character size for the respective screens.

Standard • X-large……Sets the character size of the screens to "Standard" or "X-large" all at once.

Separate setting……Sets the character size of the screens respectively.
"Screens that can be set with Separate setting" →p.93

■ **Screens that can be set with Separate setting**

Item	Target screen for setting
Char. Input	The character entry screen (Edit), the new mail screen (excluding SMS), the preview screen (excluding he sent SMS, etc)
Mail	Mail list/detail screen, screens displayed when referring to Header/Signature/ Template
i-mode	Sites screen, Screen memo, Message list/detail screen
Full brw.	Full Browser screen (except Original layout)
Phonebook	Phonebook list/detail screen, My Profile screen
History data	Redial/Dialed/Received calls screen, Address list screen
i-Channel	i-Channel ticker

NOTE

- The character in the enter phone number screen is not included in this function.
- You can change the character size in the following menus.
  Char. Input: CHG input size→p.303
  Mail: Font size→pp.176, 178
  i-mode: Font size→p.148
  Full brw.: Change font size→p.220
  Phonebook: Set large font⇔Set normal font →pp.74, 75, 291
  History data: Set large font⇔Set normal font →pp.54, 177
  i-Channel: Ticker size setting→p.154

Setting the Clock Display <Clock display>

You can set the Clock display format (12h clock/24h clock), size and character color. You can also set not to display the date or time.

- In the screens other than standby screen, only the time is displayed in small size at the top of the display regardless of this setting.
- Sub clock can be displayed when setting "Size" to "Small".

1 [MENU]▶"SETTINGS"▶"Clock"▶"Clock display"▶Select any item:

Style……Selects "12h clock" or "24h clock".

Size……Selects the display size of date and time from "Bigger/Big/Small/Up Small/OFF".

Color……Selects "Black" or "White".

Continued on next page

NOTE

- The Flash movie clock time on the standby screen cannot be set in this function.

Using Shortcut Icons

<My shortcut>

Pasting frequently phone numbers and functions to the standby screen as shortcut icons provides a quick and simple way of accessing those numbers and functions. When you cannot answer a received call or when you receive a mail, the icon appears on the standby screen.

■Shortcut icons that can be pasted

Icon	Operation when selected
	Phone number: Displays the Enter phone number screen with the phone number entered
	Mail address: Displays the New mail screen with the e-mail address entered
	SMS address: Displays the New SMS screen with the phone number entered
	URL (i-mode): Displays the site
	URL (Full Browser): Displays the site
	Melody: Plays the melody
	Image: Displays the image
	Movie or i-motion: Plays the movie or i-motion
	Chara-den: Displays the Chara-den
	PDF: Displays PDF data
	i-αppli software: Launches the i-αppli
	Inbox folder: Displays the Received mail list screen
	Photo mode: Activates the Photo mode
	Movie mode: Activates the Movie mode
	Voice mode: Activates the Voice mode
	To Do list: Displays the To Do list screen
	Schedule: Displays the Schedule screen
	Text memo: Displays the Text memo screen
	Text reader: Activates the Text reader
	Bar code reader: Activates the Bar code reader
	i-Channel: Displays the i-Channel
	Music&Video Channel: Displays the Music&Video Channel screen
	Music: Displays the Music Player screen
	Receive Ir data: Displays the Receive Ir data screen
	Dictionary: Displays the Dictionary screen
	My select: Displays My select
	Calculator: Activates the Calculator
	1Seg: Activates 1seg

* When a shortcut icon is selected, only the first 11 double-byte or 22 single-byte characters of the title are displayed. You can edit the title.→p.95

■Advising shortcut icons

Icon	Operation when selected
	New mail: Displays received mail detail screen
	New message: Displays the received message detail screen
	New ToruCa: Displays the ToruCa list screen
	Missed call: Displays the missed call screen
	Record message: Displays the play/erase msg. screen
	Record VP message: Displays the play/erase VP msg screen
	Message in the voice mail service center: Displays the voice mail screen
	Missed alarm: Displays the details of the missed alarm
	If i-αppli could not be launched automatically: Displays the auto-start info screen
	if i-αppli standby screen shut down due to an error: Displays the security error history screen
	Receive software update notifications: Updating Software **When the software update has been completed**: Displays the update results screen after entering your security code **When the timer rewriting is set**: Displays the install content preview screen
	When 1Seg timer recording ends: Displays the result screen
	When 1Seg booking program alarm does not work: Displays unviewed program info screen
	When accumulated charge exceeds the cost limit set: Displays the alarm information for notify cost limit after entering your security code
	Automatic updating result of the pattern data for the scanning function has been completed: Displays the automatic updating result of the pattern data

Icon	Operation when selected
	When the updating has not been done successfully or when the new pattern data has been released: The screen prompting you to update the pattern data for the scanning function appears
	When the Data Security Service could not be updated: Displays the screen that allows you to connect to the Data Security Center after you enter your security code
	When the Music&Video channel download has been completed: Displays the Music&Video Channel screen

* The shortcut icon that provides information disappears when it is called from each function or when it is performed.
* To erase the display of the shortcut icon that provides information, hold down CLR for 1 second or longer (you cannot erase some icons).

Pasting shortcut icons

Select "Add shortcut icon" from the function menu on the screen of the function you want to paste, the list screen or the detail screen of the data.

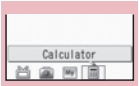
- (1Seg), (Photo mode) and (My selection) are pasted at default.
- You can paste up to 15 shortcut icons for Theme 1 to 3 respectively.

<Example: To paste a phone number from the phonebook>
"Add shortcut icon" in the Function menu (Phonebook detail screen)→p.75

Using shortcut icons to retrieve data or functions

1 On the standby screen▶■

The "Shortcut icon" screen appears, and you can select a shortcut icon. The title of the highlighted shortcut icon is displayed in the balloon.



Desktop icon
Function menu➡p.95

2 Use to select the shortcut icon

■ **If there are 6 or more shortcut icons stored**

The "◁▷" appears on the left or right of the screen. You can use to scroll through the shortcut icons.

Changing the theme of My shortcut on the standby screen

1 MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"Display"▶"My shortcut"

The "My shortcut" screen (Theme) appears. The "SET" appears for the theme that is set.

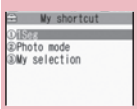
My shortcut screen (Theme)
Function menu➡p.95

2 Select a theme▶"YES"

When adding shortcut icons to the standby screen (p.95) after this procedure, you can sort and paste shortcut icons to the selected theme.

■ **To check the theme contents**

▶Highlight the theme▶ (Detail)
"My shortcut" screen (Detail) appears.



My shortcut screen (Detail)
Function menu➡p.95

FUNC Shortcut icon screen (p.95)/My shortcut screen (Theme/Detail) (p.95)

- As available functions are different between the Shortcut icon screen and My shortcut screen (Theme/Detail), displayed items vary.

Add new icon……Select an icon to paste from the function name list.

Create icon……Selects icons to be pasted from the function name list, then selects the theme.

Sort icon……Changes the position of desktop icons.

Display setting……Selects the icon display method from "Display always/Display at use". When set to "Display at use", the desktop icons are displayed only when you press ■ on the standby screen.

Edit title……You can enter up to 16 double-byte or 32 single-byte characters for the icon title, and 11 double-byte or 22 single-byte characters for the theme.

Shortcut icon info……Displays the icon title, type, contents, etc.

Copy……Selects from "Copy this/Copy selected/Copy all" and copies the ions to another theme.
"About multiple-choice"→p.38

Move……Selects from "Move this/Move selected/Move all" and moves the icons to another theme.
"About multiple-choice"→p.38

Continued on next page

Reset my shortcut……Restores the settings to the default settings (“1Seg”, “Photo mode” and “My selection”).

Change theme……Changes the theme of My shortcut.

Delete……Selects the deleting method from “Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all”.
“About multiple-choice”→p.38

Setting the standby screen

1 On the standby screen▶■▶ (Settings)▶Select any item:

Stand-by image set……Changes the standby screen image.→p.89

Kisekae Tool set.→p.97

ch-key setting→p.284

Clock disp set……Sets the clock on the standby screen.→p.93

Selecting the Icons to Display on the Standby Screen

<Icons setting>

You can set whether to use ✥ or not (ON/OFF) for selecting the icons, date or time displayed on the standby screen.

1 MENU▶“SETTINGS”▶“Display”▶“Icons setting”▶“ON” or “OFF”

Selecting displayed icons

1 On the standby screen▶■▶Highlight the icon with ✥

The title of the highlighted icon is displayed.

2 ■ (Select)

The setting screen for the selected icon, etc. is displayed.

■Icon you can select

Icon	After selected
	Displays “Display design”
	Displays “Display design”
self	Displays the screen for releasing “Self mode”
(Red) (Red)	Displays the unread mail list
	Displays the “Inbox”
(Red) (Red)	Displays “MessageR” or “MessageF”
(Red) (R: Red) (F: Red)	Displays the screen for selecting “MessageR” or “MessageF”
	Displays the unread mail list
(Red) (Red) (Red)	Performs “Check new messages”
	Displays the “Lock function selection” screen
	Displays the screen for releasing “IC card lock setting”
	Displays “USB mode setting”
	Displays the screen for selecting “Vibrator” or “Mail/Msg. ring time”
	When Manner mode is not set : Displays the screen for selecting “Ring volume” or “Mail/Msg. ring time” **When Manner mode or Super silent mode is set** : Displays the message that the setting is not available **When Original manner is set** : Displays the screen for selecting “Original” or “Mail/Msg. ring time”
	Displays “Manner mode set”
	Displays the screen for selecting “Schedule”, “Alarm”, “To Do list”, “1Seg booking program” or “1Seg timer recording”
to	Displays “Voice Mail”
, to	Displays a message notifying that nothing is recorded. Or, displays “Play/Erase msg.”

Icon	After selected
	Displays a message notifying that nothing is recorded. Or, displays “Play/Erase VP msg.”
	Displays the screen for selecting “Backlight” or “Shield view”
	Displays the screen for setting “Keypad lock”
	Displays “Side key guard”
Date	Displays “Schedule” Displays “Set main time” when the time is not set
Main clock	Displays “Alarm” Displays “Set main time” when the time is not set
Sub clock	Displays “Set sub clock”
	Switches and displays the active tasks

Setting the Kisekae Tool

<Kisekae Tool setting>

You can change various design of the FOMA terminal such as screens and ring tones all at once with the Kisekae Tool package.

- In addition to Kisekae Tool designed for the phone color, “ミッフィー”, “エリクル@World” and “ダイレクトメニュー” are pre-installed at the time of purchase.
- You can download the Kisekae Tool package from sites.→p.146
  The downloaded packages are stored in Data Box and you can check the contents.→p.225
- The following items can be set all at once.
  - “Display setting”
  - “Select ring tone”
  - “Clock Alarm Tone set”
  - “Menu display set” - “Theme”
  - “i-Channel” - “i-Channel setting” - “Ticker color setting”
  - “Change skin” of the Music Player
  - “Clock display”
  - “Display design”
- When 2in1 is set, Kisekae Tool set in any mode is applied to all modes/phone numbers/mail addresses except for the following:
  - Standby screen are applied only to A mode.
  - Ring tones for voice call and videophone call, Voice call ringing screen and Videophone ringing screen are applied only to A mode.
  - Ring tone for mail is applied only to A mode.
- When you change the design of the menu display using Kisekae Tool, the menu structure may change in accordance with frequency of using functions. Also, you cannot access some functions entering the menu number assigned to the functions. In this case, change the main menu to “Standard Menu” (p.33) or perform “Reset menu op. log” (p.91) so as to operate as described in this manual.

Setting a package

- If you store the current settings to “お気に入り” (My favorite) before setting all at once, you can restore the stored setting later.→p.98

1 MENU▶**“SETTINGS”▶“Kisekae Tool setting”**

The “Kisekae Tool set” screen appears.

Kisekae Tool set

Function menu➡p.98

2 **Select an item▶“YES”**

No item is set in “お気に入り” (My favorite) at the time of purchase.

■ **To check the settings**

▶Highlight an item▶ (Detail)▶Highlight an item▶ (Play)

■ **To search packages by i-mode**

▶“Search by i-mode”▶“YES”

NOTE

- Items to be changed vary depending on the package.
- When a package is set, the color of “Disp. call/receive No.” may be changed.
- Highlighting the pre-install package in Kisekae-tool setting list screen displays the color pattern and standby image and the thumbnail of the main menu.

FUNC Kisekae Tool set list screen (p.97)

Edit title……Edits the title. You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.

Check Setting info……Checks the set contents.

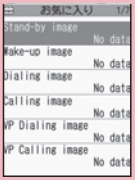
Reset Setting info……Deletes the "お気に入り" (My favorite) settings.

Storing the current setting to "お気に入り" (My favorite)

1 Kisekae Tool set list screen (p.97)▶Highlight "お気に入り"(My favorite)▶ (Detail)

The "Contents checking" screen appears.
"No data" appears for items with no settings.

2 (FUNC)▶"Take Setting info"▶"YES"



Contents checking

Function menu➡p.98

● Changing "お気に入り" (My favorite) settings

You can change the items stored in "お気に入り" (My favorite) on the contents checking screen.

1 Contents checking screen (p.98)▶Select an item▶Change the setting

NOTE

- The details of "i-αppli display" is not stored to "Stand-by image" in "お気に入り" (My favorite).
- If an image, i-motion or melody stored in "お気に入り" (My favorite) is deleted, it is also deleted from "お気に入り" (My favorite) and "No data" appears.

FUNC Contents checking screen (p.98)

Set all*1/Finish*2……Sets to the currently displayed items all at once.

Take Setting info*2……Retains the current settings and stores in "お気に入り" (My favorite).

Reset Setting info*2……Deletes settings stored in "お気に入り" (My favorite) and set all items to "No data".

*1: Available only for "ミッフィー", "ダイレクトメニュー" and downloaded Kisekae Tool package ( ) from sites.
*2: Displayed only with the data with " "

Security Settings

About Your Security Codes

Security Codes Used on the FOMA Terminal 100
Changing Your Security Code ..... Change security code 101
Setting Your PIN Codes ..... PIN setting 101
Release PIN Lock 101

Restricting the Phone Controls and Functions

Preventing Others from Using Your Terminal ..... Dial lock/Omakase Lock 101
Preventing Others from Viewing Your Phonebook or Schedule Data ..... Secret mode/Secret data only mode 103
Preventing Others from Viewing Data ..... Secret folder 104
Preventing Others from Viewing Your Personal Information or Performing the Phone/Mail Operations ..... Original lock 106
Locking the Key Operation Automatically ..... Keypad lock 110
Using the IC Card Authentication ..... IC card authentic. 111
Disabling the Side Key ..... Side key guard 112

Restricting Incoming and Outgoing Calls or Transmissions

Preventing Unwanted Mail Display ..... Mail box lock/Folder lock 112
Restricting Incoming and Outgoing Calls for Specific Phone Numbers ..... Restrictions 112
Rejecting Calls from Unidentified Callers ..... Call setting w/o ID 114
Muting Ring Tones for Callers Not Stored in the Phonebook ..... Ring time(sec.) 114
Rejecting Calls from Callers Not Stored in the Phonebook ..... Reject unknown 114
Disabling Making/Receiving Calls, etc. ..... Self mode 115

Other Security Settings

Data Security Service ..... Data Security Service 115
Other Security Settings 116

Security Codes Used on the FOMA Terminal

To make the FOMA terminal more convenient and secure, some functions require the security code. In addition to the security code for various FOMA terminal operations, you also have the Network security code for accessing network services and the i-mode password. Make use of the FOMA terminal using an appropriate security code according to the purpose.

Notes on the security codes

- Avoid using a readily predictable number such as "birthday", "part of the phone number", "street address number or room number", "1111" and "1234". Make sure to make a note of the security code you set in case you forget it.
- Take great care not to disclose your security code to others. If your security code is disclosed to others and abused, NTT DOCOMO shall have no liability for any damage due to any unauthorized use of it.
- DOCOMO by no means inquire your security code.
- If you forget any of your security codes, you must bring your official identification providing that you are the subscriber (such as a driver's license), the FOMA terminal, and the FOMA card (UIM) with you to an NTT DOCOMO service counter. For details, contact the inquiries number provided on the back of this manual.

■Security Code

The security code is set to "0000" (4 zeros) at the time of purchase. You can change the security code by yourself. →p.101

When the security code screen appears, enter the 4 to 8 digit security code and press [■] (Set).

- The entered security code is displayed as "_" and the numbers are not displayed.
- When you enter a wrong security code or enter nothing for about 15 seconds, a warning tone sounds and a warning message appears.

■Network Security Code

The network security code is a 4-digit number required for using the DOCOMO e-site or various network services. You can set any number at the time of subscription but you can change it afterwards by yourself.
If you have the "docomo ID/Password" for general PC support site "My docomo", you can change the network security code from your PC.
You can also change it by yourself using i-mode, from "各種手続き" (Applications and Procedures) on the DOCOMO e-site. (Only in Japanese)

* For details of "My docomo" and "DOCOMO e-site", see the back of the back cover of this manual.

■i-mode Password

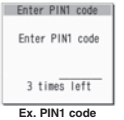
The 4-digit "i-mode password" is required when registering/unregistering My Menu, subscribing to/unsubscribing from the message service or the pay services of i-mode (There may be other passwords set independently by the information service providers).
The i-mode password is set to "0000" (4 zeros) at the time of subscription. You can change the i-mode password by yourself.
You can change the password using i-mode, by selecting [i]▶"iMenu"▶"English"▶"Options"▶"Change i-mode Password".

■PIN1 Code and PIN2 Code

You can set two security codes of PIN1 code and PIN2 code for the FOMA card (UIM).
These security codes are set to "0000" (4 zeros) at the time of subscription. You can change the PIN1/PIN2 codes by yourself. →p.101
PIN1 code is a 4 to 8 digit number (code) you enter each time you insert the FOMA card (UIM) to the FOMA terminal or you turn on the FOMA terminal. This code identifies you as the user and is designed to prevent improper use of your FOMA card (UIM) by others. When the PIN1 code entry set is set to "ON", entering the PIN1 code enables you to make and receive calls and use the functions of the FOMA terminal.
The PIN2 code is a 4 to 8 digit number that is used for resetting the total cost, using or requesting the user certificates, etc.

* When you purchase a new FOMA terminal and insert your current FOMA card (UIM), use the PIN1 and PIN2 codes you set to the current card.

When the PIN1 or PIN2 code entry screen appears, enter the 4 to 8 digit PIN1/PIN2 code and press [■] (Set).



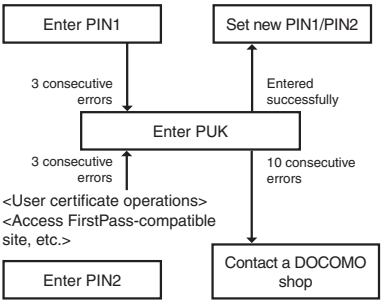
Ex. PIN1 code

- The entered PIN1/PIN2 code is displayed as "_".
- If you enter a wrong PIN1/PIN2 code three times consecutively, the PIN1/PIN2 code is locked and cannot be used anymore. (The remaining number of times for the entry appears on the screen.) When you enter the correct PIN1/PIN2 code, the number of times for entry is reset to 3.

■PIN Unlock Code (PUK Code)

The PIN unlock code (PUK code) is an 8-digit number for releasing the lock of PIN1/PIN2 code. You cannot change the PUK code.

● If you enter a wrong PUK code ten times consecutively, the FOMA card is locked.



Changing Your Security Code
<Change security code>

1 MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"Lock/Security"▶"Change security code"▶Enter your current security code▶Enter new 4 to 8 digits security code▶"YES"

Setting Your PIN Codes
<PIN setting>

You can set PIN1 code and PIN2 code for your FOMA card (UIM). PIN1 code and PIN2 code→p.100

● PIN1 code, PIN2 code and PIN1 code entry set are recorded to the FOMA card (UIM).

● To change your PIN1 code, select "ON" in "PIN1 code entry set".

1 MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"Lock/Security"▶"PIN setting"▶Enter your security code

The "PIN setting" screen appears.

PIN setting

2 Select any item:

Change PIN1 code……Enter the current PIN1 code (4 to 8 digit) and enter a new PIN1 code 2 times (1 time for confirmation).

Change PIN2 code……Enter the current PIN2 code (4 to 8 digit) and enter a new PIN2 code 2 times (1 time for confirmation).

PIN1 code entry set……Sets whether PIN1 code to be input when you turn the FOMA terminal on or not (ON/OFF).

Release PIN Lock

If you enter incorrect PIN1 code or PIN2 code 3 times in a row, you must unlock the locked PIN1 code or PIN2 code then set a new PIN1 code or PIN2 code.

<Example: To unlock your PIN1 code>

1 Enter the 8 digit PUK code

2 Enter a new 4 to 8 digit PIN1 code▶Enter the new 4 to 8 digit PIN1 code again

Preventing Others from Using Your Terminal
<Dial lock/Omakase Lock>

To lock your FOMA terminal to prevent others from using, you can set "Dial lock" that can be set on the FOMA terminal and "Omakase Lock" that can be set remotely.

● Dial lock or Omakase Lock is not released even when the power is turned off.

● Available operations and functions when Dial lock or Omakase Lock is set

Function	Dial lock	Omakase Lock
Turning the FOMA Terminal on/off	○	○
Calling emergency numbers (110, 119 or 118)	○	×
Setting/releasing Dial lock	○	×
Setting/releasing Omakase Lock	○	○
Receiving a voice or videophone calls	○	○
Updating the Data Security Service data	○	×

○: Available ×: Unavailable

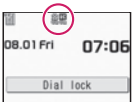
Continued on next page

- When Dial lock or Omakase Lock is set, the "Alarm", "Schedule", "To Do list", "1Seg booking program" and "1Seg timer recording" are not given. Once Dial lock or Omakase Lock is released, the "(Missed alarm)" or "(Missed program)" shortcut icon appears on the standby screen.
- The shortcut icon is not displayed when Dial lock or Omakase Lock is set. Once Dial lock or Omakase Lock is released, these icons reappear.
- Even when you receive calls from the callers stored in the phonebook, only the phone numbers are displayed when Dial lock or Omakase Lock is set.

Setting the Dial lock

1 MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"Lock/Security"▶"Lock"▶Enter your security code▶"Dial lock"

Operations during Dial lock



- "Dial lock" and " " appear on the screen. IC card lock is also set to "ON" and IC card functions become unavailable (Dial lock can be released using the IC card authentication function).
- You can still receive MessageR/F, i-mode mail or SMS automatically when Dial lock is set, but the receiving screen or reception results screen does not appear. Once Dial lock is released, the icon for the received message/mail appears on the standby screen.
  - You can still receive the Area Mail automatically and view the contents.

Releasing Dial lock

- If you fail to release Dial lock 5 times in a row, the FOMA terminal turns off. However, you can turn it on again.

1 Enter your security code on the screen when Dial lock is set▶■

Dial lock is released and " " disappears.

■ To release the lock using the IC card authentication→p.111

NOTE

- Even if an incorrect security code is input while releasing Dial lock, no error message appears. Press and input a correct security code again.

Using Omakase Lock

This service enables you to remotely lock the FOMA terminal with the FOMA card (UIM) you subscribed to inserted by contacting DOCOMO or from My docomo when you lost your FOMA terminal. You can release the lock by calling DOCOMO, etc.

* Omakase Lock is a pay service. If you subscribe to the service at the same time with the subscription of suspending the service or while the service is suspended, no charge applies.

Call Center (for setting/releasing Omakase Lock)

0120-524-360 (Operating time: 24 hours a day) (only in Japanese)

* My docomo is also available to set/release Omakase Lock via a PC, etc.

* For details on Omakase Lock, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

Operations during Omakase Lock

- "おまかせロック中です" (Omakase Lock set) appears on the display.
- When Omakase Lock is set, all the key operations except answering voice/videophone calls and powering on/off are locked, and the functions (including IC card) become unusable.
- Although you can receive voice/videophone calls, only the phone number appears on the display while the name, image, etc. stored in the phonebook do not.
- Mails received when Omakase Lock is set are kept at i-mode center.
- You can turn the FOMA terminal on/off, but Omakase Lock is not released even when the power is turned off.
- The FOMA card (UIM) and microSD card remain unlocked.

NOTE

- When other function is activated, the function is terminated and the FOMA terminal is locked (the editing data may be canceled before terminating).
- You can set Omakase Lock even when other lock function is set. In this case, releasing Omakase Lock returns to the lock setting before Omakase Lock is set (however, Secret or Secret data only mode are released).
- Lock is not set when " ", Self mode is set or the FOMA terminal is turned off.
- The lock is not set if you subscribed to the "Dual Network" service and are using the mova service.

NOTE

- The FOMA terminal is locked if the subscriber requests even if the subscriber and the user of the FOMA terminal are different.
- If the FOMA terminal is on voice or videophone call when you try to release Omakase Lock, the lock is released after the call ends.

Preventing Others from Viewing Your Phonebook or Schedule Data

<Secret mode/Secret data only mode>

When the phonebook or schedule entries are stored in Secret or Secret data only mode, these entries are stored as secret data and are not displayed in normal mode. To display the secret data, set the FOMA terminal to Secret mode (displays all data including the secret data) or Secret data only mode (displays only the secret data).

- You can also keep the data in "My picture", "i-motion", "Received mails", "Sent mails" and "Bookmark" into the secret folder to prevent others from viewing the data.→p.104

Setting to Secret or Secret data only mode

1 MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"Lock/Security"▶"Secret mode" or "Secret data only mode"▶Enter your security code

When setting to Secret mode, " " appears. When setting to Secret data only mode, " " flashes and the number of secret data is displayed for about 2 seconds.

Icons displayed when other lock function is set at the same time→p.27

Storing/viewing the Secret data and setting the Secret data back to normal data

- You cannot set phonebook entries as secret data on the FOMA card (UIM).
- When making or receiving voice/videophone calls during secret mode or secret data only mode, set mode is released even if you do not answer the call.

■Setting phonebook entries or schedule entries as secret data

Store the information in Secret or Secret data only mode.
Adding information to the phonebook→p.70
Adding information to your schedule→p.285

■Setting the stored phonebook entries as secret data

Select "Set secret" from the function menu of the phonebook detail screen.

* If you set the phonebook entry stored to Choku-Den as a secret data, the entry is deleted from Choku-Den.

■Viewing the secret data

Set the FOMA terminal to Secret or Secret data only mode, then view the phonebook or schedule.
Searching the phonebook→p.73
Checking your schedule→p.287

■Setting the secret data back to normal data

Set the FOMA terminal to Secret or Secret data only mode, display the "Phonebook detail" screen (p.73) or "Schedule list" screen (p.287) to select "Release secret" from the function menu.

Canceling Secret or Secret data only mode

1 In Secret or Secret data only mode, ☎

Secret or Secret data only mode is canceled and " " disappears.
You can also release the set mode by selecting MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"Lock/Security"▶"Secret mode" or "Secret data only mode"

NOTE

- When a secret data is highlighted in the list screen during Secret mode or when the detail screen of a secret data is displayed, the lighting of " " changes to flashing.
- "Phonebook" or "Schedule" entries stored as secret data can only be retrieved, modified, deleted or referred in Secret or Secret data only mode. When the FOMA terminal is in normal mode, you will be notified of schedule events stored as secret data by an alarm, but no alarm message is displayed.

Continued on next page

NOTE

- If the caller of the incoming call is stored as secret data and notifies the caller ID, the stored name or image is not displayed and only the phone number is displayed. Only the phone number is displayed in “Received calls” record. Setting Secret mode or Secret data only mode displays the name stored in the “Received calls” record.
- If the Secret mode or Secret data only mode is released when you receive mail from a sender stored as secret data, not the name but the mail address is displayed. The mail address is not stored in “Received address” record.
- If you modify your “Phonebook” or “Schedule” in Secret mode, the modified data becomes secret data. If you modify the phonebook, all the items stored under the modified memory number become secret data.
- If “Dial lock/Omakase Lock” is set at the same time with “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”, releasing “Dial lock/Omakase Lock” also cancels “Secret mode” or “Secret data only mode”.
- When you make a call or send a mail using the phonebook stored as a secret data, it is not recorded in the “Redial”, “Dialed calls” or “Sent address” records.

Preventing Others from Viewing Data <Secret folder>

You can store images, movies, i-motion, received mail, sent mail, and bookmarks you want to prevent others from viewing data, using Secret folder which is displayed only in Secret mode or Secret data only mode.

- You can store the data stored in the FOMA terminal only.
- The maximum number of data records that can be stored in each secret folder is as follows:

My picture	i-motion	Received mail
Approx. 100 (Approx. 2M bytes)	Approx. 10 (Approx. 10M bytes)	Approx. 100 (Approx. 1.2M bytes)
Sent mail	**Bookmark (i-mode)**	**Bookmark (Full Browser)**
Approx. 100 (Approx. 1.2M bytes)	Approx. 10 (Approx. 3K bytes)	Approx. 10 (Approx. 6K bytes)

* The data may not be able to be stored up to the maximum number depending on the file size of each data.

<Example: To store an image in My picture into the Secret folder>

1 Switch the FOMA terminal to Secret mode or Secret data only mode→p.103

2 Image list screen (p.225)▶Use ⊕ to move the frame of the image▶ ✉ (FUNC)▶“Keep in secret”

NOTE

- The Secret folder is already prepared for the FOMA terminal. You cannot create another Secret folder, or delete or rename the existing Secret folder.
- If the secret/secret data only mode is canceled by an incoming call, etc. while displaying the data in the secret folder, the screen returns to the list screen of each folder.

<Received mail> <Sent mail>

- When you receive the SMS report for the SMS stored in the Secret folder, you cannot select “Disp. SMS report” from the function menu of the SMS detail screen. You can select after putting out a mail message from the Secret folder.

NOTE

<Shortcut icon>

- When the image, movie or i-motion pasted as a shortcut icon is stored in the Secret folder, it is not displayed even when the shortcut icon is selected.
- Even when the Bookmark, received mail or sent mail pasted as a shortcut icon is stored in the Secret folder, normal operation is performed when the shortcut icon is selected.

Function menu of the Secret folder

Some functions for the folder or data in the folder are restricted in the Secret folder. The table below shows the available functions on the folder list screen, the data list screen, and the data detail screen. For information on "Put out", refer to "Changing a secret data to normal data" (p.106).

Function menu when the Secret folder is highlighted on the folder list screen

My picture (p.253)	i-motion (p.253)
Add folder Delete all image*1 Memory info	Add folder Delete all*1 Memory info
Received/Sent mail (p.173)	**Bookmark (p.142)**
Add folder No. of messages*1 Open folder iC trans. all*1 Send all Ir data*1 CopyAll to microSD*1 Delete read*1*2 Delete all*1	Add folder No. of bookmarks*1 iC trans. all*1 Send all Ir data*1 CopyAll to microSD*1 Delete all*1

*1: The data in the Secret folder are not included.
*2: Available only with the Inbox folder list screen.

Function menu (Data list screen)

My picture (p.228)	i-motion (p.233)
Display image Image info Memory info Chg. list view*1 Delete Put out	i-motion info Memory info List setting Delete Put out
Received/Sent mail (p.175)	**Bookmark (p.143)**
Color coding List setting Protect*2 Unprotect*2 Protect ON/OFF*3 Unprotect all*3 Mail info*2 No. of messages Delete Put out	No. of bookmarks Delete Put out

*1: In list display, "Chg. images view" appears.
*2: Available only with the received mail list screen.
*3: Available only with the sent mail list screen.

Function menu (Data detail screen)

My picture (p.228)	i-motion (p.279)
Image info Set image disp. Full screen* Retry Delete this	Action setting Play menu Detail Info Select file Help
Received/Sent mail (p.176)	
Protect ON/OFF Scroll Font size Delete Put out	

* : "Normal" appears when in the Full screen mode.

Changing a secret data to normal data

To change the secret data back to normal data, move the data from the Secret folder to another folder.

<Example: To return an image from the Secret folder of My picture to normal data>

1 Switch the FOMA terminal to Secret mode or Secret data only mode→p.103

2 Folder list screen (p.225)▶"Secret"▶Move the frame to an image▶ ✉ (FUNC)▶"Put out"

3 Select a folder

NOTE

- If you put out a mail message from the Secret folder, the mail turns into a normal mail message. Therefore, an old mail message may be deleted when new mail messages are sent or received. It is recommended to protect the mail message before putting it out from the Secret folder.

Preventing Others from Viewing Your Personal Information or Performing the Phone/Mail Operations

<Original lock>

You can lock the functions which use your personal information such as mails and phonebook to prevent others from viewing these information or altering improperly. You can also restrict making or receiving voice/videophone calls, and sending i-mode mails or SMS.

- You can store the function or data you want to lock to Original lock 1 to 3 individually depending on the usage or purpose.
- Original lock is not released even when the power is turned off.
- Functions and data you can lock are described in **Table 1** (p.108). You can specify (customize) whether to lock or not for each group and item. →p.107

Activating Original lock

1 MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"Lock/Security"▶"Lock"▶Enter your security code

The "Lock selection" screen appears.

Lock selection

2 Select Original lock 1 to 3

The lock is activated and the function or data to be locked is locked.

" " appears on the screen.

Icons displayed when other lock function is set at the same time→p.27

■ **To change the function or data to be locked→p.107**

■ **To edit the title**

▶Highlight one of Original lock 1 to 3▶ ✉ (FUNC)▶"Edit title"▶Enter the title

■ **To release Original lock**

▶"OFF"

● Operations during Original lock

If you try to use the locked function or data when Original lock is set, you are asked to enter your security code.

- If you enter your security code, the lock is deactivated temporarily and you can use the locked function or data (you cannot use the functions of "Dial/sending mail" and "Incoming/Mail disp." when the lock is released temporarily). When you exit from the activated function and return to the standby screen, the lock is activated again.

<Example: To view an i-mode mail when Original lock is set>

1 On the standby screen▶✉

2 Enter your security code

Original lock is released temporarily and the mail menu appears.

3 Read an i-mode mail

4 Exit the mail menu and return to the standby screen

Original lock is activated and " " appears on the screen.

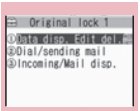
Customizing the function or data to be locked

- You can store particular settings such as "locking the phonebook only" or "restricting the outgoing calls/mails only" to Original lock 1 to 3 individually depending on the usage or purpose.
- You can set (customize) the lock by each category, group or function such as **Table 1** (p.108).
- The contents of the lock you set (customize) are retained even when Original lock is set or released.

1 Lock selection screen (p.106) ▶ Highlight one of Original lock 1 to 3▶ (Detail)

The "Category list" screen appears.

" " appears when any of the item in the category is to be locked and " ALL " appears when all items are to be locked.



Category list

Function menu➡p.110

2 Select the category you want to change the setting

The "Group list" screen appears.

" " appears when any of the item in the group is to be locked and " ALL " appears when all items are to be locked.

Group list

Function menu➡p.110

3 Select the group you want to change the setting

The "Function list" screen appears.

4 Use to select □ (checkbox)▶ (Finish)

The checked ( ) item is to be locked.

Deselect items you do not want to lock.

Function list

Function menu➡p.110

5 (Finish)▶ (Finish)▶■ (Set)

The number of times you press (Finish) varies depending on the category.

Continued on next page

[Table 1] Functions and data for the Original lock

Group	Function	Operations when locked/Notes
Data disp. Edit del.		
Mail	Mail Mail member	Locks the activation of each function. • You can view the Area Mail contents.
i-mode	i-mode	Locks the i-mode function (i-mode, Full Browser and i-Channel).
	Bookmark	Locks the i-mode and Full Browser bookmark list displays.
i-αppli	i-αppli	Locks the i-αppli function or IC card list display. • IC card function is not locked. • When the i-αppli standby screen is set, the i-αppli standby screen is deactivated when the lock is set.
ToruCa	ToruCa	Locks the display of ToruCa folder list screen. • The ToruCa acquisition is available with a reader/writer unit even when the lock is set, but the “New ToruCa” shortcut icon does not appear (once the lock is released, the “New ToruCa” shortcut icon appears).
Multi media	My picture Music i-motion Melody 1Seg Kisekae Tool My document Chara-den Document viewer Voice announce	Locks the activation of each function. • The data cannot be accessed from other functions. • If the data to be locked is set as the ring tone, receiving screen, standby screen, etc., the default settings are used when the lock is set. • When “My picture” or “Chara-den” is to be locked and an substitute image is sent for a videophone call when the lock is set, the “Pre-installed” substitute image is sent.
	Music&Video Channel Camera Bar code reader Text reader	Locks the activation of each function. • Music&Video Channel programs can be downloaded even when the lock is set.
Schedule	Schedule Alarm To Do list	Locks the activation of each function. • The alarm notification is not given when the lock is set and “Missed alarm” shortcut icon appears.
Memo	Play/Erase msg. Play/Erase VP msg.	Locks the activation of each function (you can set the Record message). • During any lock function is set, and when you press ▼メモ) with the FOMA terminal folded, you cannot check “Record message”.
	Voice memo Voice memo (in-call)	Locks the activation of each function. • The play/erase a voice memo is not locked (Set the lock for “Play/Erase msg.” screen)
Phonebook	Phonebook/ Choku-Den	Locks the activation of the phonebook and Choku-Den (this affects many other functions which use the phonebook). • The stored name is not displayed when the lock is set in the Dialed and Received call or Mail list screen. A phone number or mail address is displayed. • When “MSG display settings” of “Chaku-moji” is set to “Only number in PH-book”, a Chaku-moji message is not displayed. • You cannot set “Reject unknown” at the same time. • “Call rejection”, “Call acceptation”, “Call Forwarding” and “Voice Mail” settings are deactivated. • Even if you press ▼メモ) with the FOMA terminal folded while lock is set, the FOMA terminal does not read out the caller or sender’s name of a missed call or new mail.
	My profile	Locks the activation of My Profile.
	Dialed calls	Locks the activation of “Dialed calls”, “Redial” and “Sent address”.
	Received calls	Locks the activation of “Received calls” and “Received address”. • Even if you press ▼メモ) with the FOMA terminal folded while lock is set, the FOMA terminal does not check a missed call.

Group	Function	Operations when locked/Notes
Other settings	Text memo	Locks the activation of text memo.
	Notice designate calls	No alarm notification is given even when the specified upper cost limit is exceeded. • Once the lock is released, the “Notice designate calls” shortcut icon appears.
	Chaku-moji	Locks the function of editing or setting Chaku-moji, and the function of “Select message” or “Sent messages” when you send the Chaku-moji, and Chaku-moji is not displayed. • You can send or receive the Chaku-moji.
Dial/sending mail		
Keypad dial	Keypad dial	You cannot make calls by dialing the phone number directly (you can make calls using the phonebook, Redial/Dialed calls records and the Received calls record of the recorded party.). • You cannot add or edit phonebook entries, perform UIM operation or copy phonebook from a microSD card. • You can still call the emergency numbers (110, 119 or 118).
Sending mail	Input add by keypad	Locks to send i-mode mails or SMS by entering the address directly (you can use only the phonebook, Redial/Dialed calls records, the sent address list, the received calls record or the received address of the recorded party.). • You cannot add or edit phonebook entries, perform UIM operation or copy phonebook from a microSD card. • Addresses of all mails in the Draft mailbox and the mails with addresses only are deleted.
	Sending mail	Locks the i-mode mail and SMS.
Incoming/Mail disp.		
Incoming call		Rejects voice and videophone calls and packet communication (these are recorded as missed calls). • Once the lock is released, the “Missed call” shortcut icon appears.
Disp. recv. mail/msg.		You can still receive MessageR/F, i-mode mail or SMS automatically, but the receiving screen or reception results screen does not appear. Also, there is no ring tone or other reaction when a call comes in and you are not notified of a received call. • You can still receive the Area Mail automatically and view the contents. • Once the lock is released, shortcut icons such as “New mail” appear.

* When the data to be locked are pasted as “Shortcut icon” on the standby screen, these shortcut icons are not displayed when the lock is set.

FUNC Category list screen (p.107)/ Group list screen (p.107)

Select……Selects all items in the highlighted item.

Release……Deselects all selected items in the highlighted item.

Select all……Selects all items under the displayed item.

Release all……Deselects all selected items under the displayed item.

FUNC Function list screen (p.107)

Select all……Selects all the displayed items.

Release all……Deselects all the displayed items.

Locking the Key Operation Automatically <Keypad lock>

You can lock the key operations automatically when the FOMA terminal is folded or no operation is performed for a certain period of time.

- The center illumination lamp flashes in blue while in Keypad lock.

Setting Keypad lock

1 **MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"Lock/Security"▶"Keypad lock"▶Enter your security code▶Select any item:**

After folded……Sets whether to lock the keypad automatically when the FOMA terminal is folded (ON/OFF).

Timer……Selects the setting from "OFF/ON after 1 minute/ON after 5 minutes/ON after 15 minutes/ON after 30 minutes".
For example, when set to "ON after 5 minutes", the lock is set automatically after no operation is performed for 5 minutes. When set to "OFF", timer is deactivated and no lock is set.

2 **Set the respective items▶ (Finish)**

Operations during Keypad lock

- "Keypad lock" and " " appear on the screen while the Keypad lock is set.
- During Keypad lock, all the key operations are unavailable except for answering voice or videophone calls, turning on/off the FOMA terminal, the operation of IC card authentication function and (▲マナー) (check for missed call/new mail).
- While in Keypad lock, the FOMA terminal receives MessageR/F, i-mode mail, SMS and Area mail, but viewing or reading out messages is not available.
  - You can still receive the Area Mail automatically and view the contents.
- Even when Keypad lock is set, the "Alarm", "Schedule", "To Do list", "1Seg booking program" and "1Seg timer recording" alarms are given.
- If you can operate the FOMA terminal even when Keypad lock is set (e.g. when receiving a voice call or alarm notification is given), " " appears under the function display.

NOTE

- Even when keypad lock is set, you can directly dial and make voice calls to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118).
- The lock may not be set during a call, data communication (such as i-mode) or playback of melody/i-motion/music, or when activating the camera, etc.
- When "After folded" or "Timer" is set to ON then the power is turned off, Keypad lock automatically activates even if the FOMA terminal remains opened or the time has not reached the specified time.

Releasing Keypad lock temporarily

1 **Enter your security code on the screen when Keypad lock is set▶■**

■ **To release the lock temporarily using the IC card authentication→p.111**

Using the IC Card Authentication <IC card authentic.>

You can release Dial lock or Keypad lock or you can perform the user authentication without entering your security code on the screen which requires your security code entry only by placing the FOMA terminal on a FeliCa-compatible contactless IC card (external IC card).

- You can use the IC card authentication even when IC card lock is set.
- You can store up to 2 contactless IC cards.

Activating the IC card authentication

You can store the contactless IC card to enable the user authentication.

1 MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"Lock/Security"▶"IC card authentic."▶Enter your security code

The "IC card authentic." screen appears.

IC card authentic.

Function menu➡p.111

2 "ON"▶"OK"

■ **To activate the stored contactless IC card**
▶"ON"

■ **To deactivate the IC card authentication**
▶"OFF"▶"YES" or "NO"
Select "YES" when you delete all the contactless IC card data, and select "NO" when you do not delete them.

3 Place the contactless IC card on the FeliCa mark "" on the FOMA terminal

"" disappears when the card is stored.

FUNC **IC card authentic. screen (p.111)**

New ext. IC card……Stores up to 2 contactless IC cards. If 2 cards are already stored, delete the old data to store the card.

Del. ext. IC card……Deletes the contactless IC card data.

Using the IC Card Authentication

<Example: To release the Dial lock/Keypad lock>

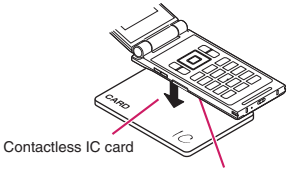
1 Open the FOMA terminal when Dial lock/Keypad lock is set

"" appears on the screen and the user authentication is enabled for about 10 seconds. Pressing ch (iC auth.) on the standby screen also enables the user authentication.

■ **To release the lock with the FOMA terminal folded**
Pressing (▲マナー) (1 second or longer) enables the user authentication for about 10 seconds.

2 Place the contactless IC card on the FeliCa mark "" on the FOMA terminal

The lock is released when the user authentication is performed successfully.



Contactless IC card

Hold the contactless IC card and the FOMA terminal in your hand, and put "" of the back cover close to the IC card.

* Put the IC card close to the FOMA terminal as illustrated The FOMA terminal may have difficulty in authentication depending on the IC card. In this case move the card horizontal or vertical.

■ **When entering your security code**
"" appears when the security code entry screen appears and the user authentication is enabled for about 10 seconds. If you place the contactless IC card stored with this function on the FeliCa mark on the FOMA terminal, the user authentication is performed.

NOTE

- Even though the contactless card is compatible with FeliCa, this function may not be available depending on the card.
- When using the IC card authentication, hold the contactless IC card and the FOMA terminal with your hands.
- If you fail 5 times in sequence, the IC card authentication is deactivated and the authentication can be performed only with the security code. After the authentication with your security code is performed successfully, you can use the IC card authentication again.

Disabling the Side Key

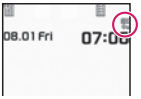
<Side key guard>

You can disable the function of the side keys (▲マナー) and (▼メモ)) when the FOMA terminal is folded.

- In the following situations, the side key is enabled regardless of this setting:
  - When the FOMA terminal is opened
  - When a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional), etc. is connected

1 MENU▶✱ (1 second or longer)

The side key operations are disabled (ON) and " " appears.



■ **To enable the external keys when the FOMA terminal is folded**

▶Repeat step 1

" " disappears.

Preventing Unwanted Mail Display

<Mail box lock/Folder lock>

You can lock your Inbox, Outbox, Draft mailboxes or other folders so that their contents cannot be viewed by other people without your approval. Mail box or folders which is locked cannot be opened without entering a security code.

- Once you enter your security code, it remains valid until the mail task is finished, and you can open mail folders without security code even if the lock is set.
- For folders that are locked, icons such as " " or " " appear before the folder name on the folder list screen.
- Icons such as " " appear next to the mail box which is locked. (Only when in Standard Menu, Simple Menu or Original theme)
- When lock is set to mail box or folder, mail addresses for which lock is set are not recorded in the Sent address and Received address lists.

Setting lock for individual mail boxes

1 ✉▶"Mail settings"▶"Mail box lock"▶Enter your security code

2 Use ⊡ to select a checkbox (☐)

"About multiple-choice"→p.38

3 ⊡ (Finish)

Setting lock for individual folders

1 Inbox/Outbox folder list screen (pp.170, 171)▶Highlight the folder to be locked ▶✉ (FUNC)▶"Folder lock"▶Enter your security code▶"YES"

■ **To release the setting**

▶Repeat step 1

Restricting Incoming and Outgoing Calls for Specific Phone Numbers

<Restrictions>

You can restrict incoming and outgoing calls for each phone number stored in the Phonebook to prevent personal phone calls or nuisance calls.

- You can specify restrictions for up to 20 phone numbers in each directory.
- This setting is not available for the FOMA card (UIM) phonebook.
- This function is applied to only calls of which caller ID is notified. It is recommended to set "Caller ID Request" or "Call setting w/o ID" at the same time.
- You cannot set Call rejection and Call acceptation to the same phone number, or Call forwarding and Voice mail to the same number.
- If you set restrictions for the phone number and then edit or delete that phone number, the restrictions on the selected function are released (however, when "Restrict dialing" is set, you cannot edit or delete the phonebook).

Setting restrictions

1 Phonebook detail screen (p.73)▶✉ (FUNC)▶"Restrictions"▶Enter your security code▶Select any item:

Restrict dialing……Restricts outgoing calls to the phone numbers that are not specified. To make a call to the specified phone number, call the number from the phonebook.

Call rejection……Restricts incoming calls from the specified phone number.

Call acceptation……Restricts incoming calls from the phone numbers that are not specified.

Call Forwarding……Forwards incoming calls from the specified phone number regardless of the Call forwarding service setting (Activate/Deactivate).

Voice Mail……Transfers incoming calls from the specified phone number to the Voice mail service center regardless of the Voice mail service setting (Activate/Deactivate).

"★" appears next to the selected function.

■ **To release a selected function**

▶Select the function with "★"

The function is released and the "★" disappears.

■ **To set restrictions for multiple phone numbers**

▶Press CLR twice to return to the phonebook list screen▶Select the phonebook entry you want▶Repeat step 1

Once you press ☎ to return to the standby screen after setting Restrict dialing, you cannot continue to add restrictions. To add more numbers, release the Restrict dialing that have already been set for the phone number and then set the Restrictions again including the released phone number.

● When Restrict dialing is set

- You cannot dial including the specified phone numbers using the Dialed calls and Received calls records. Also, you cannot call numbers other than the specified ones, add to, edit or delete phonebook, exchange data between the FOMA terminal (Phone) and the FOMA card (UIM), or operate phonebook by "UIM operation".
- The current records of Redial/Dialed calls and Sent address list are deleted after setting the Restrict dialing. However, you can dial or send mails using the records of Redial/Dialed calls or Sent address list that have been stored after setting.

NOTE

- If you use 2in1, the restrictions on the selected function work differently depending on the combination of the current mode setting and Phonebook 2in1 setting as shown below.
  - In A mode, the specified phone number in the A or common setting phonebook is applied.
  - In B mode, the specified phone number in the B or common setting phonebook is applied.
  - In Dual mode, the specified phone number in all of the phonebooks is applied.

  However, as for Restrict dialing, you cannot call the phone numbers that are not specified regardless of the 2in1 mode setting.

<Restrict dialing>

- You can still make calls to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) when the Restrict dialing is set.

NOTE

<Call rejection> <Call acceptation>

- The FOMA terminal receives i-mode mail and SMS regardless of this function.
- If you receive a call from a number that is specified on Call rejection or from a number that is not specified on Call acceptation, the number is recorded as "Missed calls" in the received calls records and the "Missed call" shortcut icon is displayed on the standby screen.
- If you receive a call from a phone number for which Call rejection is set or from a phone number other than the number for which Call acceptation is set, the call is rejected even when the "Voice Mail" and "Call Forwarding" services are "Activate". Note that if the FOMA terminal is turned off or " 圏外 " or if the ringing time set for "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" is 0 (zero) second, "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" is enabled.

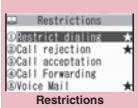
<Call Forwarding> <Voice Mail>

- If you receive a call from the specified phone number, the FOMA terminal rings for about 1 second and the call is forwarded to the designated number or connected to the Voice mail service center, and the "Missed call" shortcut icon appears on the standby screen.
- If no call forwarding number is designated or if you have not subscribed to the "Call Forwarding" or "Voice Mail" service, calls from the specified phone number are handled as missed calls.

Checking the restriction settings

1 Phonebook list screen (p.73)▶ ✉ (FUNC)▶"Restrictions"▶Enter your security code

The "Restrictions" screen appears.



Restrictions

Function menu➡p.113

FUNC Restrictions screen (p.113)

Check settings……Displays a list of the phonebook entries for which the function is set.

Release settings……Releases the function and "★" disappears.

Rejecting Calls from Unidentified Callers

<Call setting w/o ID>

You can accept or reject voice/videophone calls from callers who do not provide the caller ID depending on the reason for no caller ID.

1 MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"Lock/Security"▶"Call setting w/o ID"▶Enter your security code▶Select any item:

Unknown……Specifies whether to accept or reject calls from callers who are unable to provide the caller ID, such as calls from overseas or calls from ordinary phones sent via a call forwarding service. Some phone companies provide caller IDs.

Payphone……Specifies whether to accept or reject calls dialed from pay phones.

User unset……Specifies whether to accept or reject calls made by callers who withhold their caller IDs.

2 "Accept" or "Reject"

■ **When "Accept" is selected**

▶"Select ring tone" or "Select calling disp."

- Select the ring tone from "Same as ring tone/Melody/i-motion/Music/Voice announce/Random melody/OFF" for "Select ring tone" (when "Same as ring tone" is selected, the "Phone" setting of "Select ring tone" is used).
- Select the calling display from "Same as display/My picture/i-motion" for "Select calling disp." (when "Same as display" is selected, the "Calling" setting of "Display setting" is used).

■ **When "Reject" is selected**

The call is rejected and the other party hears the busy tone.

NOTE

- The ring tone or calling display selected in this function is the setting for voice phone calls without caller ID. When you receive videophone calls without the caller ID, "Videophone" of "Select ring tone" or "V.phone Calling" of "Display setting" is used.
- When you receive a call from a caller who is set to "Reject", the call is rejected even when "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" service is set to "Activate". However, if the FOMA terminal is turned off or "圏外", or if the ringing time set for "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" is 0 (zero) second, "Voice Mail" or "Call Forwarding" is enabled.
- The FOMA terminal receives i-mode mail and SMS regardless of this function.

Muting Ring Tones for Callers Not Stored in the Phonebook

<Ring time(sec.)>

You can set the mute period for the ring tone for voice/videophone calls from the phone number which is not stored in the FOMA terminal (Phone) phonebook or UIM phonebook (Set mute seconds). You can prevent accidentally dialing numbers, such as nuisance calls that only ring for a short period from Received calls record.

- "Set mute seconds" also works when you receive a voice/videophone call without caller ID or when there is another incoming call during a voice/videophone call.
- You cannot set "Set mute seconds" when "Reject unknown" is set to "Reject".

1 MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"Incoming call"▶"Ring time(sec.)"▶Select any item:

Set mute seconds

ON……Enters the time for which the ring tone is muted before starting up (01 to 99 seconds).

OFF……Sets the time for which the ring tone is muted before starting up to 0 second.

Missed calls display……Specifies whether to record received calls for which no ring tone sounded to the missed calls record or the shortcut icon.

NOTE

- When you receive a call from someone who is stored in the phonebook as a secret data, the FOMA terminal operates as specified in this function.
- If the mute time is longer than the ringing time for the Record message function, the FOMA terminal switches directly to Record message without ringing first. To have the FOMA terminal ring before it records a message, make sure that the ringing time for Record message is longer than the mute time. The same applies to the ringing times for Voice Mail, Call Forwarding and Auto answer setting.

Rejecting Calls from Callers Not Stored in the Phonebook

<Reject unknown>

You can specify whether to accept or reject calls from callers who are not stored in the phonebook of the FOMA terminal (Phone) or the FOMA card (UIM).

- This function is applied to only calls of which caller ID is notified. It is recommended to set "Caller ID Request" or "Call setting w/o ID" at the same time.

- You cannot set “Reject unknown” when “Set mute seconds” of “Ring time(sec.)” is set to “ON”.

1 MENU▶“SETTINGS”▶“Lock/Security”▶“Reject unknown”▶Enter your security code▶“Reject” or “Accept”

NOTE

- When you receive a call from someone who is stored in the phonebook as a secret data, the call is not rejected regardless of this setting.
- When this function is set to “Reject”, the caller hears the busy tone even if you have activated “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding”. If the FOMA terminal is turned off or “ ” is displayed or if the ringing time set for “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” is 0 (zero) second, the caller does not hear the busy tone and is connected to the Voice Mail service center or the forwarding number.
- The FOMA terminal receives i-mode mail and SMS regardless of this function.

Disabling Making/Receiving Calls, etc. <Self mode>

You can set the FOMA terminal not to make or receive voice or videophone calls, use i-mode, or send or receive mails. This is useful when you want to use the FOMA terminal without worrying about interruptions such as incoming voice or videophone calls.

- You can make voice calls to emergency numbers (110, 119 and 118) even when Self mode is set. Note that making a voice call at an emergency number cancels Self mode.

1 MENU▶“SETTINGS”▶“Lock/Security”▶“Self mode”▶“YES”

Self mode is set and “self” appears.

■ **To cancel Self mode**

▶Repeat step 1

Self mode is canceled and “self” disappears.

● When Self mode is set

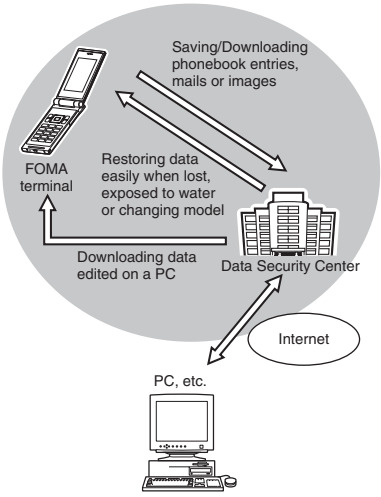
- Received voice or videophone calls are not recorded in the “Received calls” record and the “Missed call” shortcut icon also does not appear on the standby screen.
- MessageR/F or i-mode mails sent to you are kept at the i-mode center and SMS are kept at the SMS center.
- The caller of the voice or videophone call is notified with a guidance or message that the FOMA terminal is in out of signal range or is turned off. When you use the “Voice Mail” or “Call Forwarding” service, you can use the same service provided when the FOMA terminal is turned off.
- Data exchange via Infrared data exchange/iC communication, packet communication or 64K data communication with a PC connected, user authentication by IC card authentication are also unavailable. However, you can read and write data on the IC card using data transfer via USB connection (OBEX™ connection) or Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli.

Data Security Service <Data Security Service>

The automatic update function allows you to back up the Phonebook and other data on your FOMA terminal at Data Center to be able to smoothly restore data if you lose your FOMA terminal or when changing models. Broadcast report is available to let others know that you changed your mail address. Packet communications charges do not apply to send mail. The service gives you even more convenience if you have a PC (My docomo).

* For details on how to use the Data Security Service, refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version”.

How the service works



Viewing or editing data kept at the Center

- Data Security Service is a pay service you need subscription (you need to subscribe to i-mode service in advance).

Continued on next page

- Refer to the following pages for storing operations of Data Security Service:
  - "Storing the Phonebook at the Data Security Center"→p.79
  - "Storing mails at the Data Security Center"→p.176
  - "Storing images at the Data Security Center"→p.229

Other Security Settings

Apart from those explained in this chapter, there are functions/services relating to security settings as shown below.

Purpose	Function/ Service name
To prevent others from using the IC card functions	IC card lock setting →p.206
To avoid "nuisance phone calls" such as prank phone calls or unsolicited sales phone calls	Nuisance Call Blocking→p.315
To reject calls that has no caller ID	Caller ID Request →p.316
To send data securely by using the user certificate service * Only available on sites that support FirstPass	FirstPass→p.150
To update the FOMA terminal software when necessary	Software Update →p.377
Protecting the FOMA Terminal from Harmful Data	Scanning function →p.383
To accept only necessary mails when receiving i-mode mails	Receive option →p.164
To leave/hear the information about the safety using i-mode at the time of disaster	"i-mode Disaster Message Board" service*
To change your mail address	Change Mail Address*
To reject mails with URLs	Spam Mail Prevention (Reject Mail with URL)*
To accept/reject mail from specified domain	Spam Mail Prevention (Reject/ Receive Mail Settings)*
To accept/reject i-mode mail only	
To accept/reject mail from specified address	
To set the recommended settings of Spam Mail Prevention easily	Spam Mail Prevention (かんたんメール設定 (Simple mail setting))*
To reject i-mode mail from senders who have already sent 500 or more messages from the same i-mode mobile phone in the same day	Spam Mail Prevention (Reject Mass i-mode Mail Senders)*
To reject SMS	Spam Mail Prevention (SMS Rejection Settings)*
To reject advertisements	Spam Mail Prevention (Reject Unsolicited Ad Mail)*
To restrict the size of received mail	Limit Mail Size*
To check the status of the mail function settings	Confirm Settings*
To temporarily stop the mail function	Suspend Mail*
To search for the rough location of your lost mobile phone	Keitai-Osagashi Service*

* : Refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

NOTE

- Be careful when calling back to the numbers you do not know. In particular, sending your caller ID to the unknown party may cause unnecessary problems.

<Nuisance Call Blocking priority sequence>

- Priority is assigned when nuisance call barring function is set at the same time:
  ①Nuisance Call Blocking service
  ②Reject unknown or Ring time(sec.)/Call setting w/o ID/Call rejection

Camera

Before Using the Camera 118
Shooting Still Images ..... Photo mode 123
Shooting Movies ..... Movie mode 126
Capturing Important Scenes ..... Chance capture 128
Using Voice Mode ..... Voice mode 128
Changing the Shooting Settings 128
Using the Bar Code Reader ..... Bar code reader 129
Scanning Text ..... Text reader 131

Copyright/Portrait Right

Take care not to infringe on the copyrights when you duplicate or edit the images you shot or recorded using the FOMA terminal. Also take care not to infringe on the portrait rights by using or altering another person's portrait without his or her permission. It may be prohibited to shoot or record the stage performance, entertainment or exhibition even if you only want to enjoy it personally.

Please be considerate of the privacy of individuals around you when taking and sending photos using camera-equipped mobile phones.

Before Using the Camera

You can use the FOMA terminal's built-in camera to shoot photos (still images) and movies.

- You cannot activate the camera function or shoot images when the FOMA terminal is folded.

Using the camera

To set to camera mode

There are 3 methods:

① Select the shortcut icon ( ) on the standby screen

② Press ch (1 second or longer) on the standby screen.

③ Select "Camera" from "LIFEKIT" of the main menu or Simple Menu.

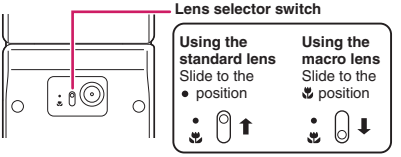
- When there is no key operation for more than about 3 minutes, the camera mode ends automatically.

NOTE

- To paste the shortcut icon again after deleting it, select "Camera" in step ③'s main menu above and press (FUNC) to select "Add shortcut".

Lens selector switch

- To take a close-up image, set to the close-up mode by moving the lens selector switch to (macro lens). When set to the close-up mode, the camera is focused on an object approx. 6 to 8 cm away from the camera.
- To use Bar code reader or Text reader, set to the close-up mode by moving the lens selector switch to (macro lens).
- When you move the lens selector switch, move the switch to the ● (standard lens) position or the (macro lens) position. Do not leave the switch in the middle of these positions.



When using the camera

■Notes on shooting

- The camera of the FOMA terminal is made with the extremely high-precision technology. However, it may include lines or spots that look dark or bright. Noises such as white lines may also appear on the photographed images particularly when shooting in very poorly lit locations.
- Before shooting, wipe the lens clean with a soft cloth. Fingerprints or grease spots on the lens could prevent the camera from focusing properly and cause blurred images.
- Take care not to press the lens with excessive force when folding the FOMA terminal. This may cause malfunction.
- Image quality may be adversely affected if the FOMA terminal is left in a hot location for a long period of time.
- The color tones and brightness levels in still images and movies shot may differ from those of the actual object.
- Do not leave the camera under the direct sunlight for a long period of time or shoot the sun or a powerful lamp directly. This could lead to the discoloration of the photographed images or cause the camera to malfunction.
- Take care that your fingers, hair, or the strap do not cover the lens when you shoot images.
- The shooting uses a large amount of the battery. It is recommended to turn off the camera immediately after you finish shooting. The screen may look dark or blurred if you shoot images when the battery is low.
- You cannot change or delete the volume of the shutter sound and Auto timer tone. Also, you cannot set the downloaded melody as the shutter sound.
- When shooting a still image, keep the FOMA terminal steady until it emits the shutter sound and finishes loading the shot image.
- When you take pictures indoors, flickering may appear due to the effect of fluorescent lighting, etc. In such a case, changing the "Flicker" setting to the electric wave frequency in the use region additionally may suppress flickering.
- After you display the shooting screen, switch the camera modes or change the camera settings, it may take time for the brightness or color tone to become its best.

■ **Flashing of illumination when shooting**

- The center illumination lamp lights up or flashes as follows:
  - Shooting screen activated: Flashes in red
  - Shooting still images, M-continuous mode: Lights in red (about 3 seconds)
  - A-continuous mode: Lights in red (when shooting)
  - Shooting movies, recording in Voice mode: Flashes in red
  - Auto timer activated: Flashes in blue→p.128

■ **Saving the still images, movies, etc. you shot**

- The images, movies, etc. are saved in the folder specified in "Select to save".
- You can save the still images, movies, etc. you shot automatically when "Auto save set" is set to "ON".
- If the battery is low, you may not be able to save the still images, movies, etc. you shot.
- If the FOMA terminal is turned off or the battery pack is removed while saving the files, incomplete files may be saved.

■ **When the shooting is interrupted**

- The shooting is interrupted when you receive a voice/videophone or 64K data communication, or alarm notification (1Seg booking program, 1Seg timer recording, Alarm, Schedule or To Do list), or operate other functions.
  - When shooting images continuously or shooting movies, the shooting is interrupted and respective screens appear. When you exit from these screens, the camera screen reappears so that you can save the data you shot before receiving calls or alarm notification.
  - When adjusting the zoom or brightness of the camera, the adjusting setting is set and the screen returns to the camera menu.
  - The Auto timer is canceled.
- The shooting is not interrupted in the following cases:
  - When you receive mails or MessageR/F when using the camera (including the case that the shooting screen appears), the reception result screen does not appear and the shooting mode continues regardless of the "Receiving setting".
  - When "Alarm setting" is set to "Operation preferred", you can continue the shooting, make settings or operate the Auto timer without interruption even when the alarm specified time is reached.

■ **When using the microSD card**

- When saving the data on the microSD card, "SD" flashes. Do not remove the microSD card during this period. This may cause a malfunction to the FOMA terminal or microSD card.
- When "microSD" is selected in "Select to save" and there is no folder in the microSD card, a folder is created automatically.
- If the number of files in the microSD folder selected in "Select to save" has reached the maximum, you cannot set to the folder.

Image size and maximum number of images/shooting time

The following **Table 1 to 3** (pp.119, 120) shows the image sizes, number of still images and movie shooting time supported by FOMA SO706i.

[Table 1] The image sizes and shooting mode

Image size	Photo mode	Continuous mode	Movie mode
2M (1,200 × 1,600)	○	×	×
1M (960 × 1,280)	○	×	×
VGA (640 × 480)	○	×	×
CIF (352 × 288)	○	○	×
Screen (240 × 427)	○	○	×
QVGA V. (240 × 320)	○	○	×
QVGA (320 × 240)	×	×	○
QCIF (176 × 144)	○	○	○
SubQCIF (128 × 96)	○	○	○

[Table 2] The approximate number of still images that can be saved by destination to save

Quality	2M	1M	VGA	CIF	Screen	QVGA V.	QCIF	SubQCIF
Destination: FOMA SO706i (Phone)								
Super Fine	116		140	341	700		1,000	
Fine	140		700	1,000				
Normal	229		1,000					
Destination: microSD (64M bytes)								
Super Fine	99		118	291	542		948	1,897
Fine	118		542	948			1,897	
Normal	189		948	1,265			3,795	

- The number of images that can be saved varies depending on the shooting environment, etc.

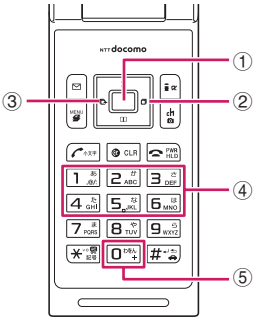
Continued on next page

[Table 3] The approximate shooting time that can be saved by destination to save

Image Size	File size	Movie type set	Available shooting time for a single movie				Available total shooting time			
			Quality setting				Quality setting			
			Long dur. mode	Normal	Fine mode	Super Fine mode	Long dur. mode	Normal	Fine mode	Super Fine mode
Destination: FOMA SO706i (Phone)										
QVGA	2MB	Normal	82s	34s	16s	8s	47min.	19min.	9min.	280s
		Video	88s	35s	17s	8s	50min.	20min.	10min.	280s
		Voice	21min.				735min.			
QCIF	500KB	Normal	104s	53s	20s	16s	247min.	125min.	47min.	38min.
		Video	128s	64s	22s	16s	303min.	151min.	52min.	38min.
		Voice	316s				750min.			
	2MB	Normal	428s	219s	82s	63s	249min.	127min.	47min.	37min.
		Video	524s	262s	88s	66s	305min.	152min.	51min.	39min.
		Voice	21min.				735min.			
Sub QCIF	500KB	Normal	176s	67s	29s	20s	418min.	159min.	68min.	47min.
		Video	256s	86s	32s	22s	608min.	204min.	75min.	52min.
		Voice	316s				750min.			
	2MB	Normal	12min.	276s	119s	82s	420min.	161min.	69min.	47min.
		Video	17min.	350s	131s	88s	595min.	204min.	76min.	51min.
		Voice	21min.				735min.			
Destination: microSD (64M bytes)										
QVGA	2MB	Normal	82s	34s	16s	8s	43min.	18min.	512s	256s
		Video	88s	35s	17s	8s	46min.	18min.	544s	256s
		Voice	21min.				672min.			
	Long time	Normal	27min.	11min.	327s	164s	27min.	11min.	327s	164s
		Video	28min.	11min.	331s	165s	28min.	11min.	331s	165s
		Voice	120min.				672min.			
QCIF	500KB	Normal	104s	53s	20s	16s	227min.	115min.	43min.	34min.
		Video	128s	64s	22s	16s	279min.	139min.	48min.	34min.
		Voice	316s				689min.			
	2MB	Normal	428s	219s	82s	63s	228min.	116min.	43min.	33min.
		Video	524s	262s	88s	66s	279min.	139min.	46min.	35min.
		Voice	21min.				672min.			
	Long time	Normal	120min.	71min.	27min.	20min.	228min.	71min.	27min.	20min.
		Video	120min.	86min.	28min.	21min.	279min.	86min.	28min.	21min.
		Voice	120min.				672min.			
Sub QCIF	500KB	Normal	176s	67s	29s	20s	384min.	146min.	63min.	43min.
		Video	256s	86s	32s	22s	558min.	187min.	69min.	48min.
		Voice	316s				689min.			
	2MB	Normal	12min.	276s	119s	82s	384min.	147min.	63min.	43min.
		Video	17min.	350s	131s	88s	544min.	186min.	69min.	46min.
		Voice	21min.				672min.			
	Long time	Normal	120min.	90min.	39min.	27min.	384min.	90min.	39min.	27min.
		Video	120min.	115min.	43min.	28min.	544min.	115min.	43min.	28min.
		Voice	120min.				672min.			

- Available recording times if deletable pre-installed data are deleted.
- The time is the approximate time that can be shot with the file size.
- The available shooting time varies depending on the shooting environment, etc.

Key operation for camera mode



① ■: Shutter
② ▭: Zoom in
③ ▭: Zoom out
④ 1 to 6: Displays the following shooting menu respectively
- 1: CHG camera-mode
- 2: Select size
- 3: Quality setting or File size setting
- 4: Photo mode
- 5: Brightness
- 6: White balance

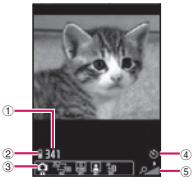
●Some menus are not displayed depending on the camera mode.

⑤ 0: Displays the explanation of keys

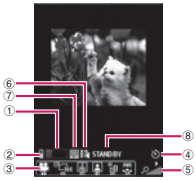
Guide to the shooting screen

The shooting screens display the icons of the Camera settings. Each icon means as follows:

Photo mode shooting



Movie mode standby



Movie mode shooting

① **Remaining storage count/Memory info**[*1]

123 …… The number of images that can be saved
- •White: 11 or more
- •Yellow: 10 or less
- •Red: No memory available

…… The available capacity that can be saved against the total capacity
- • Blue: 500K bytes or more remaining
- • Yellow: Less than 500K bytes remaining
- • Red: No memory available[*2]

*1: The displayed count and the capacity are only an approximate figure. This icon does not appear when the destination to save is set to "microSD" and no microSD card is inserted.

*2: Shooting is available except when shooting movies with "File size" set to "Long time". The shot is saved or overwrites the data in the FOMA terminal (Phone)/microSD card after shooting.

② **Select to save (pp.123, 127)**

SD …… The destination set to save (FOMA terminal (Phone)/microSD card)

③ **Shooting menu (p.122)**

…… The settings of the shooting menu

④ **Auto timer (p.128)**

…… The Auto timer is set

⑤ **Zoom (p.128)**

to to …… The zoom settings

⑥ **Movie type set (p.127)**

…… Normal (video and voice)
…… Video only
…… Voice only

⑦ **Quality setting (p.127)**

…… Long dur. mode
…… Normal
…… Fine mode
…… Super Fine mode

⑧ **Shooting status**

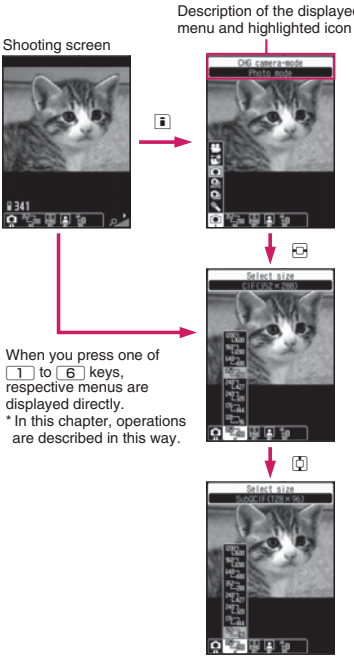
●REC …… The movie is being shot
STAND BY …… The movie shooting is in standby mode

⑨ **Shooting time**

0:03:38 …… Remaining time (hour: minutes: seconds)

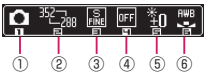
Selecting the shooting menu

When you display the shooting menu on the screen, you can set various settings only by selecting icons.



Icons and settings of the shooting menu

- The selectable items are different depending on the camera mode.
- Some menus are unavailable depending on the shooting condition (when using the camera from other function such as mail function, etc.)



① **CHG camera-mode**

Movie mode……p.126
Chance capture……p.128
Photo mode……p.123
A-Continuous mode……p.124
M-Continuous mode……p.124
Voice mode……p.128

② **Select size Photo mode (Default: Screen)**

1200 1600 to 128 96 …… 2M (1,200 × 1,600) to SubQCIF (128 × 96)

Movie mode (Default: QCIF)

320 240 to 128 96 …… QVGA (320 × 240) to SubQCIF (128 × 96)

③ **Quality setting/File size setting**

Photo mode (Quality setting)

(Default: Super Fine)

Super Fine……Super Fine mode (File size: large)
Fine……Fine mode (File size: medium)
Normal……Normal mode (File size: small)

Movie mode (File size setting)

(Default: 2MB)

500KB……Up to 500K bytes
2MB……Up to 2M bytes
Long time……Long time (microSD only)

④ **Photo mode**

Photo mode (Default: Auto)

Movie mode (Default: Portrait)

Auto……Automatic shooting mode
Portrait……Suitable for shooting portraits
Scenery…… Suitable for shooting scenery (including night view)
Close-up……Suitable for close-up shooting
Sports mode…… Suitable for shooting moving objects
Night mode…… Suitable for shooting portraits, etc. in the dark

OFF……Turns off the shooting effects.

* Only “Portrait”, “Scenery” or “Close-up” can be set for Movie mode.

⑤**Brightness** (When the camera launched: ±0)

+2/+1/±0/-1/-2……Brightness of the image (+2/+1/±0/-1/-2)

⑥**White balance** (Default: Auto)

In Photo mode, this can be set only when “Photo mode” is set to “OFF”.

Auto……Compensates the tone automatically

Fine…… Suitable for shooting outside on a sunny day

Cloudy……Suitable for shooting outside on a cloudy day or in the shade

Light bulb…… Suitable for shooting under the incandescence

Fluorescent lamp…… Suitable for shooting under the fluorescence

Shooting Still Images

<Photo mode>

1 On the standby screen▶■▶Select “ ”

The “Photo mode shooting” screen appears.

Photo mode shooting

Function menu➡p.123

2 Point the camera at the object▶■ (Record)

The “Photo mode checking” screen appears.

■ **To retake the shot**

▶CLR▶“YES”

Photo mode checking

Function menu➡p.124

3 ■ (Save)

NOTE

- Depending on image size, image quality may be degraded.

Photo mode shooting screen (p.123)/Continuous mode screen (p.124)

FUNC

CHG camera-mode……Changes the camera mode.

Select size • Quality setting……Sets the same setting as the shooting menu (p.122).

Interval/Number*2……Sets the shooting interval and the number of images you want to take on the continuous mode.→p.125

Camera Settings

Photo mode……Sets the same setting as the shooting menu (p.122).

Brightness……Adjusts the brightness for shooting in 5 steps “-2～±0～+2” using .
The brightness is automatically specified if you do not press any key for 2 seconds.
“±0” is the default setting when you launch the camera.

White balance……Sets the same settings as the shooting menu (p.123).

Color mode set……Selects the effect for the photographed image from “Normal/Sepia/Monochrome”.

Flicker……Avoids the flicker on the shooting screen. Selects from “Auto/Mode 1(50Hz)/Mode 2(60Hz)”.

Shutter sound (default: Sound 1)……Sets the shutter sound.

Auto timer……Sets the auto timer.→p.128

Select frame*2……Sets the frames for images.→p.126

Auto save set……Specifies whether to save a shot image to the folder selected in “Select to save” automatically or not (ON/OFF).

Select to save (default: “Camera” of Phone)……Sets the folder to save the shot image.

File restriction (default: File unrestricted)……Specifies whether to allow the redistribution of the shot image.→p.228

Memory info……Displays the amount of stored images.

Help……Displays the guide for shooting.

*1: This function is available only for the Continuous mode screen.
*2: This function is available only for the Photo mode screen.

NOTE

<Shutter sound>

- When Manner mode is set (“VM tone” set to “OFF”), the FOMA terminal does not play the shutter sound for checking.

Continued on next page

NOTE

<Memory info>
- The displayed file size is only an approximation.

FUNC Photo mode checking screen (p.123)

Save……Saves the images to the folder specified in "Select to save".

Mirror save……Inverts the left and right of the displayed image and saves the image to the folder specified in the "Select to save" setting.

Compose message*→p.126
You can also compose an i-mode mail or Deco-mail® by pressing [✉] (MAIL) on the Photo mode checking screen.

Edit image……Adds a frame or effect to the image.
"Editing Images"→p.231

Set as display……Sets the still image to the standby screen, etc.
"Changing the Display"→p.88
"Setting an image to send"→p.67

Change frame……"Shooting framed images"→p.126

Mirror display⇔Normal display……Selects the checking screen display from normal display or mirrored display.

Select to save (default: "Camera" of Phone)……Sets the folder to save the shot image.

File restriction (default: File unrestricted)……Specifies whether to allow the redistribution of the shot image.
→p.228

Cancel……Deletes the photographed image and returns to the photo mode shooting screen.

* : Not available when 2in1 is in B mode.

NOTE

<Edit image>
- Selecting "Edit image" changes the display to the Normal display.
- You cannot edit the image larger than 1M (960 × 1,280).

<Set as display>
- You cannot set the image larger than 1M (960 × 1,280). If the file size exceeds 100K bytes, the image cannot be set other than stand-by screen and wake-up display.
- The still images to be set to the standby screen are saved to the folder set in "Select to save". However, when set to "microSD", the images are saved to the Camera folder under My pictures of the FOMA terminal (Phone) (the images is not saved on the microSD card).

Shooting continuously <Continuous mode>

You can shoot up to 20 still images continuously. There are two types of continuous mode: A-Continuous mode (Auto) and M-Continuous mode (Manual).
- A-Continuous mode is the function that automatically shoots images of specified numbers at the set interval once you release the shutter.
- M-Continuous mode enables you to shoot images for the set number, releasing the shutter for one by one.
- You can enjoy the continuously shot images as an animation after putting them into the Original animation.
- Folding the FOMA terminal terminates the continuous mode.

1 Photo mode shooting screen (p.123)▶[1]▶"[AUTO]" or "[M]"

The "Continuous mode" screen appears.

Shot number/ Max. shot count

Continuous mode (Ex. manual)

Function menu➡p.123

2 Point the camera at the object▶[■] (Cont./Record)

■ **To stop the continuous mode**

A-Continuous mode:
▶[☎]▶"NO"
M-Continuous mode:
▶[CLR]

The shooting is finished and the "Continuous mode checking" screen appears.

Continuous mode checking

Function menu➡p.125

■ **To check the images in detail**

▶Use [✥] to move the frame to the image you want to check▶[✉] (Detail)
Use [✥] to change the image to check.

■ **To save only 1 still image displayed in detail**

▶[■] (Save)

Continuous mode detail checking

Function menu➡p.125

3 ch (ㄴ 쌍) (1 second or longer)▶ **"Save" or "Mirror save"**

The image is saved to the folder specified in "Select to save".

■ **To store selection**

▶Select images you want to save▶ch (A A)▶"Save" or "Mirror save"

"About multiple-choice"→p.38

■ **To store Original animation**

▶✉ (FUNC)▶"Store all&anime"▶"Save" or "Mirror save"

NOTE

- If you shoot strong light or moving object in A-Continuous mode, the interval may become longer than the specified one.

● Setting the shooting interval and number of images

1 **Continuous mode screen (p.124)▶✉ (FUNC)▶"Interval/Number"▶Select any item:**

Shot interval (default: 0.5 seconds)……Selects the interval for shooting images from "0.5 seconds/1.0 seconds/2.0 seconds".
Cannot be set for M-Continuous mode.

Shot number (default: 5)……Sets the number of images (05 to 20 images in 2 digits).
The maximum number of images varies by the image size. When the image size is CIF (352 × 288), the number of shots is automatically set to 4. When the image size is Screen (240 × 427) or QVGA V. (240 × 320), the number of shots is set to about 5 to 10.

2 **After setting is finished, press CLR▶CLR**

The continuous mode screen reappears.

FUNC Continuous mode checking screen (p.124)

Store selection……Saves the still image marked with a checkbox (☑).

Store all……Saves all the still images in normal or mirror display.

Store all&anime……Saves all the still images you shot in normal or mirror display, and stores as the Original animation.

Select this……Selects the still image indicated by the frame and marks the checkbox of the image (☑).

Select all……Selects all the still images you shot and marks the checkboxes of the images (☑).

Release this……Releases the still image indicated by the frame and releases the checkbox of the image (☑).

Release all……Releases all the still images and releases the checkboxes of the images (☑).

Mirror display⇔Normal display……Selects the checking screen display from Mirror display or Normal display.

Select to save (default: "Camera" of Phone)……Sets the folder to save the shot image.

File restriction (default: File unrestricted)……Specifies whether to allow the redistribution of the image with ☑.
→p.228

Restriction all (default: File unrestricted)……Specifies whether to allow the redistribution of all the shot image.
→p.228

Cancel……Deletes all the photographed images and returns to the continuous mode screen.

NOTE

<Store all&anime>

- When "Select to save" is set to "microSD", the images are saved to the Camera folder under My pictures of the FOMA terminal (Phone) (the images is not saved on the microSD card).

FUNC Continuous mode detail checking screen (p.124)

Save……Saves the images to the folder specified in "Select to save".

Mirror save……Inverts the left and right of the displayed image and saves the image to the folder specified in the "Select to save" setting.

Compose message*→p.126
You can also compose an i-mode mail or Deco-mail® by pressing ✉ (MAIL) on the Continuous mode detail checking screen.

Mirror display⇔Normal display……Selects the checking screen display from normal display or mirrored display.

File restriction (default: File unrestricted)……Specifies whether to allow the redistribution of the shot image.→p.228

* : Not available when 2in1 is in B mode.

Shooting framed images
<Framed photography>

The image sizes supported by FOMA SO706i is under VGA (640 × 480).

- You can use the downloaded frames in addition to the pre-installed ones.

1 Photo mode shooting screen (p.123)▶ ✉ (FUNC)▶"Select frame"▶Select a frame

■ **To cancel the framed image**
▶"OFF"

2 Point the camera at the object▶ ■ (Record)

The "Frame shooting check" screen appears.

■ **To change the frame before saving**
▶✉ (FUNC)▶"Change frame"

3 ■ (Save)

Composing an i-mode mail message or Deco-mail® message using the still image

You can compose an i-mode mail message with the still image you shot attached or insert the still image into the Deco-mail® message body.

1 Photo mode checking screen (p.123) ▶ (MAIL) ▶Select any item:

Attach image[*1]

- **Attach mail**……Attaches the image without changing the image size.
- **QVGA scale down**……Attaches the image by changing the image and file size without changing the aspect ratio.

Insert image[*2]

- **Insert mail**[*3]……Inserts the image without changing the image size.
- **SubQCIF scale down**……Inserts the image by changing the image and file size without changing the aspect ratio.

*1: When the image is shot with the image size smaller than QVGA V. (240 × 320), the selection screen of "Attach mail/QVGA scale down" does not appear.
*2: When the image is shot with the image size of SubQCIF (128 × 96), the selection screen of "Insert mail/SubQCIF scale down" does not appear.
*3: Cannot be selected when the image size is other than QCIF (176 × 144).

2 Compose the message

Composing and sending i-mode mail→p.156
Composing and sending Deco-mail®→p.158

NOTE

- Not available when 2in1 is in B mode.

Shooting Movies
<Movie mode>

- When "File size" is set to "Long time", the shooting ends after saving the shot movie on the microSD card.
- The shooting time varies by the conditions.
- You cannot shoot a movie while you are talking on the phone.
- Folding the FOMA terminal terminates the movie shooting.

1 Photo mode shooting screen (p.123)▶ 1 ▶"🎥"

The "Movie mode shooting" screen appears.

Movie mode shooting

Function menu➡p.127

2 Point the camera at the object▶ ■ (Record)

The shooting starts.
You can zoom in/out during the shooting.

Movie mode shooting screen

■ **If the file size reaches the limit specified in File size**
▶"OK"
The movie mode checking screen appears.

3 ■ (Stop)

The shooting terminates and the "Movie mode checking" screen appears.

Movie mode checking

Function menu➡p.127

■ **To play the movie you shot**
▶ch (Play)

■ **To retake the shot**
▶CLR▶"YES"

4 ■ (Save)

NOTE

- If you perform a key operation such as zoom in/out during the shooting, the operation sound may be recorded.

FUNC Movie mode shooting screen (p.126)

Front camera⇔Rear camera……Switches between front camera and rear camera.

CHG camera-mode……Changes the camera mode.

Select size • File size……Sets the same setting as the shooting menu (p.122).

Quality setting (default: Normal)……Selects the quality and duration for shooting movies from "Long dur. mode/ Normal/Fine mode/Super Fine mode".
When set to "Long dur. mode", the shooting time becomes the longest but the image quality becomes the lowest. Contrary, when set to "Super Fine mode", the image quality becomes the highest but the shooting time becomes the shortest.

Camera Settings

- **Photo mode***……Sets the same setting as the shooting menu (p.122).
- **Brightness**……Adjusts the brightness for shooting in 5 steps "-2～±0～+2" using [icon].
  The brightness is automatically specified if you do not press any key for 2 seconds.
  "±0" is the default setting when you launch the camera.
- **White balance**……Sets the same settings as the shooting menu (p.123).
- **Color mode set**……Selects the effect for the photographed image from "Normal/Sepia/Monochrome".
- **Flicker***……Avoids the flicker on the shooting screen. Selects from "Auto/Mode 1(50Hz)/Mode 2(60Hz)".

Shutter sound (default: Sound 1)……Sets the shutter sound.

Auto timer……Sets the auto timer.→p.128

Movie type set

- **Normal** (when the camera is launched)……Records video and voice.
- **Video**……Shoots a movie without any voice.
- **Voice**……Records voice without movies.

Auto save set……Specifies whether to save a shot movie to the folder selected in "Select to save" automatically or not (ON/OFF).

Select to save (default: "Camera" of Phone)……Sets the folder to save the shot movie or movie with voice only. When saving the movie on the microSD card, movie with video is saved in "SD Video folder" and movie with voice only is saved in "Multi media folder".

File restriction (default: File unrestricted)……Specifies whether to allow the redistribution of the shot movie.→p.228

Memory info……Displays the amount of stored data for movies.

Help……Displays the guide for shooting.

* : Cannot be operated/set for the front camera.

NOTE

<Photo mode>
- The Photo mode is fixed to the Portrait for the front camera.

<Shutter sound>
- When Manner mode is set ("VM tone" set to "OFF"), the FOMA terminal does not play the shutter sound for checking.
- You cannot set the downloaded melody as the shutter sound. In addition, you cannot change the volume of the shutter sound.

<Memory info>
- The displayed file size is only an approximation.

FUNC Movie mode checking screen (p.126)

Play……Plays the movie you shot.

Save……Saves the movie to the folder specified in "Select to save".

Compose message*……Composes an i-mode mail with the shot movie attached.→p.156
You can compose an i-mode mail with the shot movie attached by pressing [icon] (MAIL) on the movie mode checking screen.

Set as stand-by……Sets the shot movie to the standby screen.

Edit title……Edits the movie title. You can enter up to 9 double-byte or 18 single-byte characters.

Select to save (default: "Camera" of Phone)……Sets the folder to save the shot movie or movie with voice only. When saving the movie on the microSD card, movie with video is saved in "SD Video folder" and movie with voice only is saved in "Multi media folder".

File restriction (default: File unrestricted)……Specifies whether to allow the redistribution of the shot movie.→p.228

Cancel……Deletes the movie and returns to the movie mode screen.

* : Not available when 2in1 is in B mode.

NOTE

<Set as stand-by>
- The movie to set to the standby screen is saved to the folder set in "Select to save". However, when set to "microSD", the movie is saved to the Camera folder under i-motion of the FOMA terminal (Phone).

Capturing Important Scenes
<Chance capture>

Even if the available shooting time is reached when shooting a movie, you can continue the shooting until the scene you want to shoot comes.

- The movie you shot is saved for the available shooting time (the default is 3 minutes 38 seconds) from the end of the movie with the starting point reset to fit that time. The movie shot before that time is not saved.

1. **Photo mode shooting screen (p.123)▶ [1]▶"[icon]"**
2. **Point the camera at the object▶ [■] (Record)**
   The shooting starts.
   You can zoom in/out during the shooting.
   After the available shooting time is reached, the remaining time display flashes.
3. **[■] (Stop)**
   The shooting is finished.
4. **[■] (Save)**

Using Voice Mode
<Voice mode>

You can record your voice without movies.

1. **Photo mode shooting screen (p.123)▶ [1]▶"[icon]"**
   The "Recording start" screen appears.
   Function menu of the movie mode screen →p.127
2. **[■] (Record)**
   The recording starts.
3. **[■] (Stop)**
   The recording finished. The "Recording check" screen appears.
   Function menu of the movie mode checking screen→p.127
4. **[■] (Save)**

Changing the Shooting Settings

You can change the camera settings such as the zoom or Auto timer.

Using the zoom

Using the zoom enables you to adjust the image being shot to your desired size.

- The zoom is digital.

1. **Each shooting screen▶Use [icon] to adjust the zoom**
   The image is zoomed in/out by one step each time you press [icon], and hold down it to zoom in/out continuously.

NOTE

- "1×" is the default setting when you launch the camera. Changing the image size or camera mode also changes the zoom to "1×".

■Maximum zoom rate (16 steps) for each image size

Image size	Photo mode	Movie mode
2M/1M	—	—
VGA	Approx. 1.8×	—
CIF	Approx. 1.7×	—
Screen	Approx. 1.8×	—
QVGA V.	Approx. 2.4×	—
QVGA	—	Approx. 1.8×
QCIF	Approx. 3.3×	Approx. 3.3×
SubQCIF	Approx. 4.6×	Approx. 4.6×

Using the auto timer

- The Auto timer is reset to "OFF" each time you finish shooting.

1. **Each shooting screen▶[✉] (FUNC)▶"Auto timer"▶"ON"▶Enter the time for the Auto timer (01 to 15 seconds in 2 digits)**
   "10 seconds" is the default setting.

● If you set the Auto timer

"[icon]" appears on the screen to indicate that the Auto timer is set.
Pressing [■] (Record) plays the Auto timer tone and the Auto timer starts.
The center illumination lamp flashes in blue and "[icon]" on the screen also flashes.
The countdown tone sounds about 5 seconds before the shooting. The illumination flashes rapidly.

■ **To cancel the Auto timer settings**

▶✉ (FUNC)▶"Auto timer"▶"OFF"

■ **To stop the timer while it is running**

▶ (Quit) or CLR

NOTE

- During the Auto timer countdown, you can shoot manually by pressing ■ (Record).
- The Auto timer cannot be used in M-Continuous mode.

Using the Bar Code Reader

<Bar code reader>

The FOMA terminal can scan JAN codes and QR codes using the camera. The scanned data can be used for displaying/copying the text, using the functions of Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To, Web To, i-αppli To, or adding to bookmark/phonebook especially in QR code. The FOMA terminal can also scan the image, melody or ToruCa data to play or save.

- The FOMA terminal can save up to 5 scanned bar codes.
- Hold the FOMA terminal firmly to ensure that it does not shake during the scanning.
- When scanning bar codes, use the rear camera and hold the FOMA terminal about 6 to 8 cm away from the scanned code.

■ **JAN codes and QR codes**

- JAN code

  A bar code consisting of vertical lines (bars) of various widths and spaces to represent numbers. The FOMA terminal can scan 8-digit (JAN8) and 13-digit (JAN13) bar codes.

  4942857113068

  * When the FOMA terminal scans the JAN code on the right above, it is displayed as "4942857113068".

- QR code

  A type of two-dimensional codes consisting of the horizontal and vertical patterns to represent numbers, alphabets, kanji, kana or pictographs. Some QR codes express images or melodies. Some data are divided into several QR codes.

  * When the FOMA terminal scans the QR code on the right above, it is displayed as "株式会社NTTドコモ" (NTT DOCOMO, Inc.).

Scanning codes

- Before scanning, set to the close-up mode by moving the lens selector switch to (macro lens). →p.118

1 MENU▶"LIFEKIT"▶"Bar code reader"

2 **Position the JAN code or QR code inside the recognition field**

The scanning starts automatically.

The recognition field is expressed using "⌜,⌝, ⌞, ⌟" at the corners of the screen.

Focus the JAN code or QR code so that the entire code is displayed as big as possible inside the recognition field.

Scanning

Function menu➡p.130

Finishing the scan plays the completion sound. It may take time to scan the data.

■ **To cancel the scanning**

▶■ (Quit) ▶"OK"

■ **To adjust the zoom**

: Zooms in.

: Returns to default.

■ **To scan the data consisting of several QR codes**

▶"OK"▶■ (Read) ▶Position the QR code inside the recognition field

The FOMA terminal can scan up to 16 QR codes expressing one data.

3 **Check the scanned data**

■ **To discard the scanned data**

▶CLR▶"YES"

4 ✉ **(FUNC) ▶"Store"▶"YES"▶"OK"**

The scanned data is saved.

NOTE

- The FOMA terminal cannot scan a code if it is not a JAN code or QR code. You may be unable to scan some bar code, depending on the size.
- The FOMA terminal may fail to scan the code, depending on the scratch, stain, damage, print quality, the reflection of light or the QR code version.
- You can also run the Bar code reader from the text editing screen. The scanned data is entered in the screen.
- Some scanned images cannot be saved depending on the image size or file size.

Continued on next page

NOTE

- You cannot save the scanned data to the microSD card.

FUNC Scanning screen (p.129)

Reading data list……"Using the scanned data"→p.130

Add shortcut→p.94

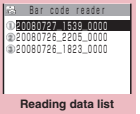
Using the scanned data

- You can use the following scanned data:

Item	Description
Add to phonebook	Stores the name, reading, phone number, mail address, birthday, postal code, address and memo to the phonebook→p.70
Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail with the recipient address, subject and message entered→p.156
Add bookmark	Stores the URL and title to the Bookmark →p.142
Activate i-αppli	Runs the specified i-αppli→p.187
Melody icon	Plays the melody→p.240
Phone number	"Phone To/AV Phone To function" →p.147
ToruCa Icon	Displays the ToruCa→p.204
Mail address	"Mail To function"→p.147
URL	"Web To function"→p.147
Image	Save image→p.144

1 Scanning screen (p.129)▶✉ (FUNC) ▶"Reading data list"

The "Reading data list" screen appears.

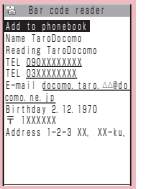


Reading data list

Function menu➡p.130

2 Select the scanned data

The "Reading data detail" screen appears.



Reading data detail

Function menu➡p.130

3 Select any of the displayed items

NOTE

- If the data you want to scan contains characters that cannot be read by the Bar code reader, those characters are converted to spaces (blanks).
- The title of the scanned data will be:
  - Title: yyyymmdd_hhmm_xxxx (Year/month/day_time_4-digit number)
    If the same date and time are set for more than once, the 4-digit numbers are assigned to the data in numerical order.

FUNC Reading data list screen (p.130)

Edit title……Edits the title of the data. You can enter up to 9 double-byte or 18 single-byte characters.

Result……Displays the Bar code reader reading data detail screen.

Delete this • Delete all……Deletes one or all scanned data.

FUNC Reading data detail screen (p.130)

Store……Saves the reading data.

Display list……Displays the Reading data list screen. If the displayed data is not stored yet, a message appears asking whether to delete the data.

Internet……Accesses the site when the URL is highlighted. "Web To function"→p.147

Compose message*……Composes an i-mode mail with the reading data entered when "Compose message" is highlighted.
When the mail address is highlighted, an i-mode mail with the address entered is composed.

Dialing……Calls the phone number when it is highlighted. "Phone To/AV Phone To function"→p.147

Add to phonebook……Stores the scanned data to the phonebook when "Add to phonebook" is highlighted. →p.70
When a phone number is highlighted, it is stored to the phonebook.
When a mail address is highlighted, it is stored to the phonebook.

Add bookmark……Stores the reading data to Bookmark when "Add bookmark" is highlighted. →p.142
When a URL is highlighted, it is stored to Bookmark.

Save image……Stores the image data to My picture of the Data box.
If you do not set the image to the standby screen, select "NO" after selecting the folder.

Save melody……Stores the melody data to Melody of the Data box.
If you do not set the melody to the ring tone, select "NO" after selecting the folder.

Save ToruCa……Stores the ToruCa to the ToruCa folder.

Start i-αppli……Runs the i-αppli specified in the scanned data when "Start i-αppli" is highlighted.

Copy……Copies the text included in the scanned data. →p.308

* : Not available when 2in1 is in B mode.

NOTE

<Internet> <Add bookmark>
- You cannot use the Web To function or add a bookmark if there are unusable characters in the URL.

<Compose message>
- The address cannot be entered if it includes characters that cannot be entered.

<Dialing>
- As the image settings for videophone are not retained after the dialing or talking is finished, set this item each time you make a call.

Scanning Text <Text reader>

Using the camera, the FOMA terminal can scan printed text then add the scanned text data as a phonebook entry or bookmark, or use the data to compose a mail. You can also make a call or access website using the data.
- The FOMA terminal can save up to 8 scanned bar codes.
- Hold the FOMA terminal firmly to ensure that it does not shake during the scanning.
- When scanning text, hold the camera about 6 to 8 cm away from the text.
- The FOMA terminal can scan vertically written Japanese text.

■Scanning mode

The following are the scan modes. Select the mode suitable for the data to scan:

Item	Description
Card read	Scans the name, phone number, mail address, postal code, address and memo printed on the business card to add to the phonebook.
Compose message	Composes an i-mode message with the scanned recipient address, subject and message entered.
URL	Scans URL, and accesses the site or adds the URL to bookmark.
Mail address	Scans the mail address and composes an i-mode message.
Phone number	Scans the phone number and makes a call.
Free memo	Scans Japanese or English text to save to Text memo.

■The number of characters that can be scanned

The following table shows the maximum number of characters that can be scanned for each item:

Item		Maximum number of characters that can be scanned
Card read	Name	16 in double-byte, 32 in single-byte
	Phone number	26 in single-byte numbers including #, ＊, +, p (pause), (,), -
	Mail address	50 in single-byte alphabets, numbers and symbols
	Postal code	7 in single-byte
	Address	50 in double-byte, 100 in single-byte
	Memo	100 in double-byte, 200 in single-byte
Compose message	Receiver	50 in single-byte alphabets, numbers and symbols
	Subject	100 in double-byte, 200 in single-byte
	Message	128 in double-byte, 256 in single-byte
URL		256 in single-byte alphabets, numbers and symbols
Mail address		256 in single-byte alphabets, numbers and symbols
Phone number		256 in single-byte numbers including #, (,), -
Free memo		128 in double-byte, 256 in single-byte

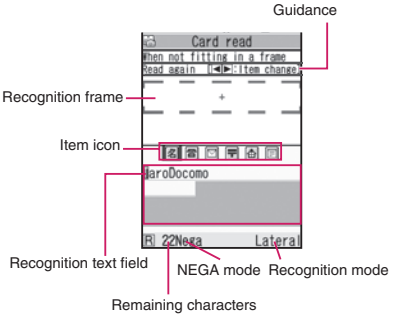
Continued on next page

Item		Maximum number of characters that can be scanned
Dictionary*	Japanese	32 in double-byte, 64 in single-byte
	English	64 in single-byte

* : This option is available when the Text reader is launched from Dictionary.

■ **Guide to the scanning screen**

<Example: Card read mode>



Guidance : Displays the operation.
Recognition frame: Displays the recognition field.
Item icon : Displays the item to scan.
Card read mode: "Name/phone number/mail address/postal code/address/memo"
Compose message mode: "Receiver/subject/message"
Recognized text field:
Displays the scanned text (The guidance appears on some screens).
Recognition mode:
Displays the recognition mode used for scanning "Kanji (lateral writing/vertical writing)/postal code/phone number/mail address/URL".
Remaining characters:
Displays the remaining number of single-byte characters that can be scanned.
NEGA mode : Appears if the NEGA/POSI mode is set to Negative fix.

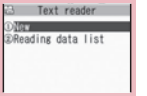
Scanning text

<Example: To scan text in Card read mode>

- Before scanning, set to the close-up mode by moving the lens selector switch to (macro lens). →p.118

1 MENU ▶ **"LIFEKIT"** ▶ **"Text reader"**

The "Text reader" screen appears.



Text reader

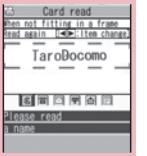
Function menu➡p.133

2 **"New"**

The "Scanning mode selection" screen appears.
"Scanning mode" →p.131

3 **"Card read"**

The "Text reader scanning" screen appears.



Text reader scanning

Function menu➡p.133

4 **Use to highlight the icon for the item to scan ▶ Display the text in the recognition field**

Focus the text so that the entire text appears as large as possible inside the recognition field.
If the recognition field cannot display the whole text, the text can be scanned several times.

■ **To adjust the zoom**

: Changes from "Normal" to "Large".
: Returns from "Large" to "Normal".

5 **(Read)**

The FOMA terminal scans the text, and the recognized text appears in red.

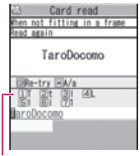
■ **To rescan the text**

▶ CLR ▶ "YES"

If the screen does not display the entire text, press to check.
Pressing (Store) stores the scanned text, and then the reading data screen (detail) appears.
The following are the two methods to edit the scanned text:

■ **To select the character to edit**

▶Use [◎] to highlight the character to edit▶Press the candidate No.
Press [ ] to change the cases between upper and lower if it can be changed.



Candidate

■ **To edit in the text editing**

▶[✉] (FUNC) ▶"Edit"▶Edit the text
The text can be edited in the typical text editing.
To return to the candidate selection, press [✉] (FUNC) and select "Select recog. data".
Go on to Step 6 when you finish editing.

6 [■] **(Set)**

The entry is fixed as the text.

■ **To scan the remaining text**

▶Display text in the recognition range▶Repeat Steps 5 to 6
Ensure that the last two or more characters of the scanned text are included in the recognition field.

■ **To scan another item**

▶Repeat Steps 4 to 6
In Card read mode, you can scan up to 4 phone numbers and up to 3 mail addresses.

7 [✉] **(FUNC) ▶"Store"**

The Reading data detail screen appears. Press [CLR] to return to the Reading data list screen.

NOTE

- Do not move the FOMA terminal while the "Processing" message appears on the screen.
- The FOMA terminal cannot recognize handwritten characters. If the text is faxed or copied, if the fonts are decorated, if the character spaces are not fixed, or if the fonts and background cannot be easily distinguished, the FOMA terminal may fail to recognize the text. Also, the FOMA terminal may not recognize the text correctly depend on the ambient lighting.

[FUNC] Text reader screen (p.132)

Add shortcut→p.94

Using the text data

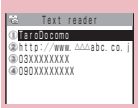
- You can use the following scanned data:

Item	Description
Add to phonebook	Adds the name, phone number, mail address, postal code, address and memo to the phonebook→p.70
Compose message	Composes an i-mode mail with the recipient address, subject and message entered→p.156

* Select any displayed item such as Phone number or Mail address to edit the data.

1 [MENU]**▶"LIFEKIT"▶"Text reader"▶"Reading data list"**

The "Reading data screen (list)" appears.



Reading data (list)

Function menu➡p.133

2 **Select the scanned data**

The "Reading data screen (detail)" appears.

Reading data (detail)

Function menu➡p.133

3 **Select any of the displayed items**

[FUNC] Text reader scanning screen (p.132)/Reading data screen (list/detail) (p.133)

Edit[*1]……Edits the scanned text.

Store[*2]……Saves the reading data.

Internet……Accesses the site of the scanned URL in URL mode. "Web To function"→p.147

Compose message[*3]……Displays the New mail screen with the reading data entered and composes i-mode mail. The entered data varies depending on the displayed reading data or screen.

Dialing……Calls or sends the SMS of the phone number in Phone number mode.
"Phone To/AV Phone To function"→p.147

Continued on next page

Add to phonebook……Adds the scanned data to the phonebook. The stored data varies depending on the displayed reading data or screen.

Add bookmark……Add the URL to the Bookmark in URL mode.

Search phonebook……Searches the phonebook using the scanned data.
You cannot search the phonebook on the scanning screen, in Card read mode or Compose message mode.

Add to memo……Adds the scanned data to Text memo.
You cannot store the scanned data in Card read mode or Compose message mode.

Reading mode set*2……Selects the scanning mode from "Card read/Compose message/URL/Mail address/Phone number/Free memo".

NEGA/POSI mode*2 ……Sets the type of printing.

- **Auto setting**……Automatically sets the positive or negative.
- **Positive fix**……Suitable for printing the dark text on the light background.
- **Negative fix**……Suitable for printing the light text on the dark background.

Guidance OFF⇔**Guidance ON***2……Sets whether to display the guidance or not.

Vertical writing⇔**Lateral writing***2……Selects the vertical writing or lateral writing for the Japanese text to scan.

Display detail*4……Displays the Reading data screen (detail).

Display list*5……Displays the Reading data screen (list).

Copy*6……Copies text contained in the scanned data.

Delete this • Delete all*6……Deletes one or all scanned data.

*1: Unavailable on the Reading data screen (list).
*2: Available only on the Scanning screen.
*3: Not available when 2in1 is in B mode.
*4: Available only on the Reading data screen (list).
*5: Available only on the Reading data screen (detail).
*6: Unavailable on the Scanning screen.

NOTE

- As the image settings for videophone are not retained after the dialing or talking is finished, set this item each time you make a call.

i-mode/i-motion/i-Channel

What is i-mode? 136

Viewing sites

Viewing a Site ..... i-mode menu/site 136
Viewing and Using Sites 139
Registering My Menu Entries ..... My Menu 141
Changing Your i-mode Password ..... Change i-mode Password 141
Viewing Websites ..... Internet connection 141
Accessing Websites and Sites Quickly ..... Bookmark 142
Saving Site Contents ..... Screen memo 143

Downloading images and melodies from sites

Downloading Charged Contents 144
Downloading Images from Sites ..... Save image 144
Downloading Melodies from Sites ..... i-melody 145
Downloading PDF Data from Sites 145
Downloading Kisekae Tool from Sites 146
Downloading Various Data from Sites 146

i-mode utility functions

Using the Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To, Web To and Media To Functions
..... Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To, Web To and Media To 147
Using Location Information 148

Specifying your i-mode settings

Specifying Your i-mode Settings 148

Using certificates

Using SSL Certificates 149
Setting FirstPass 150
Changing the Certificate Host 151

Using i-motion

What is i-motion? 151
Downloading i-motion ..... Download i-motion 152
Setting Whether to Play an i-motion Automatically ..... i-motion auto-replay 152

Using i-Channel

What is i-Channel? 153
Viewing Sites from the Channel List 153
Setting i-Channel ..... i-Channel setting 154

What is i-mode?

The i-mode service enables you to use an i-mode-compatible FOMA terminal (i-mode terminal) display to access online services such as i-mode mail, connecting to the Internet and sites (programs), etc.

- i-mode is a pay service you need to apply for.
- For details on i-mode, refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version”.

■Notes on using i-mode

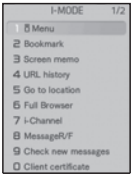
- Contents on sites (programs) or Internet websites are normally protected by copyright laws. The loaded documents, pictures, and other data from these sites (programs) or websites to your i-mode terminal is permitted only when intended for your personal use only. No data may be copied in part or in whole, whether modified or not, for resale or redistribution without the consent of the copyright holder.
- Note also that when the FOMA card (UIM) is replaced or the mobile phone is turned on with no FOMA card (UIM) inserted, some types of mobile phone may be incapable of viewing or playing melodies, images and movies downloaded from sites, files attached to sent or received mail (images, movies or melodies), screen memos and MessageR/F.
- If a file with restrictions on viewing and playback imposed by the FOMA card (UIM) is set as the standby screen or as a ring tone, the FOMA terminal operates under the default settings if the FOMA card (UIM) is replaced or the FOMA terminal is turned on without the FOMA card (UIM) inserted.

Viewing a Site <i-mode menu/site>

You can access the services provided by IPs (information service provider). (You may need a subscription.)

1 [i]▶**“iMenu”**

“i-mode menu” screen appears first, then “iMenu” screen appears.



i-mode menu

iMenu

Select “iMenu” in the i-mode menu screen, then i-mode communication starts.

“[icon]” icon flashes while the communication with the i-mode Center is in progress, and “[icon]” icon flashes when you are receiving i-mode service (during i-mode).

2 **Select links and other options to display the site screen you want to view**

“Viewing and Using Sites” →p.139

■ To cancel the download of pages

▶[CLR]

Sites

Function menu➡p.137

3 **To quit i-mode, press [icon]▶“YES”**

After “[icon]” blinks, “[icon]” disappears.

NOTE

- The i-mode service area is the same as the FOMA service area (the area in which calls can be made and received).
- Some sites may require you to pay additional information fee.
- The number of colors displayed on certain sites exceeds the maximum number of colors that the FOMA terminal can display. For this reason, the site may not appear as intended.

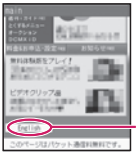
NOTE

- On some i-mode-compatible site and websites, some characters may be difficult or impossible to see due to the selected colors.
- When you are requested information on music you play by the site, the confirmation screen concerning transmission of music information appears. Select "YES" to send the information (title, artist name and play date) on the music you play in your FOMA terminal. The information is used to offer information that IP (information service provider) customized to the customer.

iMenu in English

English iMenu is available.

1 [i]▶"iMenu"▶Scroll down to the bottom to select "English"



"English"

Select "日本語" to return to the Japanese display.

NOTE

- English iMenu is not available for とくするメニュー (tokusuru menu), 楽オク (Rakuten-auction), ｉエリア (i-area), マイボックス (My Box) and お知らせ (News).
- Generally, the What's New site is updated every other Monday.
- English iMenu sites differ from Japanese version.

Mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers

If you select an item while a site or website is displayed on the FOMA terminal, a message may appear notifying you that the mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers will be sent.

- The disclosure notification message is always displayed before your mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers are sent. Such information is never sent automatically.

NOTE

- The sent information "mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers" is used by the IP (information service provider) to classify customers and provide customized services for you and to confirm that you can use the content the IP is offering.
- The "Mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacture numbers" is sent to the IP (information service provider) via the internet and may be disclosed to the third party as a result. However, this operation does not disclose your phone number, address, age and gender to the IP (information service provider), etc.

FUNC Sites screen (p.136)

Add bookmark→p.142

Bookmark→p.142

Add screen memo→p.143

Screen memo list→p.143

Save image→p.144

URL history→p.138

Window

- **Open new window**……"Using multi window"→p.140
- **Close window**……Closes the displayed window.
- **Change window**……Switches windows when multiple websites are open.
- **i-Channel**→p.153

Enter URL……Enters a URL to connect to the website.

Add to phonebook→p.140

Add shortcut→p.94

Save schedule……Stores a scheduled event while browsing the page.→p.285

Refer dictionary……Starts the dictionary.→p.296

Home

- **Set as home URL**……Stores the URL of the displayed page as home URL. You can only store 1 URL as the home URL.
- **Display home**……Displays the page stored as the home URL.
  Available when "Home URL" is set to "Valid".→p.148

Reload……Refreshes the page.

Compose message*……Composes i-mode mail or Deco-mail® with a URL for the page pasted into the message or the image pasted/attached.

iMenu……Displays the iMenu screen.

Continued on next page

Site info

Title……Displays the page title to check.

URL……Displays the page URL to check. If the entire URL does not appear, press ■ (Select), then use ⊡ to move the cursor to check the rest of the URL. Pressing ■ (Select) again hides the cursor.

Certificate……Displays the contents of the SSL certificate when the page is compatible with SSL.

Site settings

Replay……Plays the Flash movie or animation on the page again from the beginning.

Set image disp.……Sets whether to display the images on the page or not. When set to "OFF", "" appears instead of the image which is not displayed.

Sound effect……Sets whether to play the Flash movie sound effect or not (ON/OFF).

Change CHR code……Changes the character code to redisplay the page that is not displayed correctly.

Switch to FB……Switches to the Full Browser to display a website that cannot be displayed in i-mode. →p.218

* : Not available when 2in1 is in B mode.

NOTE

<Certificate>

- When certificates are displayed, the screen scrolls at the regular speed regardless of the "Scroll" setting.

<Change CHR code>

- If text is not displayed correctly, repeat the procedure. Note that when you perform the procedure for the 4th time, the site is displayed in the original character code setting.
- Some sites may not be displayed correctly even when the character code is changed.
- If you change the character code when a site is displayed correctly, the site may not be displayed correctly.

Displaying SSL pages

To view SSL pages, the following certificates are required:

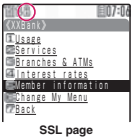
- CA certificate: Issued by an certification organization and stored in your FOMA terminal at the time of purchase.
- DOCOMO CA certificate: Required for connecting to the FirstPass center and stored in the FOMA card (green/white).
- Client certificate: Downloaded from the FirstPass center by selecting "Client certificate" in the i-mode menu and stored in the FOMA card (green/white).

1 Display an SSL page

The SSL page and the "" icon appears.

■ **To cancel the authentication**

▶"Cancel"



SSL page

2 Move from the SSL page to an ordinary page▶"YES"

SSL communication ends and the "" icon disappears.

NOTE

- The message "This site is not certified Connect?" may appear when you attempt to open an SSL page. This message appears when the SSL certificate for the page has expired or is not supported. In this case, you can continue to view the page by selecting "YES". However, you may not be able to safely send your personal information such as your credit card number or contacts.

Reconnecting to sites you visited before

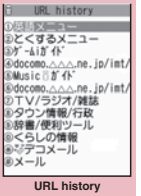
<URL history>

"URL history" records the last 30 URLs of the sites you visited before. You can reconnect to the website displayed using the "URL history".

1 ▶"URL history"

The "URL history" screen appears.

2 Select the record



URL history

Function menu➡p.138

FUNC URL history screen (p.138)

Add bookmark→p.142

URL……Displays the stored URL.

Delete……Selects the deleting method from "Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all".
"About multiple-choice"→p.38

Viewing and Using Sites

This section describes the operations for viewing sites or websites.

Image display

- The FOMA SO706i can display GIF and JPEG format images and Flash movies (p.140). However, the FOMA terminal may be unable to display some images regardless of the format.
- When a Flash movie is displayed, the display operation may differ from that on a normal site.
- When you play the Flash movie that is stored in Data Box, Screen memo, microSD card, the display operation may differ in some stored parts.
- You can specify whether or not images are displayed in the "Set image disp." setting.

■Displayed image icons

(color): Displayed while an image is loaded or when "OFF" is selected in the "Set image disp." setting

: Displayed when image loading is failed

(B/W): Displayed when image cannot be loaded

Scroll function

When you are viewing a page on a site and the text or a list does not fit in the screen, you can scroll up or down to view the rest of the text.

: Scrolls down

: Scrolls up

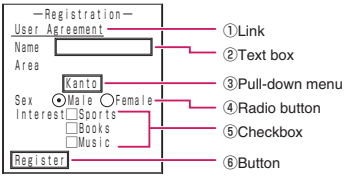
(▼メモ): Scrolls down by screens

(▲マナー): Scrolls up by screens

- Scroll setting→p.148

Selecting links and other options

When you are using i-mode, you may need to perform operations such as those described below.



①Link

Select the item to proceed to the linked page.

②Text box

You can enter text directly. When you select a text box, the Character entry (edit) screen appears.

③Pull-down menu

You can select one option from the list of selectable options. Only a part of the selectable options is displayed but hidden options appear as a list when you select the pull-down menu.

④Radio button

You can select only one option. ⊙ indicates a selected radio button.

⑤Checkbox

You can select multiple options from a range of options. ☑ indicates a selected checkbox.

⑥Button

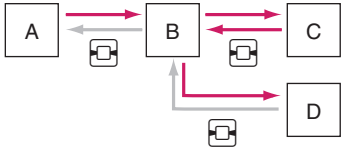
When you select a button, the function assigned to the button is activated.

Jumping to previous/next pages

You can jump forward or back to a page that has been stored in the FOMA terminal's cache. Up to 30 pages are stored in per window (up to 100 pages are stored in all windows).

1 Press to jump back to the previous page or to jump forward to the next page

■When the page display sequence is "A", "B", "C", "B" and "D"



: Sequence of viewing pages

: Back from the screen "D"

■To display the pages stored in cache

- Cache refers to an area of memory on the FOMA terminal itself in which data from sites or Internet websites you have visited is temporarily stored. If you press to move to another page while you are viewing a site or website, the FOMA terminal displays the page stored in cache rather than connecting to the i-mode Center and accessing the page on the actual site. However, if the cache is full or if the page is set to always display the latest information, the FOMA terminal connects to the site even when you press . Also, even when the page is stored in the cache, if the date and time information for that page has been updated, the FOMA terminal connects to the site and displays the latest data.

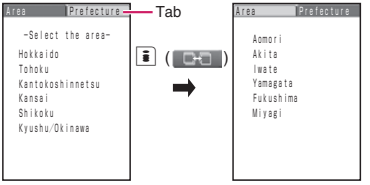
Continued on next page

- When site data is loaded from cache, the text and settings you entered on previous visits is not displayed.
- The cache is cleared when you exit i-mode.
- When you download SSL-compatible pages from cache, the message appears indicating that the SSL page will be displayed.

Using multi window

You can open up to 5 websites (up to 6 websites when including i-Channel).

- You can use the tab to switch pages with [i] ( ) when multiple websites are opened.



1 Sites screen (p.136)▶Highlight the link ▶[ch] (Open)

The page opens with a new window.

■ **To close a opened website**

▶[CLR]▶"YES"

Opening websites other than linked pages

1 Sites screen (p.136)▶[✉] (FUNC)▶"Window"▶"Open new window"▶Select any item:

Link……Displays the linked pages in the same way as [ch] (Open).

Bookmark……Displays the website registered as bookmark.

Enter URL……Enters a URL to display the website.

Display home……Displays a website registered as home URL.

NOTE

- You cannot arrange the multi-opened websites side-by-side.

Adding phone number and e-mail address to the phonebook

<Add to phonebook>

You can add a phone number or e-mail address displayed on a site page or screen memo to your phonebook.

<Example: To add a phone number displayed on a site page>

1 Sites screen (p.136)▶[✉] (FUNC)▶"Add to phonebook"▶"YES"▶Add the phone number to phonebook

Adding information to the phonebook→p.70

If the name, reading and mail address are attached to phone number, they are also entered to the phonebook together with phone number. Enter remains of necessary items and then save to the phonebook.

Operating the Flash movies

Flash is an animation technique supported by the FOMA terminal that uses both images and sound. Flash gives you access to a wide range of animations and visually exciting sites. You can also download a Flash movie to your FOMA terminal and set it as the standby screen.

- A Flash playing error prevents successful completion of the saving.
- Note that if you play a Flash movie to which vibration is set, your FOMA terminal vibrates regardless of the "Vibrator" setting.
- Some Flash movies may not run correctly.
- You may also be able to control a Flash movie even when "◁⇕▷" does not appear at the bottom of the screen.
- Flash movies are not displayed if you select "OFF" in "Set image disp.".
- Selecting "YES" in "Use phone information" allows you to use the FOMA terminal data (time, date, reception level, battery level, ring volume, language, model type and model info).

NOTE

- Some Flash movies use sound effects. To run a Flash movie without the sound effects, select "Sound effect" and then select "OFF". Even if "Vibrator" is set to "Melody linkage", this setting is invalid for sound effects of Flash movie.
- When a Flash movie is set as a screen such as standby by using "Display setting", the sound effects or vibrator that are set in the Flash movie do not run. "Replay" is also unavailable.→p.138

NOTE

- When some Flash movies are saved or saved as a screen memo, part of the images may not be saved or they may otherwise differ from the way they appear on the site.

Registering My Menu Entries

<My Menu>

My Menu provides you with a quick and convenient way to connect to frequently visited sites.

- You can register up to 45 sites in My Menu.
- Some sites cannot be registered to My Menu.
- To connect quickly to a website, use "Bookmark".

1 Sites screen (p.136)▶"My Menu Registration"▶Select the "Input password" box▶Enter your i-mode password▶"Select"

i-mode password→p.141

NOTE

- Charged sites in the iMenu list are automatically registered to My Menu after subscription.

Viewing sites registered to My Menu

1 [i]▶"iMenu"▶"English"▶"My Menu"▶Select a site

Changing Your i-mode Password

<Change i-mode Password>

You need a 4-digit "i-mode password" to register or unregistered sites in My Menu, to subscribe to or unsubscribe to message services and to set your mail preferences.

- At the time of subscription, it is set to "0000" (4 zeros) by default. Change the i-mode password to your favorite one.
- Take particular care not to disclose your i-mode password to others.
- If you forget your i-mode password, the registered service subscriber must take a form of identification (such as a driver's license) to an NTT DOCOMO service counter.

1 [i]▶"iMenu"▶"English"▶"Options"▶"Change i-mode Password"

2 Select the "Current Password" box▶Enter your current i-mode password

The numbers of the entered password is displayed as "＊".

3 Select the "New Password" box▶Enter the new i-mode password

Enter a 4-digit number.

4 Select the "New Password (Confirmation)" box▶Enter the new i-mode password again

Enter the number you entered in step 3.

5 "Select"

Viewing Websites

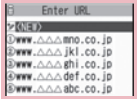
<Internet connection>

This function allows you to view website by entering its URL.

- Websites that are not i-mode-compliant may not be displayed properly.
- A website may be displayed differently in your terminal from when it is viewed on PC.
- You can view websites designed for a PC in Full Browser.
- You can enter a URL up to 256 single-byte characters long including "http://" or "https://".

1 [i]▶"Go to location"▶"Enter URL"

The "URL list" screen appears.



URL list

Function menu➡p.142

2 "<NEW>"▶Enter URL▶"OK"

Viewing sites from the URL history

The FOMA terminal records the last 10 URLs you entered in the URL history.

1 [i]▶"Go to location"▶"Enter URL"

2 Select a URL▶"OK"

■ To edit the selected URL

▶Select the "Internet address" box▶Edit the URL

Continued on next page

NOTE

- When you enter URLs and connect to sites, visits to the same URL are logged as separate entries.

FUNC URL list screen (p.141)

Add shortcut→p.94

Compose message*……Composes an i-mode mail with the URL pasted in the message.

Set as home URL……Stores a URL as your home URL. You can only store 1 URL as your home URL.

Delete……Selects the deleting method from "Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all".
"About multiple-choice"→p.38

* : Not available when 2in1 is in B mode.

Accessing Websites and Sites Quickly <Bookmark>

Adding frequently visited websites or sites to your Bookmarks folders allows you to access those sites quickly and easily.

- You can change the titles of your bookmarks and organize the bookmarks into categories by using folders.

Adding bookmarks

- You can bookmark up to 100 sites.
- You can enter up to 256 single-byte characters for a URL.
- Some sites cannot be bookmarked.

<Example: While displaying a site>

1 Sites screen (p.136)▶✉(FUNC)▶"Add bookmark"▶"YES"▶Select a folder

NOTE

- Bookmark titles can consist of up to 12 double-byte or 24 single-byte characters. Longer titles are truncated when the bookmark is added. If no title is given, the URL is displayed (excluding "http://" or "https://").

Using a bookmark to access a site or website

1 ▶"Bookmark"

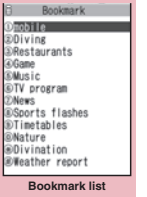
The "Bookmark folder list" screen appears.
When the FOMA terminal is in Secret mode or Secret data only mode, the Secret folder is also displayed.

Bookmark folder list
Function menu➡p.142

2 Select a folder

The "Bookmark list" screen appears.

3 Select a bookmark



Bookmark list
Function menu➡p.143

FUNC Bookmark folder list screen (p.142)

- You cannot rename or delete the "Bookmark" folder already created on the FOMA terminal at the time of purchase.

Add folder……Enters a folder name to add a folder. You can add up to 9 folders. You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.

Edit folder name……Edits the folder name of the added folder. You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.

Sort folder……Selects the position to move to and rearranges the folder.

No. of bookmarks……Displays the total number of bookmarks in all the folders.

iC trans. all→p.260

Send all Ir data→p.258

CopyAll to microSD→p.248

Delete folder……Deletes the folder and bookmarks in the folder.

Delete all……Deletes all the bookmarks. However, the bookmark folders are not deleted.

NOTE

<No. of bookmarks>

- The number of data in the microSD folder and Secret folder are not displayed.

FUNC Bookmark list screen (p.142)

Move……Selects from "Move this/Move selected/Move all" and moves the bookmark to the other folder you select. "About multiple-choice"→p.38

Edit title……Edits the title. You can enter up to 12 double-byte or 24 single-byte characters.

Add shortcut→p.94

Compose message[*1]……Composes an i-mode mail with the URL pasted in the message.

Attach to mail[*1]……Composes an i-mode mail with a bookmark attached.

iC transmission→p.259

Send Ir data→p.258

Copy to microSD→p.248

Set as home URL……Stores a URL as your home URL. You can only store 1 URL as your home URL.

Copy URL……Copies a bookmarked URL.
▶Use ✥ to move the cursor to the first character to copy▶■ (Start)▶Use ✥ to highlight the end of text to copy▶■ (End)
You can paste the copied URL to the Character entry (edit) screen.→p.309

No. of bookmarks……Displays the total number of bookmarks in the folder.

Delete……Selects the deleting method from "Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all".
"About multiple-choice"→p.38

Keep in secret⇔Put out[*2]……"Preventing Others from Viewing Data"→p.104

Bookmark info[*3]……Displays the bookmark information.

*1: Not available when 2in1 is in B mode.
*2: Available only in Secret or Secret data only mode.
*3: Available only for bookmarks stored on the microSD card.

Saving Site Contents

<Screen memo>

When you have found some useful information (travel information, etc.), you can save the displayed page on your FOMA terminal as a screen memo for later reference.

- You can save up to 100 screen memos. However, the number you can actually save varies depending on the amount of data on each saved page.

Saving a screen memo

1 Sites screen (p.136)▶✉ (FUNC)▶"Add screen memo"▶"YES"

NOTE

- When you save a screen memo of an SSL page, the SSL certificate for that page is also saved.
- If you save the same page twice, it is saved as a new screen memo and is not replaced with the earlier save.
- If you save a site in which an item is already entered in a radio button, checkbox, text box, pull-down menu or selection box as a screen memo, you cannot view the item when displaying the screen memo.
- When you save a screen such as the data acquisition screen, the data for that screen is saved along with the screen. However, the data acquisition screen for i-motion or Chaku-Uta-Full® with set playback period can not be saved as a screen memo.

Displaying a screen memo

1 ℹ▶"Screen memo"
The "Screen memo list" screen appears.

Screen memo list

Function menu➡p.144

2 Select a screen memo
The "Screen memo detail" screen appears.

Screen memo (Screen memo detail)

Function menu➡p.144

NOTE

- Information on the screen memo is the one stored and may differ from the latest one.

FUNC Screen memo list screen (p.143)

Edit title……Edits the title. You can enter up to 11 double-byte or 22 single-byte characters.

Protect ON/OFF……Protects or unprotects screen memo. Protected memo titles are marked with "🔒".

No. of memos……Displays the numbers of stored and protected screen memos respectively.

Delete……Selects the deleting method from "Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all".
"About multiple-choice"→p.38

NOTE

<Protect ON/OFF>
- Up to 50 screen memos can be protected. However, the number of screen memos you can protect varies depending on the data size.

FUNC Screen memo detail screen (p.143)

Save image……Saves the images displayed in a screen memo.→p.144

Add to phonebook……Adds the phone number and e-mail address displayed on the screen memo to the Phonebook.→p.70

Edit title……Edits the title of the screen memo. You can enter up to 11 double-byte or 22 single-byte characters.

Protect ON/OFF……Protects or unprotects screen memo. Protected memo titles are marked with "🔒".

Compose message*……Composes i-mode mail and Deco-mail® with the URL for a screen memo pasted into the message or the image pasted/attached.

Save schedule……Stores a scheduled event by browsing the screen memos.

Refer dictionary……Starts the dictionary.→p.296

URL……Displays and checks the screen memo URL.

Certificate……Displays the SSL certificate details when the screen memo is SSL-compatible.

Sound effect……Specifies whether the settings for Flash movie sound effects are enabled or not (ON/OFF).

Replay……Plays the Flash movie or animation in the screen memo again from the beginning.

Delete……Deletes the screen memo.

* : Not available when 2in1 is in B mode.

Downloading Charged Contents

Some sites may charge you for downloading contents (images, melodies or Chaku-Uta-Full®). When you try to download charged contents, a confirmation message for the purchase and the i-mode password entry screen appears.

NOTE

- You cannot download the contents if more than 2 minutes have passed before starting downloading after you enter the i-mode password. Enter the i-mode password again.

Downloading Images from Sites <Save image>

You can save an image, background image or animation displayed or attached to the currently displayed site, screen memo, i-mode mail or MessageR/F, then set the saved image in screens such as standby screen and wake-up display.

- You can store up to 1,000 images including images that can be set as Deco-mail® pictures or Deco-mail® pictographs as well as shot still images (the number of images you can actually store may be reduced depending on the file size).

<Example: To save a normal image displayed on a site page>

1 Sites screen (p.136)▶✉ (FUNC)▶"Save image"▶"Normal image"▶Select an image▶"YES"▶Select a folder

Position the frame ▭ over the image to be saved.

■ **To save the background image**
▶"Save image"▶"Background image"▶"YES"▶Select a folder

2 "YES"▶Select an item

■ **When you do not set the image to the standby screen, etc.**
▶"NO"

NOTE

- When 2in1 is set to Dual mode or B mode, and also "Setting standby screens for each mode" is set to other than "Same as A Number", the saved image cannot be set to the standby screen. The screen for A mode or OFF in 2in1 mode is applied.

Downloading Melodies from Sites <i-melody>

You can set your favorite song, the latest hit song downloaded from a site or a stored melody attached to an i-mode mail as a ring tone on your FOMA terminal.

- You can store up to 200 melodies (the number of melodies you can actually store may be reduced depending on the file size).

<Example: To save a melody downloaded from a site>

1 Sites screen (p.136)▶Select a melody

2 "Save"▶"YES"▶Select a folder

■ **To play a melody**
▶"Play"

■ **To display melody information**
▶"Property"

3 "YES"▶Select an item

■ **When you do not set the melody to the ring tone, etc.**
▶"NO"

NOTE

- Downloaded melodies may be subject to restrictions such that only a pre-designated part of the melody can be played. While a melody of this type is played in full when played back on the FOMA terminal, when it is set as a ring tone, only the designated section is played.

Downloading PDF Data from Sites

You can download PDF-formatted data from a website and display it on the FOMA terminal (Phone).

- You can store up to 400 PDF data on the FOMA terminal. (The number of data you can actually store may be reduced depending on the file size.)

1 Sites screen (p.136)▶Select a PDF data file

The "PDF data" (p.261) screen appears.
Operation for viewing a PDF document→p.263

* When a PDF file that enables you to download the specified pages is selected, the first downloaded page appears. The subsequent pages are downloaded when you move to those pages.

■ **To cancel the download**
▶[i] (Quit) or [CLR]
When the message asking whether to save the partly downloaded data appears, select "YES" to save it. In this case, you can download the remaining data later.→p.146

■ **If the password entry screen appears**
Enter the password set to the PDF data.

■ **To save the PDF data**
▶[✉] (FUNC)▶"Save"▶"YES"▶Select a folder
For PDF data that requires download of all the data, all the pages are saved. For PDF data that enables you to download the specified pages, the data (pages) downloaded so far are saved. You can download the remaining pages later.
→p.145

■ **To end display of PDF data**
▶[CLR]
When the PDF data is not saved, a message asking whether to close the PDF appears. To save the PDF data, select "NO".

Downloading remaining PDF data after downloading partially

When you have saved partly downloaded PDF data, you can download the remaining pages (data) later. The method of downloading varies depending on the status of the downloaded PDF data.

● For partially downloaded (by page) PDF data ((pale blue))

1 PDF list screen (p.261)▶Select a PDF file to view

The message notifying that downloading will resume appears and then the "PDF data" screen (p.261) appears.
Operation for viewing a PDF document→p.263

2 [i] (Tool)▶Press ◀ ▶ on the toolbar to view pages not yet downloaded

Connected to the site to download the pages.

■ **To specify the page number you want to download**
▶Select page number display on the toolbar▶Enter the page number you want to view

■ **To download all the remaining data at one time**
▶[✉] (FUNC)▶"DL remaining data"▶"YES"

■ **To save the PDF data**
▶[✉] (FUNC)▶"Save"▶"YES"
The document including the newly downloaded pages is saved.

● For PDF data that could only be downloaded partially < PDF (pale blue), PDF (pale blue)>

1 PDF list screen (p.261)▶Select a PDF file to view

Before the document is displayed, a message appears asking whether to download all the remaining data.

2 "YES"

Connected to the site and downloading of all the remaining data starts. After downloading is completed, the "PDF data" screen (p.261) appears. (Some documents may not be viewable even if the download was successful.)

■ **To save the PDF data**
▶✉ (FUNC)▶"Save"▶"YES"

NOTE

- It may take a long time to display some PDF data.
- PDF data may not be properly displayed if it contains formats unsupported by PDF viewer or complicated designs.
- Note that the communication fee for downloading large amounts of data will be expensive.
- If you attempt to download a PDF file larger than 500K bytes, the confirmation message asking whether to download the file appears.
- You cannot download a PDF file whose size is unknown or larger than 2M bytes.
- When the PDF data that you try to download has the same definition file (information file for defining PDF) as the PDF data stored in the FOMA terminal or microSD card, they are recognized as the same data. Consequently, the PDF data will not be downloaded and the saved PDF data will be displayed.

Downloading Kisekae Tool from Sites

You can download Kisekae Tool packages from i-mode sites and save them on your FOMA terminal.

- You can save up to 100 Kisekae Tool packages, including the pre-installed ones (the number of packages that can be saved may be less depending on the size of Kisekae Tool data).

1 Sites screen (p.136)▶Select a Kisekae Tool package

■ **To cancel the download**
▶CLR
You can resume downloading if the message asking whether to do it appears.

Selecting "NO" allows you to save the partly downloaded data.

2 "Save"▶"YES"

■ **To check the Kisekae Tool package**
▶"Preview"

■ **To display the Kisekae Tool package information**
▶"Property"

NOTE

- If the pre-installed Kisekae Tool is deleted, you can download from "PlayNow" by SO.
"iMenu"▶"メニューリスト" (Menu List)▶"ケータイ電話メーカー " (Mobile phone manufacturer)▶"PlayNow by SO"
You can read the QR code on the right and select the displayed URL to access website.

Downloading Various Data from Sites

You can enormously expand the range of uses for your FOMA terminal by downloading additional data such as dictionaries, Deco-mail® pictures, Template, Chara-den, and ToruCa from sites.

- You can save up to the following number of downloaded data, including the pre-installed data.
  - Dictionary : up to 5
  - Deco-mail® picture, etc. : up to 1000
  - Template : up to 500
  - Chara-den : 10
  - ToruCa : up to 100

* The number of data you can actually store may be reduced depending on the file size.

<Example: To download a dictionary from a site>

1 Sites screen (p.136)▶Select a data▶"Save"▶"YES"

■ **To display dictionary information**
▶"Property"

■ **When the dictionaries are full**
▶Select the dictionary to delete▶"YES"
The selected dictionary is overwritten and new dictionary is saved.

NOTE

- If the pre-installed Chara-den is deleted, you can download from “PlayNow” by SO.
  “iMenu”▶“メニューリスト” (Menu List)▶“ケータイ電話メーカー ” (Mobile phone manufacturer)▶“PlayNow by SO”
  You can read the QR code on the right and select the displayed URL to access website.
- The file name used for Template with no title is “YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm” (Y = year, M = month, D = day, h = hour, m = minute).
- You may not be able to download data depending on sites or the file size.

Using the Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To, Web To and Media To Functions

<Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To, Web To and Media To>

These functions provide quick and simple procedures for making calls, composing SMS, sending mail or viewing websites using information (phone numbers, e-mail addresses, URLs, etc.) displayed in mail or on a site. 1seg can be activated.

- You may not be able to use this function for the mails or sites sent from a PC.
- You may use items in which a phone number, mail address, and URL are not indicated but linked (e.g. “Please contact here”).

Phone To/AV Phone To function

You can call or compose an SMS for the phone number in the displayed site or mail.

- You can enter up to 26 digits as a phone number.

<Example: To make a voice call to a number displayed on a site>

1 Sites screen (p.136)▶Select a phone number

■ When the 2in1 is in Dual mode

The Outgoing number selection screen appears. Select a phone number.

2 “Voice phone”

3 “Dial”

Mail To function

You can send a mail to a mail address displayed on a site, in a mail, PDF data or the Full Browser screen.

- You cannot use the Mail To function when draft mails are full.
- You may not be able to use the Mail To function when 2 or more e-mail addresses are displayed in sequence.
- You can enter up to 50 single-byte characters as an e-mail address.
- When 2in1 is in B mode, this function is not available.

<Example: To send mail from the sites screen>

1 Sites screen (p.136)▶Select a mail address

2 Compose and send an i-mode mail →p.156

Web To function

You can display websites in the displayed site or mail.

- You can enter up to 512 single-byte characters as a URL.

<Example: To open another website from the sites screen>

1 Sites screen (p.136)▶Select a URL

Media To function

Use information such as date and time, channel and program name displayed in a web page or mail to activate 1seg or book viewing/recording.

<Example: To activate 1seg from a site>

1 Site screen (p.136)▶Select date and time, channel, program name, etc.

NOTE

- The Media To function may not work even if information is selected.

Using Location Information

Select a link with location information added on a site, use the location information.

<Example: To use the information on a site>

1 Sites screen (p.136)▶Select a link with location information added▶Select any item:

Run i-αppli……Displays the list of i-αppli compatible with the location information function (that can use location information).

Read a Map……Accesses the i-mode site and displays the peripheral map, etc. using the location information.

Paste to mail*……Pastes the location information URL into an i-mode message to compose a new message.

* : Not available when 2in1 is in B mode.

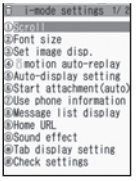
NOTE

- When the location information URL is pasted into the message, " ▷ " is prefixed to the location information URL.
- The number of characters of the pasted location information URL is counted as the number of characters of the message.

Specifying Your i-mode Settings

1 i▶"i-mode settings"

The "i-mode settings" screen appears.



i-mode settings

2 Select any item:

Scroll……Sets the scrolling speed and link display of the detail screen for a site, screen memo or MessageR/F.

Speed (default: High speed)……Selects the scrolling speed from "High speed/Low speed".

During scroll in focus (default: OFF)……Sets whether to highlight the linked pages while scrolling.

Font size (default: Standard)……Selects the character size of the detail screen for a screen memo, MessageR/F or a page on a site, from "Small/Standard/Large/X-large". →p.93

Set image disp. (default: ON)……Sets whether the detail screen for screen memos and pages on a site are displayed or not. If you select "OFF", the " " icon will be displayed instead of the images not to be displayed.

i-motion auto-replay (default: ON) →p.152

Auto-display setting (default: MessageR preferred)……Sets for the automatic display of MessageR/F.

Start attachment (auto) (default: ON)……Sets whether the attached/pasted melody automatically plays when opening the MessageR/F.

Use phone information (default: Accept) →p.149

Message list display (default: 2 lines)……Sets the number of lines in the message list screen.

Home URL……Sets for using the home URL display function. When set to "Valid", pressing ▯ on the standby screen displays the screen of the stored URL. You can enter up to 256 single-byte characters for the URL.

Invalid (default)……Disables the home URL display setting.

Valid……Enables the home URL display setting.
Select the Home URL field and enter a URL to be stored.

Sound effect (default: ON)……Sets whether to play the sound effects for the Flash movies in a site or screen memo.

Tab display setting (default: Open at the back side)……Sets whether to change (Open at the front) or keep (Open at the back side) the current display when you open a website in new window.

Check settings……Displays the settings set in "i-mode settings".

Reset……Resets the settings specified in "i-mode settings" to the default settings.

NOTE

<Home URL>

- If a flat-plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected to the FOMA terminal, pressing the switch in the standby screen will also display the site set as the home.

<Sound effect>

- Even if sound effects are set to "ON", some Flash movies may not make any sound.

Setting the connection timeout

<Set connection timeout>

This option sets time-out duration for which the FOMA terminal automatically stops trying to connect when a site is busy and there is no response.

1 MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"i-mode common set"▶"Set connection timeout"▶Select any item:

60 seconds……Automatically stops connecting if there is no response for 60 seconds.

90 seconds……Automatically stops connecting if there is no response for 90 seconds.

Unlimited……Does not automatically stop connecting.

Setting a host different from i-mode host (ISP connection)

<Host selection>

*** There is normally no need to change this setting.**

You need to select a different host when you want to use a service other than i-mode. If you change the host to a host other than i-mode, you can not use i-mode and i-mode mail.

- You can store up to 10 hosts other than "i-mode".

1 MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"i-mode common set"▶"Host selection"▶Highlight "<Not recorded>"▶(Edit)▶Enter your security code▶Select any item:

Host name……Sets the host name. You can enter up to 9 double-byte or 18 single-byte characters.

Host number……Sets the host number. You can enter up to 99 single-byte characters.

Host address……Sets the host address. You can enter up to 30 single-byte characters.

Host address2……Sets the host address2. You can enter up to 30 single-byte characters.

2 Set the respective items▶(Finish)

NOTE

- Note that costs of packet communication while you are connected to a host other than i-mode are not covered by the Pake-Houdai or Pake-Houdai full deal.
- When you change the host, the ticker of i-Channel is turned off. The ticker is turned on again automatically when the information is updated automatically or when ch is pressed to receive the latest information.

NOTE

- After changing the host, the i-Channel information may not be updated automatically. To receive the latest information, press ch to display the channel list screen.

Specifying whether to use terminal data in Flash movies

<Use phone information>

Use this function to specify whether terminal data is used when a Flash movie is running.

- The terminal data may be used depending on the particular Flash movie. Select "Accept" in "Use phone information" of "i-mode settings" so that images use the terminal data. The default setting is "Accept". Such movies may use the following types of terminal data:
  - Battery level
  - Signal strength
  - Date and time
  - Ring volume setting
  - Select language
  - Model data

1 i-mode setting screen (p.148)▶"Use phone information"▶"Accept" or "Reject"

Using SSL Certificates

You can check the details of an SSL certificate or to set to valid/invalid.

1 MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"i-mode common set"▶"Certificate"

2 Select a certificate▶Check the details

■ To validate or invalidate SSL certificates

▶Highlight a certificate▶(FUNC)▶"Valid/Invalid"

NOTE

- When set to "Valid", "" appears. When set to "Invalid", "" appears.
- If you select "Invalid", you cannot view SSL pages with that SSL certificate.

Setting FirstPass

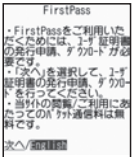
User certificates prove that the user is a proper FOMA service subscriber. Downloaded user certificates are saved on your FOMA card (UIM) and enable you to access client authentication-compliant sites.

Connect to the FirstPass Center

Follow the procedure below to request and download the user certificate.

- You can request a user certificate or download from the FirstPass Center.
- User certificates cannot be used with the FOMA card (blue).
- The FirstPass cannot be used overseas.
- To connect to the FirstPass Center, you must first set the date and time on your FOMA terminal. →p.45
- The screens and procedures used at the FirstPass Center are subject to change.

1 ▶"Client certificate"▶Check the description▶"English"



2 "Request your certificate"

■ **To apply invalidation**

Select "Other settings" and then select "Revoke your certificate".

Enter your PIN2 code and then proceed as directed by the on-screen instructions.

3 Check the description▶"Continue"

4 Enter the PIN2 code

PIN2 code→p.100

5 Check the message▶"Download"▶Check the description▶"Continue"▶"Menu"

The confirmation message appears.

The FirstPass menu screen reappears after the downloading is completed.

NOTE

- Packet communication charge for connection to the FirstPass Center is free.

NOTE

- Before using the FirstPass Center, select "The usage regulation (Japanese only)" and read the information carefully.
- You cannot use the following function during connection to the FirstPass Center.
  - Sending or receiving i-mode mail (sending and receiving SMS is available)
  - Check new message (Check new SMS is available)
  - Reception of MessageR/F
  - Downloading attached files of mails manually
  - Web To function from the mail detail screen
- Always send a certificate request before downloading a new or updated user certificate. You cannot download a certificate without first requesting the certificate.
- Once an application for user certificate invalidation has been completed, you can no longer access FirstPass-compliant sites that require that user certificate.
- If you use FirstPass after completion of invalidation, apply issue for the user certification again and download it.

Using a user certificate to connect to a site

1 Sites screen (p.136)▶Confirm user certificate transmission▶"YES"▶Enter your PIN2 code

NOTE

- The Packet communication charge of connecting to FirstPass-compliant sites is covered by the Pake-Houdai or Pake-Houdai full deal.
- FirstPass is also available in Full Browser. However, the packet communication charge for connecting to FirstPass-compliant sites in Full Browser is not covered by the Pake-Houdai or Pake-Houdai full deal.
- If you connect to a FirstPass-compliant site without a user certificate, or if your user certificate has expired, a message appears informing you of that fact. You can still connect to the site and view subsequent pages by selecting "YES" in some cases, but note that it may not be safe to send your personal information (credit card number, contact details, etc.). To disconnect, select "NO", then reconnect the site after downloading the user certificate from the FirstPass Center.

■ **Notes on using FirstPass**

- FirstPass is DOCOMO's digital authentication service. Using FirstPass enables the client authentication in which the site authenticates the FOMA terminal.

- FirstPass can be used either when the FOMA terminal is directly connected to the Internet or when it is connected via a PC. When the FOMA terminal is connected to the Internet via a PC, the FirstPass PC software included in the provided CD-ROM for FOMA SO706i is required. For more information, refer to the PDF-format "FirstPass-Manual" contained in the "FirstPassPCSoft" folder on the CD-ROM. (The "FirstPass-Manual" is in Japanese only.)
  To view the PDF-format "FirstPass Manual", Adobe® Reader® is required.
  If this software is not installed on your PC, install the Adobe® Reader® in the provided CD-ROM to view the file.
  Refer to the "Adobe Reader ヘルプ" (Help of the Adobe Reader) for details on how to use it.
- When requesting a user certificate, carefully read and agree to the "The usage regulation" of FirstPass displayed on your screen before proceeding with your request.
- To use a user certificate, you will need to enter your PIN2 code (p.100). Take great care to prevent unauthorized persons from using your FOMA card (UIM) or PIN2 code since all the actions performed subsequent to PIN2 code entry will be assumed to have been performed by you.
- If your FOMA card (UIM) is lost or stolen, you can have your user certificates invalidated at NTT DOCOMO Information counter on the back cover of this manual.
- NTT DOCOMO is not responsible for and accepts no liability whatsoever regarding the sites or the content provided by FirstPass-compliant sites. Any disputes are to be resolved between the customer and the FirstPass-compliant site.
- NTT DOCOMO and its authentication company provide no guarantee regarding security or secrecy in the use of FirstPass and SSL certificates. Such certificates are used entirely at the discretion of the user.

Changing the Certificate Host

*** There is normally no need to change this setting.**

You can set the host for downloading the user certificate.

1 MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"i-mode common set"▶"Certificate host"

2 Highlight "<Not recorded>"▶ (Edit)▶Enter your security code▶Select any item:

Default URL……Sets the URL of the initial screen for the host. You can enter up to 100 single-byte characters.

Host number……Sets the host number. You can enter up to 99 single-byte characters.

3 Set the respective items▶ (Finish)

NOTE

- To change a stored "User setting host", use the same procedure for storing.
- To delete a stored "User setting host", select "Delete" from the function menu.

What is i-motion?

An i-motion is a file containing video, voice and music data. It can be downloaded from an i-motion site to your FOMA terminal. You can also set an i-motion as a ring tone. Chaku-motion→p.82

● i-motion types

i-motion can be broadly divided into 2 types as follows. The type of the i-motion you downloaded depends on the site or data.

Type		Description
Type	Playback type	
Standard type (Can be saved*) (Up to 10M bytes)	Playback after downloading	Plays the i-motion after downloading all the data.
	Playback while downloading	Plays the i-motion while downloading the i-motion data.
Streaming type (Cannot be saved) (Up to 10M bytes)	Playback while downloading	Plays the i-motion while downloading the i-motion data. As the data is discarded after the playback, you cannot repeat playback or save the i-motion to the FOMA terminal.

* : May not be saved depending on the i-motion.

Downloading i-motion

<Download i-motion>

1 Sites screen (p.136)▶Select i-motion

When data downloading is completed, the "Data acquisition" screen appears.

■ **To cancel downloading**

▶CLR

2 "Play"

The downloaded i-motion is played.

"Operations on the Music Player" screen→p.278

Data acquisition

Function menu➡p.152

NOTE

- Some sites and i-motion do not allow downloading or the playback during the download.
- For standard type i-motion, the downloading itself continues even if the playback is stopped during downloading.
- Some i-motion is restricted to be played. "🕒" is displayed at the beginning of the title for the i-motion with restrictions on the play count, period or time limit. The i-motion restricted on the playback period cannot be played before or after the period. If the battery pack is removed from the FOMA terminal for a long period of time, the date and time settings stored on the FOMA terminal may be reset. In this case i-motion restricted on the playback period or time limit cannot be played.
- Some i-motion cannot be correctly played.
- The playback while downloading may be interrupted or the images may be distorted due to the signal reception.

FUNC Data acquisition screen (p.152)

Add screen memo……Saves the data acquisition screen to the screen memo.→p.143

Certificate……Displays the contents of the SSL certificate when the page is compatible with SSL.

NOTE

- You can also play an i-motion from a "Screen memo" after saving the data acquisition screen as a screen memo.
  However, you cannot save the data acquisition screen of:
  - i-motion restricted to be played
  - Streaming type i-motion
  - Incomplete i-motion

Saving i-motion

- Some i-motion cannot be saved on the FOMA terminal.
- You can save up to 100 i-motion, including the movies shot by the camera. The maximum number of i-motion to be stored varies depending on the amount of various stored data.
- i-motion folder→p.224

1 Data acquisition screen (p.152)▶"Save"▶"YES"

■ **To cancel the saving**

▶"NO"

Returns to the data acquisition screen without saving the i-motion.

2 Select a folder

NOTE

- An i-motion without title is listed as "movieXXX" (XXX are numbers).

Viewing i-motion details

You can check the details of the i-motion, including the title, file size and replay restrictions.

1 Data acquisition screen (p.152)▶"Property"

The i-motion info screen appears. Use ⊡ to scroll the display up or down to check the details such as the remaining count of the replay, the playback period and the time limit.

Setting Whether to Play an i-motion Automatically

<i-motion auto-replay>

- You can set whether to play an i-motion automatically when:
  - Downloading i-motion from the site screen
  - Displaying the Screen memo of the data acquisition screen
- "i-motion auto-replay" setting is activated only for the standard type i-motion. The streaming type i-motion is played back automatically regardless of this setting.
  i-motion types→p.151

1 i-mode settings screen (p.148)▶ "i-motion auto-replay"▶Select any item:

ON (default)……Automatically plays the i-motion after downloading. Some i-motion is played while downloading.

OFF……Displays the data acquisition screen without playing the i-motion automatically after downloading.

What is i-Channel?

i-channel is a news and information service distributed for i-mode subscribers with i-channel compatible handsets. A variety of information including news and weather forecasts is automatically delivered to the phone's standby screen as subtitles, and subscribers can check a channel list of the information received by simply pressing the i-channel button (ch). (Displaying the channel list→p.153)
i-Channel is a pay service you need to subscribe to (you need to subscribe to i-mode service).

There are two types of channels that you can enjoy with i-channel service: "Basic Channel" distributed by DOCOMO and "Optional Channel" by information service providers (IP). "Basic Channel" does not incur packet communications charges when information is updated. "Optional Channel" that users can choose and register at their own will incurs packet communications charges when information is updated. Detailed content will incur packet communications charges. During international roaming, both auto update and detailed content view incur packet communications charges.

For details on i-Channel, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

This service provides only Japanese channels.

● Ticker on the standby screen

If you have subscribed to i-Channel, the information is displayed on the standby screen as a ticker when the information is received.

- "" flashes while i-Channel information is being delivered.
- You can set the ticker display with "i-Channel setting". →p.154

NOTE

- Ticker is displayed even when i-motion or i-αppli standby screen is set on the standby screen. Ticker is also displayed when the Self mode is set.
- The ticker does not appear when the FOMA card (UIM) is not inserted, when Public mode (Driving mode) is set or in Power saver mode.

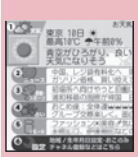
Viewing Sites from the Channel List

You can display channel list screen to access information sites of i-Channel.
You can display up to 15 channels including both "Basic channel" and "Optional channel" on the channel list.

1 On the standby screen▶ch

The "Channel list" screen appears.

■ **From the main menu**
▶▶"i-Channel"▶
"i-Channel list"



Channel list

Function menu➡p.154

2 Select channel item

NOTE

- Information may be received when the channel list screen is displayed in some cases.

Continued on next page

NOTE

- When information is received, the ring tone will not sound, and the vibrator does not vibrate. Also, the illumination does not flash.

FUNC Channel list screen (p.153)

Add shortcut →p.94

Replay……Displays the channel list screen from the beginning.

Sound effect……Sets whether to play the sound effect of the channel list screen or not (ON/OFF).

Window

Open new window……"Using multi window" →p.140

Close window……Closes the displayed i-Channel window.

Change window……Switches windows when multiple websites are open.

NOTE

- The setting of "Sound effect" set on the channel list screen is applied to "Sound effect" of "i-mode settings".

Setting i-Channel

<i-Channel setting>

You can set whether i-Channel information is displayed on the standby screen as a ticker or not. You can also set the scroll speed, color/front size of the ticker on the standby screen.

- When set to "ON", ticker always appears on the standby screen. When set to "Receiving", ticker appears twice on the standby screen when news is received.

1 [i]▶"i-Channel"▶Select any item:

i-Channel list……Displays the channel list.

i-Channel setting

Ticker display setting (default: ON)……Sets whether the ticker of channel information is displayed on the standby screen (ON/Receiving/OFF).

Ticker speed setting (default: Normal)……Selects the scrolling speed of the ticker from "Normal/High/Low".

Ticker color setting*……Selects the ticker color ("White"/"Yellow"/"Blue"/"Red"/"Green").
* : Move the highlight to display the ticker color.

Ticker size setting (default: Standard)……Selects the ticker font size from "Small/Standard/Large". →p.93

Reset i-Channel……Resets the i-Channel settings to the default settings.

NOTE

- The i-Channel setting cannot be changed in Public mode (Driving mode), at the time of purchase (Reset i-Channel) or if the FOMA card (UIM) is not inserted, etc.

<Ticker display setting>

- The ticker display setting remains when you unsubscribe from i-Channel or when you unsubscribe from i-mode service before unsubscribing from i-Channel, but tickers will not be displayed automatically.
- Settings are retained for each mode of 2in1.

<Reset i-Channel>

- i-Channel tickers are not displayed just after resetting i-Channel. The ticker is turned on again automatically when the information is updated automatically or when [ch] is pressed to receive the latest information.

Mail

What is i-mode Mail? 156

Composing i-mode mail/Deco-mail®

Composing and Sending i-mode Mail ..... Compose message/Send 156
Composing Deco-mail® ..... Deco-mail® 158
Using Templates to Create Deco-mail® ..... Template 159
Attaching Files ..... Attach file 160
Saving i-mode Mail to Send Later ..... Save i-mode mail 161
Storing Addresses in Mailing Lists 162

Receiving and using i-mode mail

When You Receive i-mode Mail 162
Receiving i-mode Mail Selectively ..... Receive option 164
Checking for i-mode Mail ..... Check new messages 164
Replying to i-mode Mail ..... Reply to mail 165
Forwarding i-mode Mail to Other Recipients ..... Forward mail 165
Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook 166
Downloading Attached Files Selectively 166
Checking and Saving the File Attached to i-mode Mail 166
Having the FOMA Terminal Read Out Mail 168

Using mail boxes

Displaying Mail in the Inbox and Outbox ..... Inbox/Outbox 170

Using mail records

Using Mail Records ..... Sent address/Received address 177

Specifying mail settings

Setting up the FOMA Terminal Mail Functions ..... Mail Setting 178

Using the message services

When You Receive a Message 179
Viewing Messages in the Message Box ..... MessageR/F 180

Using Early Warning “Area Mail”

What is Early Warning “Area Mail”? 181
When You Receive Early Warning “Area Mail” ..... Receive Area Mail 181
Setting Early Warning “Area Mail” ..... Area Mail setting 182

Using SMS

Composing and Sending SMS ..... Compose SMS/Send 182
When You Receive an SMS ..... Receive SMS 183
Checking for SMS ..... Check new SMS 184
Specifying the SMS center setting ..... SMS center selection 184

What is i-mode Mail?

Subscribing to i-mode enables you to send and receive e-mail messages via the Internet not only between i-mode terminals.
In addition to the message body, you can attach up to 10 files (pictures, videos, etc.) within the total of 2M bytes. As the FOMA terminal is compatible with Deco-mail®, you can send expressive mail by changing font color, size, or background color of the message body or using Deco-mail® pictographs.

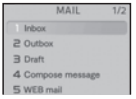
- For details on i-mode mail, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

Composing and Sending i-mode Mail <Compose message/Send>

Use this procedure to compose and send a new i-mode mail message.

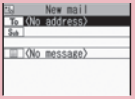
- You can change the size and color of the text used in the message body, assign actions to the text and insert images, lines and other decorative features. Deco-mail®→p.158
- You can store up to 500 sent mails (i-mode mail and SMS) (the number of mails you can actually store may be reduced depending on the file size).

1 ✉▶"Compose message"



Mail menu

➡



New mail

Function menu➡p.157

The "New mail" screen appears.

2 "To <No address>"▶Enter an address

Enter an address to select the mail address input method.

■ **Searching in the phonebook**
▶"Phonebook"▶Search the phonebook (p.73)▶Select a mail address in the phonebook detail screen

■ **Searching in the address list**
▶"Sent address" or "Received address"▶Select a mail address

■ **Using Mail member**
▶"Mail member"▶Select a mail member
For information on mail member→p.162

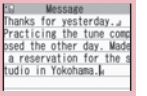
■ **Entering a mail address directly**
▶"Enter address"▶Enter a mail address
You can enter up to 50 single-byte alphabets, numbers or symbols for a mail address.
When you enter a mail address, the new mail address field is displayed below the filled field.
You can enter other mail addresses and send a same mail message to multiple recipients. You can enter up to 5 mail addresses.

3 "Sub"▶Enter a subject

The "Subject" screen appears.
You can enter up to 100 double-byte or 200 single-byte characters.

4 "<No message>"▶Enter the message body

You can enter up to 5,000 double-byte characters.
You can also insert a line feed (hard return) while editing the message. You can also insert a line feed by pressing ⏎ at the end of a sentence. "↵" is also counted as 1 double-byte character. Spaces are also counted in the same way as characters.
You can also compose Deco-mail®.→p.158
You can use Template to compose and send the Deco-mail®.→p.159



Message

Function menu➡pp.158, 306

5 ℹ (Send)

When you enter the message, number of bytes of the message appears on the upper right corner of the message.
An animation appears while sending a mail. After sending a mail, select "OK" to return to the mail menu screen. After sending a mail, select "OK" to return to the mail menu screen.

■ **To cancel the transmission**
▶ch (Quit) or CLR (1 second or longer)
Depending on the timing, the i-mode mail may be sent.

■ **When you are requested to send the mail again**
▶"YES"

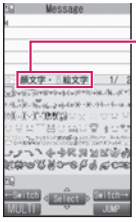
Entering Deco-mail® pictographs

Deco-mail® pictograph is an image which fulfills certain conditions including moving pictograph. On the SO706i, you can enter Deco-mail® pictograph in the mail message easily because Deco-mail® pictograph entry is arranged by the categories.

- You can download Deco-mail® pictograph from websites, in addition to the pre-installed Deco-mail® pictograph. →p.144
- Mails with Deco-mail® pictographs are handled as Deco-mail®.

■Entering Deco-mail® pictograph

Press and hold [ch] (Pict/Sym) ("LONG Pictograph D" in the operation guidance area) for 1 second or longer on the Message screen to display the Pictograph D (Deco-mail® pictograph) entry screen which is arranged by the categories. Use [✥] to move the frame and press [■] (Select) to enter Deco-mail® pictograph.



[Category]
顔文字・ｉ絵文字 (Face mark/i-pictograph)
装飾 (Decoration)
天気・季節 (Weather/Seasons)
生活 (Life)
食べ物 (Food)
キャラクター (Character)
文字・せりふ (Text/Phrase)
いろいろ (Miscellaneous)

[Other key operations]
[✉] (←Switch): Displays the previous category
[i] (Switch→): Displays the next category
[ch] (JUMP): Displays the category list
[CLR]: Quits entering Deco-mail® pictograph

Composing i-mode mail from the phonebook screen

Locate and display an e-mail address stored in the phonebook and then press [■] (MAIL), then the new mail screen with the mail address entered to the address appears.
Searching the phonebook→p.73

WEB mail

Selecting "WEB mail" on the Mail menu (p.156), you can access the WEB mail site and compose and send mail from Address B of 2in1*.

* : For details on 2in1, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [2in1]".

NOTE

- If the storage capacity for sent mails is full when you send a mail, mails are deleted from the oldest one (protected mails and mails in the Secret folder are not deleted).

NOTE

- Some phones may be unable to receive a part of a subject.
- When you use pictographs in the subject or message body and send the mail to the devices of other mobile phone companies (au/SoftBank), the pictographs are automatically converted to similar ones on the other party's device. However, pictographs may not be displayed properly depending on the model or functions of the other party's mobile Phone. When the receiver does not have the corresponding pictographs, the pictographs are converted to characters or "〓".
- When the recipient address is a phone number and the number is preceded by the "184" or "186" prefix, a message appears asking whether to delete the prefix before sending the mail when you try to send i-mode mail.
- Depending on the signal quality, the recipient may not be able to display the text correctly. Also, the "Transmission failed" message may appear even after the message has been sent.
- When 2in1 is in B mode, you cannot compose and send i-mode mail.

[FUNC] New mail screen (p.156)

Send……Sends i-mode mail.

Save→p.161

Delete receiver……If there are 2 or more addresses entered, you can delete the address you select.

Change rcv. type……Changes the address type with an address highlighted.

- **To**……The recipient's address. The mail address entered in the "To" field is displayed in other recipient's terminals.
- **Cc**……Broadcasts address. The mail address entered in the Cc field are also displayed to the other recipients. Select this option to send copies of the message sent to the address in the To field to other addresses.
- **Bcc**……Broadcasts address. The mail address entered in the Bcc field are not displayed to the other recipients.

Template→p.159

Attach file……Attaches a file such as melody, image or i-motion to an i-mode mail.→p.160

Activate camera……Activates the camera function to shoot still images or movies.

- **Photo mode**→p.123
- **Movie mode**→p.126

Delete att. file • Del all att. files……Deletes one or all attached file(s).

Add header……Pastes a header into the i-mode mail message.

Continued on next page

Add signature……Pastes your signature into the i-mode mail message.

Erase message……Erases the message body in the current i-mode mail message.

Delete……Deletes the current i-mode mail message.

NOTE

<Change rcv. type>

- E-mail addresses entered in the "To" and "Cc" fields are usually displayed to the recipient. However, depending on the terminal device and mail software used by the recipient, the e-mail addresses may not be displayed.

FUNC Message screen (p.156)

- For the functions other than the following, refer to the function menu of the "Character entry (edit)" screen (p.306).

Decorate mail……"Decoration menus"→p.158

Select area……You can decorate, copy or cut the selected text.→p.308

Property……Displays the file name and size of an image inserted into the message when the cursor is at the left of the image.

Preview……Displays a preview of the message.

Composing Deco-mail®

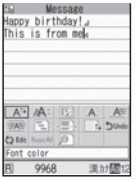
<Deco-mail®>

The Deco-mail® function allows you to make your text in the i-mode mail more visually appealing and exciting by changing the size and color of the text, the background color, assigning actions to text, and inserting images into your message.

- If you decorate the message, you can enter fewer characters than in the i-mode mail which is not decorated.
- When decorating text, you can enter text while decorating or you can decorate text after entering.

1 Message screen (p.156)▶ ▶Use to move the frame to select the decoration menu

The "Decoration menu" appears.→p.158



Decoration menu

■ **Decorating text while entering**

Decorated text is entered after decoration menu is selected.

■ **Decorating the entered text**

Select Edit from the decoration menu, specify the text you want to decorate and select decorating menu. The specified text is decorated.

2 Press (Exit) to end the decoration menu

NOTE

- If you forward received Deco-mail® or quote Deco-mail® in a reply, inserted images and decorations appear as quoted in the message.
- If you quote or forward Deco-mail® that includes an image that cannot be sent as mail, the image is deleted.
- Some i-mode terminals receive mail that includes URL for viewing the Deco-mail®. However, incompatible terminals may receive only the message with no URL.

Decoration menus

- When decoration applied by lines (ticker/swing/inserting line/alignment) is selected, a line feed is automatically inserted when the menu is selected.
- You can combine multiple decorations (example: changing the color and size of characters and making them blink).

Menu	Description
	Changes the character color. You can select the pallet of 25 colors or 256 colors. <25 colors> Font color Use to move the frame and select the color to change. Default 25Color The latest 5 colors selected from the pallet of 256 colors are displayed at the bottom. Select Change The pallet of 25 colors and 256 colors switches each time you press (Change).
	Selects the character size from / / (Large/Standard/Small).
*1	Selects the image to insert from My picture folder.
/ /	Makes characters "Blink/Scroll from right to left (Ticker)/Scroll from right to left and left to right (Swing)".
Begin / End *1	"Starts" or "Ends" the decoration.
Select / Reset *2	"Sets" or "Releases" the decoration of specified area.

Menu	Description
	Selects the character alignment position from / / (Left/Center/Right).
*1	Inserts a line.
*1	Changes the background color of the message. Select the background color from the pallet in the same way as the character color.
Undo	Return the entered character or message decoration 1 step back.
Edit *1	Decorates the entered characters, or sets/releases the decoration.
Reset *2	Releases the decoration.
Reset All *1	Releases all the decoration.
	Displays the preview screen of the decoration.

*1: Cannot be selected in the decoration menu when Edit is selected.
*2: Available in the decoration menu only when Edit is selected.

NOTE

<Font color/Background color>
- Pictographs are also displayed in the specified color. To return them to their original color, select "Edit", specify the area to be changed and then select "Reset". However, you cannot specify the character color of Deco-mail® pictographs.

<Font size>
- You cannot change the size of Deco-mail® pictographs.

<Insert image>
- You can insert up to 20 files, up to 90K bytes, of JPEG or GIF images, or Deco-mail® pictographs regardless of the number of bytes of the message body or the file size of the attached file (the maximum number depends on the file size).
- If you insert multiple copies of the same image, they are handled as 1 image. However, if you save or send an image once and then edit the image and insert it again, it is handled as a separate image.
- If you insert an animation, the animation stops once a set time has elapsed.

<Blink/Ticker/Swing>
- Blinking, ticker subtitling or swinging stops once a set time has elapsed.

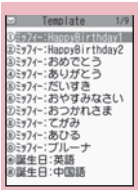
<Edit decoration>
- Even if you delete the decorated text, the decoration data itself may be retained and the number of characters that can be entered may be reduced. You should remove the decorations and then delete the text. If you hold down CLR for 1 second or longer, all the characters and decoration data are deleted.

Using Templates to Create Deco-mail® <Template>

Template is a form for Deco-mail® to which the layout and the ornament are already set. By using a template, you can compose Deco-mail® easily.
- You can download Template from sites. →p.146
- When you try to use Template in the following cases, a message appears asking whether to delete the edited content in the message:
  - When text is already entered in the mail message
  - When the header or signature is automatically inserted
  - When there is an attached file

1 ▶"Template"

The "Template list" screen appears.



Template list

Function menu➡p.160

■ **To search templates by i-mode**
▶"Search by i-mode"
▶ "YES"

2 Select Template

The "Template preview" screen appears.
- During preview display, use to display other templates.

Template preview

Function menu➡p.160

3 (MAIL)▶Edit the message body

■ **To activate Template from the New mail screen (p.156)**
▶ (FUNC)▶"Template"▶"Load template"▶ Select Template

Saving a template

You can save Deco-mail® you compose as Template.

- You can save up to 500 Templates.
- If the message has any attached file other than inserted images, the file is deleted.
- Template is saved in "Template" in the Mail menu.

1 Message-decorated New mail screen▶ ✉ (FUNC)▶"Template"▶"Save template"▶"YES"

NOTE

- The subject of the message being composed is used as Template title. If no subject is entered, "YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm" is used as the title (Y: year, M: month, D: day, h: hour, m: minute).

FUNC Template list screen (p.159)

Compose message……Uses Template to create Deco-mail®.→p.159

Sort……Sorts Template in a selected criteria.

Edit title……Edits the title of Template. You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.

Info……Displays Template size, save date and whether or not it includes images.

No. of messages……Displays the number of saved Template.

Delete……Selects the deleting method from "Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all".
"About multiple-choice"→p.38

FUNC Template preview screen (p.159)

Compose message……Uses Template to create Deco-mail®.→p.159

Edit……Edits Template.

Save insert image……Selects the image inserted to Template and saves it on the My picture folder. If the image can be set as the standby screen, you can select whether to set it as the standby screen or not after saving it.

NOTE

- Template is not available when 2in1 is in B mode.

<Edit>

- The title used when the template is saved as a separate file is "YYYY/MM/DD hh:mm" (Y: year, M: month, D: day, h: hour, m: minute).

Attaching Files <Attach file>

You can send i-mode mails with files attached.

- You can attach the following files:
  - Image (still image, image)
  - SWF Flash movie
  - movie, i-motion
  - Melody
  - PDF data
  - Documents in a microSD card
  - ToruCa, ToruCa (detail)
  - Phonebook entry
  - My profile data
  - Schedule or To Do list entry
  - Bookmark
  - Other files in the microSD card

1 New mail screen (p.156)▶ ch (Att.)▶ Select any item:

Image • i-motion • Melody • PDF……Selects a folder on the Phone or microSD, and then selects data to attach.
The number of selecting folders varies depending on the selected device (Phone/microSD).

Document……Select a document in a microSD card.

ToruCa……Selects a folder on the Phone or microSD, and then selects data to attach.
The number of selecting folders varies depending on the selected device (Phone/microSD).

Phonebook……Selects the phonebook on the Phone or microSD, and then searches for a phonebook entry (selects a folder for microSD) to select data to attach.
How to search the phonebook→p.73

My Profile……Attaches the My Profile data.

Schedule……Selects the Schedule or To Do list, and then selects data to attach.

Bookmark……Selects the bookmark on the Phone (i-mode/Full Browser) or microSD, and then selects data to attach.

Other……Selects other files in the microSD card.

■ **To send an image to a mova terminal as i-shot**

You can send a mail attached with an image to a mova terminal as i-shot.
When you send a mail to a mova terminal, you can attach only 1 JPEG image. If you attach a GIF image downloaded from sites, etc., the attached file is deleted and only the message reaches the recipient.
When you send mail to a mova terminal, unless the recipient has set the incoming message length, he or she can only receive a message up to 184 double-byte characters (369 bytes) long. If the recipient has set the incoming message length, the recipient can receive a message up to 2,000 double-byte characters including the i-shot URL (where the image is kept).

2 Compose and send an i-mode mail

■ **To check the attached file**

▶Select a file
You cannot play the melody which exceeds 100K bytes or the SWF Flash movie.

■ **To delete the attached file**

▶Highlight the file▶✉ (FUNC)▶"Delete att. file"▶"YES"
To delete all the attached files, select "Del all att. files".

For details of the subsequent procedure, see "Composing and Sending i-mode Mail" (p.156).

NOTE

- You can attach up to 10 files, up to 2M bytes regardless of the number of bytes of the message body or the file size of the inserted image (the maximum number depends on the file size). When attaching ToruCa, you can attach ToruCa up to 1K bytes and ToruCa (detail) up to 100K bytes for 1 case.
- You cannot attach a file which is forbidden to be sent as a mail attachment or output from your FOMA terminal.
- You can attach images or movies shot with the camera even if "File restriction" is set to "File restricted".
- If you send an attached file which is not supported by the receiving terminal, the attached file may be deleted automatically at the i-mode Center. In this case, the "添付ファイル削除" (Attached file deleted) message is added to the mail message.
- If an image selected for "Image" is larger than 320 dots wide × 240 dots high or 240 dots wide × 320 dots high, "Attach image" appears and you can select "Attach mail" or "QVGA scale down".
- Depending on the recipient's mobile phone model, sent image may be displayed incorrectly or may not be displayed. A coarse image may also be displayed.

NOTE

- When you send an i-motion mail to the terminal which is not compatible with the i-motion mail (i-motion attached i-mode mail), the recipient receives an mail with the URL for viewing the i-motion and can view the i-motion by selecting the URL.
- When you send an i-motion mail, depending on the recipient's mobile phone model, movies may not be received or displayed correctly, may be choppy or converted to continuous still images for viewing. When sending a mail to a terminal other than 2MB-compatible handsets, it is recommended to set "File size" to "500KB", "Select size" to "QCIF (176 × 144)" and "Quality setting" to "Fine mode" when shooting movies. Playing movies→p.233
- If the recipient is not FOMA SO706i, melodies you send may not be played correctly.

Saving i-mode Mail to Send Later <Save i-mode mail>

You can save the composing mail on the FOMA terminal temporarily, then edit and send the saved mail afterwards.

Saving i-mode mail

- The Draft mailbox can hold up to 50 i-mode mail and SMS in total.
- You cannot compose i-mode mail when draft mails are full.

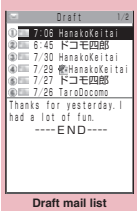
1 New mail screen (p.156)▶✉ (FUNC)▶"Save"

The mail which is not edited cannot be saved.

Sending draft i-mode mail

1 ✉▶"Draft"

The "Draft mail list" screen appears.



Draft mail list

Function menu➡p.162

2 Select a mail▶Edit the address, subject or message body and then send the mail

Continued on next page

NOTE

- When 2in1 is in B mode, you cannot display the Draft mail list screen.

FUNC Draft mail list screen (p.161)

List setting……Selects a mail-list format from "Subject/Name/Address".

iC transmission→p.259

Send Ir data→p.258

iC trans. all→p.260

Send all Ir data→p.258

Copy to microSD→p.248

No. of messages……Displays the number of mails in the Draft mailbox.

Store in Center→p.176

Delete……Selects the deleting method from "Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all".
"About multiple-choice"→p.38

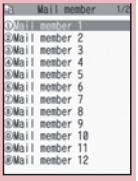
Storing Addresses in Mailing Lists

By storing addresses in the Mail member, you can easily enter multiple addresses only by selecting the Mail member.

- You can store up to 20 mail members with up to 5 e-mail addresses in each list.

1 MENU▶"OWN DATA"▶"Mail member"

The "Mail member list" screen appears.

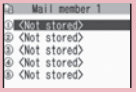


Mail member list

Function menu➡p.162

2 Select a mail member

The "Mail member detail" screen appears.



Mail member detail

Function menu➡p.162

3 Highlight "<Not stored>"▶ (Edit)▶ Enter the mail address

To store more e-mail addresses, repeat step 3.

FUNC Mail member list screen (p.162)

Compose message……Composes an i-mode mail message with the members of the mail member pasted into the recipients field.

Edit member name……Edits the name of the mail member. You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.

Reset member name……Resets the mail member name to the default name.

FUNC Mail member detail screen (p.162)

Edit address……Edits the e-mail address.

Look-up address……Enters the e-mail address by browsing the phonebook, sent address list or received address list.

Delete this • Delete all……Deletes one or all mail member(s).

When You Receive i-mode Mail

When the FOMA terminal is in a service area, i-mode mail or MessageR/F is automatically sent to the FOMA terminal from the i-mode Center.

- You can store up to 1,000 received mails (i-mode mail and SMS) (the number of mails you can actually store may be reduced depending on the file size).
- You can have the FOMA terminal read out the received mail message.→p.168

Displaying new messages automatically <Auto receive mail/Message>

[1] The "Receiving" screen appears when the reception of i-mode mail or Message starts and the "Received result" screen appears when the reception is finished.

➡

- "✉" flashes while receiving a mail and "✉" stops flashing and lights up when the reception is finished.
- "R" or "F" flashes while receiving a Message.

[2] The number of received mail or MessageR/F appears on the received result screen.
- The number of mails includes the number of SMS.
- When you select mail or Message on the received result screen, the Received mail list screen (pp.170, 171) or Message list screen (p.180) appears.
- If no operation is performed for about 15 seconds while the received result screen is displayed, the previous screen appears for mails and Detail screen appears for Message. The display duration may vary depending on the "Mail/Msg. ring time" setting.
- Press (Read) on the received result screen to have the FOMA terminal read out the mail message. →p.168
- The detail screen of MessageR/F is displayed automatically when the message is received on the standby screen.
- If no operation is performed for about 15 seconds while the Message detail screen is displayed, the standby screen reappears. However, if you use operations such as scrolling, the detail screen continues to be displayed.
- You can set the FOMA terminal to display the detail screen of MessageR/F automatically with "Auto-display setting".

■ When you receive a mail exceeds 100K bytes

If the total amount of mail message, inserted image(s) and attached file(s) exceeds 100K bytes, the attached file(s) cannot be automatically received when receiving mail. In this case, receive manually later on.
You can download the attached file which exceeds 100K bytes manually from the i-mode Center. →p.166

NOTE

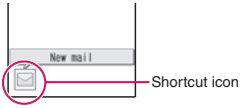
- If the storage capacity for received mails is full when you receive a mail, mails are deleted from oldest read mails (unread or protected mails and mails in the Secret folder are not deleted).
- When the FOMA terminal cannot receive any more mails (because it is full with unread and protected mails), (red)/ (red) appear. Read the unread mails or unprotect the unnecessary mails.
- When 2in1 is in A mode or B mode and a mail arrives only at address in unspecified mode, the "Mail Receiving..." screen appears, but the receiving results screen and "✉" do not appear. In addition, the mail ring tone does not sound.

NOTE

- If you receive i-mode mail from a terminal capable of specifying "To", "Cc" and "Bcc" recipients, refer to the mail detail screen to see whether your own address is in the "To", "Cc" or "Bcc" field. →pp.170, 172
- If you receive i-mode mail when the standby screen is not displayed and "Operation preferred" is set in "Receiving setting", the FOMA terminal does not ring. When "Alarm preferred" is selected, the FOMA terminal plays the ring tone and displays the reception results screen.
- If you receive an i-shot service mail sent from a mova terminal, images arrive as attached files.

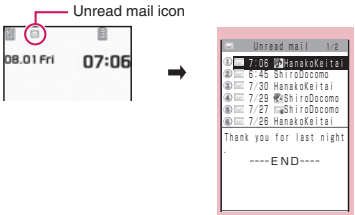
Viewing a new mail

1 On the standby screen▶■▶Select "✉"



■ To display the unread mail list

▶On the standby screen▶■▶Use ✥ to select "✉"
The "Unread mail list" screen appears.



Unread mail list

Function menu➡p.175

NOTE

- Characters that cannot be displayed appear as spaces.
- If the number of characters in the i-mode mail message body exceeds the maximum number of characters that can be received, either "/" or "//" is inserted at the end of the message and the remaining portion is automatically deleted.
- If the size of received i-mode mail exceeds the size set in "Limit Mail Size", the pasted data is deleted at the i-mode Center and you cannot download it.
- If you receive decorated mail (HTML mail) from a PC, the decorations may not be displayed correctly.

Receiving i-mode Mail Selectively <Receive option>

You can check the subject of i-mode mail kept at the i-mode Center, then select the mail to receive or delete the mail at the i-mode Center without receiving.

- To use this function, set “Receive option setting” to “ON” beforehand. When set to “ON”, you cannot receive i-mode mail automatically.

When mail arrives

A message appears saying that mail is kept at the i-mode Center, and “ ” icon is displayed at the top of the screen. When you confirm the message and press any key, the message and icon disappear.

Receiving mail selectively

1 ▶“Receive option”

You can also access “Receive option” as follows:

- ▶“iMenu”▶“メニューリスト (Menu List)”▶“メール選択受信” (Receive option)

■ If “Receive option setting” is set to “OFF”

A message appears asking whether you want to enable mail receive options. Select “Receive option setting” to specify the “Receive option” setting. When you set the receive option to “ON”, the Mail menu screen reappears.

2 **Select and set option for each item of i-mode mail**

受信 (Accept): Accepts the selected mail.
削除 (Delete): Deletes the selected mail.
保留 (Hold): Leaves the selected mail at the i-mode Center.
Use “Check new message” to receive the mail.

■ To delete all mails

▶“削除” (Delete) at the bottom of the page▶“決定” (OK)

■ When there are multiple pages of mail

▶“前ページ” (Previous page) or “次ページ” (Next page)▶Move to other pages and select the mail to be accepted

When you view the 2nd page, your selections on the 1st page remain valid.

The meanings of the icons displayed after “サイズ (Size):XXXバイト (bytes)” are as follows:

: Image file attached
: Melody file attached
: i-motion attached
: ToruCa attached
: Other file attached

3 **“受信／削除” (Receive/Delete)▶“決定” (OK)**

The completion screen appears and mail reception begins.

■ To cancel selective reception

▶“キャンセル” (Cancel)

■ When there are multiple pages of mail

Selecting “受信/削除” (Receive/Delete) mid-way through the pages applies your options (hold, receive or delete) to the mail up to the selected page and mail on the remaining pages remains kept at the i-mode Center.

NOTE

- If you use “Check new messages”, all messages are received even if the receive option setting is set to “ON”. Deselect “Mail” in “Set check new messages” if you do not want to receive any mail.
- If you display the receive option screen, the “ ” icon disappears even when you do not receive or delete mail.
  The “ ” icon also disappears if you turn the FOMA terminal off or display the mail screen.
- When 2in1 is in B mode, you cannot launch the Receive option.

Checking for i-mode Mail <Check new messages>

The i-mode mail or Messages which the FOMA terminal could not receive are kept at the i-mode Center. You can receive the kept i-mode mail or Messages by checking for i-mode mail at the i-mode Center.

- i-mode mail messages are kept at the i-mode Center in the following cases:
  - When the FOMA terminal is turned off
  - When “ 圏外 ” is displayed
  - When the Inbox is full
  - When “Receive option setting” is set to “ON”
  - During a videophone call
  - When Self mode is set
  - When connecting to the FirstPass Center
- Use “Set check new messages” to specify which items are checked for.

1 [✉] (1 second or longer)

The check new messages screen appears.
You can also check new messages by following procedures.

- [i]▶"Check new messages"
- [✉]▶"Check new messages"

■ **To cancel the inquiry**

▶[ch] (Quit) or [CLR] (1 second or longer) during the inquiry
A message may be received depending on the timing of the cancellation.

2 Check for new i-mode mails, Message R/F▶"Back"

NOTE

- Depending on the signal reception status, you cannot check for new mails or the checking may be canceled.
- Even when there is i-mode mail kept at the i-mode Center, the "" icon may not be displayed if the mail arrived at the Center while the FOMA terminal is turned off or the " 圏外 " is displayed.
- You can store up to 100 MessageR/F respectively at the i-mode Center, and stored up to 72 hours. Once the maximum number of stored messages is reached, messages are deleted as a new message arrives, starting with the oldest message.

Replying to i-mode Mail <Reply to mail>

You can send a reply to an i-mode mail message. You can also quote the received i-mode mail in your reply.

1 Received mail list screen (p.171)/ Received mail detail screen (p.172)▶[i] (Reply)

■ **To reply by quoting the received message**

▶[✉] (FUNC)▶"Reply with quote"
You can select this option on the received mail detail screen.
A single quotation symbol (set to ">" by default) is displayed at the start of the quoted message in the reply.
To edit the quotation symbol→p.179

■ **To reply to the sender of mail with multiple addresses**

▶"Reply" or "Reply with quote"▶"To sender"

■ **To reply to the sender and all addresses of mail with multiple addresses**

▶"Reply" or "Reply with quote"▶"To all"
If replies cannot be sent to the sender, all the addresses, including the other broadcast addresses, are deleted from the displayed mail reply screen.
If the list of broadcast addresses includes some to which replies cannot be sent, these addresses to which replies cannot be sent are deleted from the displayed mail reply screen.

2 Edit the subject and message body▶[i] (Send)

After the reply has been sent the "" icon changes to "".

NOTE

- When 2in1 is in B mode or Dual mode, you cannot reply or reply with quote an i-mode mail sent to Address B.
- When data such as a melody or specification for activating i-αppli is pasted into the mail message, the pasted data is deleted.

Forwarding i-mode Mail to Other Recipients <Forward mail>

You can forward i-mode mail you have received to other people.

1 Received mail detail screen (p.170, 172)▶[✉] (FUNC)▶"Forward"▶" To <No address>"▶Enter an address

You can edit the subject and message body before you send a mail.

2 [i] (Send)

After the reply has been sent the "" icon changes to "".

NOTE

- If the file which is prohibited to be attached to mails or output from the FOMA terminal is attached to or pasted, the file and its information are deleted.
- When data such as a melody or specification for activating i-αppli is pasted into the mail message, the pasted data is deleted.
- When there is any attached file whose downloading is not completed, the file is not attached.→p.166
- When 2in1 is in B mode, you cannot forward the mail.
- When 2in1 is in Dual mode, a forwarded mail to Address B is sent as a mail of Address A.

Adding Mail Addresses to Phonebook

You can add the e-mail address or phone number of the sender of received mail to your phonebook.

- For the received SMS message, the sender's phone number is stored in the Phonebook as a phone number.

<Example: To add the sender's e-mail address to the phonebook>

1 Received mail detail screen (pp.170, 172)▶✉ (FUNC)▶"Save address"

■ **When there are multiple e-mail addresses to be added**

▶On the e-mail address selection screen, select the e-mail address you want to add

■ **To add an e-mail address or phone number included in the body**

▶Mail detail screen▶Highlight an e-mail address or phone number you want to add▶✉ (FUNC)▶"Add to phonebook"

2 "YES"▶"Phone" or "UIM"

Adding information to the phonebook→p.70

Downloading Attached Files Selectively

When the size of a mail including the message body, inserted images and attached files exceeds 100K bytes, you cannot receive the attached files automatically when you receive the mail. In this case, you need to download the attached files, manually.

- You also have to download the files manually for the files that are not checked in "Prefer attachment".
- On the received mail detail screen, "" appears when the attached file is not downloaded and "" appears when the attached file is downloaded halfway.

1 Received mail detail screen (pp.170, 172)▶Select the attached file with "" or "" icon

Data downloading begins.
When data downloading is completed, the screen about data downloading completion appears.

■ **To cancel downloading**

▶ch (Quit)
The data downloaded halfway is saved. In this case, you can download the rest of the data repeating step 1.

2 After downloading the data, contents of the data is displayed according to the file type of the attached file

NOTE

- When there is any attached file whose downloading is not completed, the data retention period of the attached file is displayed on the "Received mail detail" screen(pp.170, 172). When all the attached files are downloaded, the retention period disappears from the screen. You cannot download the attached file whose retention period is expired.
- When the storage capacity of Inbox is exceeded when you receive an attached file, the received mails are deleted automatically according to the size of the attached file (many received mails may be deleted depending on the size of the attached file). Note that unread or protected received mails and received mails in Secret folder are not deleted. It is recommended to protect mails you want to keep.→p.175

Checking and Saving the File Attached to i-mode Mail

You can check and save the data attached to or pasted into received i-mode mail.

- You cannot save the attached file whose downloading has not completed. To save the data, download the data beforehand.→p.166

Saving melodies <Save melody>

You can save a melody ( ) attached to or pasted into received i-mode mail to the FOMA terminal.

- If the sender is not FOMA SO706i, the received melodies may not be played correctly.

1 Received mail detail screen (pp.170, 172)▶Highlight the melody▶✉ (FUNC)▶"Save data"▶"YES"▶Select a folder

■ **To stop the melody**

▶ch, ☎, 0 to 9, ＊, #

2 "YES"▶Select an item

■ **When you do not set the melody to the ring tone, etc.**

▶"NO"

NOTE

- If there are multiple pasted files, you may not be able to view the pasted files themselves.
- To prevent melodies from playing automatically when you open mail, set "Start attachment (auto)" to "OFF".

Saving images <Save image>

You can save images ( ) attached to or pasted into received i-mode mail.
Saving the inserted image→p.176

1 Received mail detail screen (pp.170, 172)▶Move the frame to the image▶ (FUNC)▶"Save data"▶"YES"▶Select a folder

■ **To change image display to file name display**
▶Select an image
To return to the image display, select the file name.

2 "YES"▶Select an item

■ **When you do not set the image to the standby screen, etc.**
▶"NO"

Saving i-motion <Save i-motion>

You can save the i-motion ( ) attached to received i-mode mail.

1 Received mail detail screen (pp.170, 172) ▶Highlight an i-motion▶ (FUNC)▶"Save data"▶"YES"▶Select a folder

Saving ToruCa <Save ToruCa>

You can save the ToruCa and ToruCa (detail) ( ) attached to received i-mode mail.

1 Received mail detail screen (pp.170, 172)▶Select a ToruCa
The ToruCa appears.

2 (Save)▶Select a folder
You can also save the data by selecting "Save data" from the function menu.

Saving PDF data and documents

Save PDF data ( ) or documents ( ) attached to received i-mode mail.

1 Received mail detail screen (pp.170, 172)▶Select a file
A PDF data or document appears.
Viewing PDF data or documents→p.263

2 (FUNC)▶"Save"▶"YES"▶Select a folder
- Documents can only be saved to a microSD card.
- If there is no folder in the microSD card, a folder is created automatically and there is no need to select one.

■ **To return to the received mail detail screen**
▶CLR

Saving the tool data

You can save the tool data (phonebook, schedule or bookmark) ( ) attached to received i-mode mail.

<Example: To save the schedule>

1 Received mail detail screen (pp.170, 172)▶Select a file
The information of schedule appears.
You can also save the data by selecting "Save data" from the function menu.

2 (Save)

■ **Phonebook**
▶ (Save)▶"Phone" or "UIM"
Adding information to the phonebook→p.70

■ **Bookmark**
▶ (Select)▶Select the destination
For i-mode, "i-mode Browser" and "microSD" can be selected. For the Full Browser, "Full Browser" and "microSD" can be selected.

NOTE
- You cannot save the schedule on the microSD card.
- When you save the file which contains multiple data on the FOMA terminal, only the first data is saved (when you save the data on the microSD card, all the data is saved).

Saving other files

You can save other files ( ) attached to received i-mode mail.
- Other files are automatically saved to the "Other" folder on the microSD card. When the data is saved, the file name is changed.→p.244

1 Received mail detail screen (pp.170, 172)▶Highlight the other file▶ (FUNC)▶"Save data"▶"YES"

Having the FOMA Terminal Read Out Mail

- The voice may be heard by others while reading out, so move to an area where it will not disturb other people.
- The FOMA terminal reads out at the volume level set in “Phone” in “Ring volume”. When set to “Silent” or “Step”, messages are read out at the “Level 2” volume.
- A mail is not read out when:
  - “Read out received mail” under “Read out setting” is set to “OFF”
  - During a call or data communication (excluding packet communication)
  - In Manner mode and no equipment such as a flat plug earphone/microphone with switch (optional) is connected
  - Playing music with the Music Player

Having the FOMA terminal read out new mail

When the reception results screen appears with receiving the mail or when the checking result screen appears after performing “Check new messages”, the FOMA terminal can read out the mail message.

- When “Select language” is set to English, a mail is not read out.

<Example: When Check new messages is performed>

1 Press [i] (Read) while the checking result screen is displayed

If the sender’s name and e-mail address are stored in the phonebook, the message is read out after the voice notification “○○さんからのメール” (This is from ○○).

When reading out mails is completed, the FOMA terminal emits the “pipip” tone and ends the reading out screen.

■ When you receive multiple mail at the same time

The FOMA terminal reads out mails in reverse chronological order of reception date.

When you press [◁] during reading out, the FOMA terminal emits the beep sound before reading out the next mail. If there is no more mail, the FOMA terminal stops the reading out.

Having the FOMA terminal read out mail in the mail box

Messages written in English are spelled out in alphabetic reading.

1 Received mail detail screen (pp.170, 172)▶[✉] (FUNC)▶“Read out message”

■ To cancel reading out

▶[■] (Stop)

Press [■] (PLAY) again to start over reading out.

■ To end reading out

▶[i] (Exit)

NOTE

- While a message is being read out, an image appears in the upper half of the screen. When the sent address and image of the received mail are stored in the phonebook, the stored image appears.
- While a message is being read out, press [◁], [▯] (▲マナー) or [▯] (▼メモ) to scroll the message. Pressing any of other keys cancels reading out. However, when you press [5] or [2] for 1 second or longer to turn the display light or Shield view function ON or OFF, it does not end reading out.
- If you receive a call while a message is being read out, reading out is canceled and the ringing screen appears.
- If you receive a new mail or message while a message is being read out, the setting in “Receiving setting” is applied. When the specified alarm time is reached while a message is being read out, the setting in “Alarm setting” is applied.
- Mail-linked i-αppli mail cannot be read out on the result screen but on the detail screen.
- The FOMA terminal cannot read out SMS report.
- The FOMA terminal may not be able to read out mails received from PCs.

Reading out rules

The read out mail function generally follows the following rules when reading out received mail.

■Symbols and pictographs

Symbols and pictographs are not read out, except for certain symbols.

* The FOMA terminal may not correctly read out sentences that include symbols and pictographs.

■Numbers

The FOMA terminal reads out numbers up to 16 digits long.

Example: 1234 → “Sen nihyaku sanju yon”

■**Amount of money**

If a currency symbol (e.g. "￥" (single-byte or double-byte)) is placed at the beginning of a number up to 16 digits long, the FOMA terminal reads out the number as amount of money.

If commas (,) are used as a delimiting character in an input string, the FOMA will recognize the string as amount of money only if the commas are used every 3 digits.

Example: ￥12345 / ￥12,345 — "Ichiman nisen sanbyaku yonjuu goen"

■**Phone number**

If numbers are delimited by hyphens "-" or parentheses "()" as the phone number for the general phone, the mobile phone or the free dial phone, the FOMA terminal reads them out as phone numbers but not as sequences of digits. The FOMA terminal will also read numbers preceded by "Tel:" as phone numbers.

Example: Tel: 0120-102-... → Teru zeroichinizero ichizeroni ...

■**Time**

Numbers separated by a colon ":" are read out as time.* If the hour component is a 1- or 2-digit number and the minute component is a 2-digit number, the number is read out as time. If "AM" or "PM" is added before or after the number, it is read out before the number.

"Hour" : "Minute" ("Hour" = 0 to 29: "Minute" = 00 to 59) Example: 23:15 → "Nijusanji jugofun"
AM "Hour" : "Minute" or "Hour" : "Minute" AM ("Hour" = 0 to 12: "Minute" = 00 to 59) Example: AM 5:05 → "Gozen goji gofun"

* : The time entered in the format of "Hour" : "Minute" : "Second" (e.g. 23:15:10) is not read out.

■**Date**

Numbers separated by a slash (/) or a period (.) in the pattern for date are read out as date. If "M", "T", "S" or "H" (upper case) is inserted before a date, the corresponding (Japanese) era name (Meiji, Taisho, Showa, Heisei) is read out.

"Year"/"Month"/"Day" or "Year"."Month"."Day" ("Year" = 0 to 9999; "Month" = 1 to 12; "Day" = 1 to 31) Example: 2008/8/1 / 2008/8/01 / 2008.8.1 / 2008.8.01 — "Nisenhachinen hachigatsu tsuitachi"
"H" "Year"/"Month"/"Day" or "H" "Year"."Month"."Day" ("Year" = 0 to 99; "Month" = 1 to 12; "Day" = 1 to 31) Example: H20.8.1 → "Heisei nijunen hachigatsu tsuitachi"

- The above formats for numbers, amount of money, phone numbers, time and date are also used for double-byte characters.
- When amount of money, phone numbers, time or date are read out and the string read out is immediately preceded or followed by any of the characters listed below, the numbers will not be delimited correctly. If you want to have the FOMA terminal read out amount of money, phone numbers, time or date correctly, it is recommended to use a space as the delimiting character before and after the string.
  "0 to 9", "A to Z (upper case)", ":", "￥", "/", ".", "-" (double-byte or single-byte)

■**Symbol**

The FOMA terminal can read out the following symbols when used with numbers.

＄(dollars)→doru	％(percent)→paasento
￥(yen)→en	゜(degrees)→do
℃(degrees)→do	￥(yen)→en
＄(dollars)→doru	％(percent)→paasento
㎜(mm)→miri	㎏(kilograms)→kiro
㎝(cm)→senchi	㎞(meters)→meetoru
㎏(grams)→guramu	㎫(tons)→ton
㎡(ares)→aaru	㎢(hectares)→hekutaaru
㎕(liters)→rittoru	㎾(watts)→watto
㎉(calories)→karorii	㗳(dollars)→doru
㗳(cents)→sento	％(percent)→paasento
㎜(millibars)→miribaaru	㌻(pages)→peeji
㎜(millimeters)→mirimeetoru	㎝(centimeters)→senchimeetoru
㎞(kilometers)→kiromeetoru	㎎(milligrams)→miriguramu
㎏(kilograms)→kiroguramu	㎤(cc)→siisii
㎡(square meters)→heihoumeetoru	

■**Others**

- Alphabetic characters are read out in alphabet reading, but may be read otherwise in certain combinations.
- Depending on the content of a sentence or description (especially geographic names or proper nouns), the FOMA terminal may not read out the sentence or may read it out incorrectly.
- The voice used to read out is different from natural voice. The pronunciation or accent may be difficult to understand in some cases.
- The FOMA terminal separates sentences to read out when there is punctuation marks (periods and commas), line feeds and spaces, except when a period (.) or comma (,) is preceded and/or followed by numbers. When there is no delimiting punctuation in the text, the sentences are separated automatically.
  Depending on the sentences, it may take time before the FOMA terminal starts reading out. The FOMA terminal may read out incorrectly when there are kanji characters. To ensure that the content of the mail is read out correctly, it is

Continued on next page

recommended to ask people you frequently correspond to follow the following guidelines:

- Create message using katakana for nouns, especially and proper nouns such as geographic names and personal names.
- Create message using punctuation marks.

Displaying Mail in the Inbox and Outbox <Inbox/Outbox>

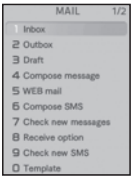
- The FOMA terminal can store up to 500 received i-mode mail and SMS in total and up to 400 sent i-mode mail and SMS in total.
- You can protect up to 500 received mails and 250 sent mails.
- The number of the messages the FOMA terminal can store or protect varies depending on the data size. When data with large file size is stored, the number decreases.

Reading i-mode mail messages

<Example: To read a received mail message>

1 ✉▶"Inbox"▶Select a folder▶Select a mail

The Secret folder is displayed in the folder list screen when the FOMA terminal is in Secret mode or Secret data only mode.



Mail menu

Inbox folder list

Function menu➡p.173

Received mail list

Function menu➡p.175

Received mail detail

Function menu➡p.176

Press ⊡ on the mail detail screen too view the previous or next mail.

NOTE

- On the received mail detail screen, you can have the FOMA terminal read out the mail message.→p.168
- When 2in1 is in B mode, you cannot display the Outbox folder list screen.

Changing the mail character size or list display mode

Changing the mail character size

- Press ⊡ on the mail detail screen for 1 second or longer to change the character size.

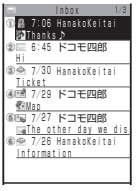
NOTE

- When you change the display mode with the above keypad operation, the settings of "Mail" of "Character size" in "Font" and "Font size" also changes.

Changing the mail list screen display mode (1line+body/2 lines/1 line)

- You can switch among "1line + body", "2 lines" and "1 line" using the "Mail list disp." setting in "Mail Setting" in the Mail menu.

1line+body



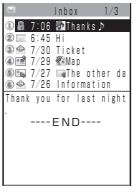
2 lines

1 line

Changing the mail list screen display mode (Name/Address/Subject)

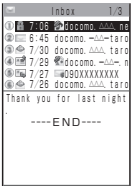
- Press # on the mail detail screen for 1 second or longer to switch the "Subject" "Name" "Address".

<Example: "1 line+body">



Subject

Name



Address

NOTE

- You can also change the display mode by selecting “List setting” from the function menu of the mail list screen, then selecting “Subject”, “Name”, or “Address”.
- The part of Subject/Name/Address may not be displayed properly.

Display light function

- When you open the FOMA terminal, press a key or send or receive an i-mode mail or SMS, the FOMA terminal’s display light is turned on for about 15 seconds (The time for which the backlight stays on varies depending on “Mail/Msg. ring time” setting). However, when an i-mode mail or SMS is displayed, the time for which the backlight stays on varies depending on the length of the message.
- The backlight does not turn on if “Lighting” is set to “OFF” in “Backlight”.

Guide to the mail folder list screens

Inbox folder list

Outbox folder list

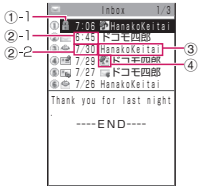
Icon	Description
	Normal folder
	Mail-linked i-αppli folder
	Secret folder

: Contains unread mail

: Folder lock set

: Automatic sorting settings (p.174) set

Guide to the mail list screens



Received mail list

Sent mail list

①Mail status

①-1 Received mail

Icon	Description
	Unread mail
	Read mail
	Read and protected mail
	Forwarded mail
	Replied-to mail

: Protected

①-2 Sent mail

Icon	Description
	Mail to one recipient
	Mail to multiple recipients (broadcast mail)

: Protected

: Failed to send some mails

: Failed to send

②Message sent/received time and date

②-1 The time is displayed for mail sent/received today

②-2 The date is displayed for mail sent/received yesterday or earlier

③Sender/receiver, subject or information

When there is no subject, “No title” is displayed.

④Mail type, attached file information

Icon	Description
	SMS in the FOMA terminal
	SMS in the FOMA card

Continued on next page

Icon	Description
	SMS with SMS report received
	Area Mail
*	Mail to Address B of 2in1
	Time-adjusted mail
	Mail with an attached or pasted melody
	Mail with attached or inserted images
	Mail with an attached i-motion
	Mail with attached ToruCa or ToruCa (detail)
	PDF-attached mail
	Mail with attached Tool data (phonebook, schedule or bookmark)
	Document-attached mail
	Mail with attached Other files
	An i-αppli can be launched from the message body
	An i-αppli cannot be launched from the message body (the mail is moved to the Secret folder)
	Mails sent/received by a mail-linked i-αppli
	Mail with undownloaded attached file →p.166
	Mail with incomplete attached file →p.166
	Mail with undownloadable attached file
	Mail with multiple attached files or mixture of attached files and pasted files
	Mail with multiple pasted data (also displayed when the data is pasted along with i-αppli To)
	Mail with the FOMA card security function (you use the FOMA card different from the one used when the mail is sent/received)

* : Displayed only when the 2in1 is in Dual mode

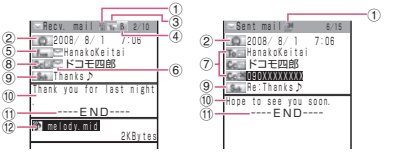
: Attached file is deleted (for ToruCa or Flash movie, also displayed when the attached file is deleted by scanning function)
All the files of multiple files are deleted

: A part of the file of multiple files is deleted

NOTE

- When you view i-mode mail with an attached image in the received mail detail screen, the screen switches between image display and file name display each time you move the frame to the image and press ■ (Select). On the sent mail detail screen, selecting file name display displays images. Press CLR or ☎ to display file names.
- When 2in1 is in A mode or B mode, a mail arrived at the unused address is not displayed.

Guide to the mail detail screens



Received mail detail　　Sent mail detail

①Mail status
Refer to ① of "Guide to the mail list" screen (p.171)

②Mail sent/received time and date

③Recipient type (Received mail)

Icon	Description
To Cc Bcc	The recipient type addressed by the sender→p.157

④Mail address information of the 2in1 setting

Icon	Description
B*	Mail to Address B of 2in1

* : Displayed only when the 2in1 is in Dual mode

⑤Sender (Received mail)

Icon	Description
From From	The name or e-mail address of the sender

: Cannot reply-to

⑥Icon stored in the phonebook
When the mail address or phone number is stored in the phonebook, the icon stored in the phonebook is displayed.

⑦Recipient and recipient type (Sent mail)

Icon	Description
To Cc Bcc To Cc Bcc	The name, e-mail address of the recipient and the recipient type→p.157

: Failed to send

⑧Recipient and recipient type of broadcast mail (Received mail)
Up to 4 recipients can be displayed.

Icon	Description
To Cc To Cc	The names, e-mail addresses of the recipients except yourself and the recipient type for broadcast mail→p.157

: Cannot reply-to

⑨Subject
If there is no subject, "No title" is displayed.
Displays "" at the beginning for received SMS (displays the "" when the SMS is on the FOMA card)
When an SMS report has been received, "" is also displayed.
Displays "Area Mail" when an Area Mail has been received

⑩Message body

⑪Displayed at the end of the message body

⑫Attached file information
The file name and file size are also displayed.

Icon	Description
	Invalid inserted image

* Other than the above icons, the same icons as the list screen may appear in some cases. Refer to "④Mail type, attached file information" in p.171.

NOTE

- In the following cases, the e-mail address is displayed instead of "Name", even when the phone number or e-mail address is stored in the phonebook:
  - When "Restrict dialing" is set and the phone number is not designated in the "Restrict dialing" setting
  - When the FOMA terminal is in Secret data only mode and the phone number or e-mail address is not stored as secret data
  - When the FOMA terminal is not in Secret or Secret data only mode and the phone number or e-mail address is stored as secret data
  - When 2in1 is set to A mode and the phonebook is set to B mode, or the mode is set to B mode and the phonebook is set to A mode.

FUNC Mail folder list screen (p.170, 171)

Add folder……Adds a folder and set the Auto-sort for the new folder. Also, set whether to add the same folder to the Inbox/Outbox.
You can add up to 22 folders.
"Setting Auto-sort"→p.174

Auto-sort→p.174

Edit folder name……Edits the folder name of the added folder. You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.

Folder lock……Sets/Releases the folder lock.→p.112

Sort folder……Selects the position to move to and rearranges the folder.

No. of messages……Displays the number of messages, unread messages and protected messages in all the folders.

Open folder……Displays list of the mails in a folder.

Add shortcut*→p.94

iC trans. all→p.260

Send all Ir data→p.258

CopyAll to microSD→p.248

Delete folder……Deletes a folder.

Delete read*……Deletes all the read mails.

Delete all……Deletes all mails.

* : This function is available only for the Inbox folder list screen.

NOTE

- You cannot delete, sort or rename the folders (Inbox and Outbox) that are already installed on the FOMA terminal at the time of purchase. You cannot use the Auto-sort function with these folders either.

<Add folder>
- When you download a mail-linked i-αppli, an i-αppli mail folder is automatically created (up to 5).

<Sort folder>
- You cannot run Sort folder when only one folder is added.

<No. of messages>
- You cannot check the number of the following i-mode mail or SMS messages.
  - Messages in the Secret folder
  - Messages set not to be displayed in the 2in1 setting
- You cannot check the MessageR/F.

<iC trans. all> <Send all Ir data> <CopyAll to microSD>
- The MessageR/F are not included.

Continued on next page

NOTE

<Delete folder>
- You cannot delete an i-αppli mail folder if there is a corresponding mail-linked i-αppli. You can delete an i-αppli mail folder if there is no corresponding software, but the folder created in the Inbox folder screen or Outbox folder screen is also deleted.
- If you delete a folder that is specified in the "Auto-sort" settings, the automatic sorting setting for that folder is also canceled.

<Delete read> <Delete all>
- The following i-mode mail or SMS messages will not be deleted.
  - Protected messages
  - Messages in the Secret folder
- For Delete all, hidden mail messages are also deleted by 2in1 setting.
- The MessageR/F are not deleted.

Setting Auto-sort

You can sort mail messages into the specified folders by the set criteria such as mail address or subject.

1 Mail folder list screen (pp.170, 171)▶Highlight the destination folder▶✉ (FUNC)▶"Auto-sort"▶Set any item from the following

When the sorting is already set, the setting is displayed. Press ✉ (FUNC) again.

■ When Original lock is set to the Phonebook or mail members

When checking auto-sort-set folder conditions, the group name appears as "Group" even after changed, and the mail member name appears as "Mail member" even after changed.

Address sort……Sets the e-mail address.

- **Look-up address**……Sets the e-mail address by browsing the phonebook or address list.
- **Look-up group**……Sets the group of the phonebook.
- **Look-up member**……Sets the mail member.
- **Enter address**……Sets a mail addresses by entering it.

Subject sort……Sets the subject.

Reply impossible (Send impossible)……Sets an e-mail address to which you cannot reply or you could not send a mail as an Auto-sort criteria.

Sort all……This can only be set for mail-linked i-αppli folders. Sorts all mails into a mail-linked i-αppli folder.

Edit addr/subj……Edits a previously specified e-mail address or mail subject.

List setting……Selects a mail-list format from "Name/Address".

Release……Releases the Auto-sort criteria by selecting "Release this/Release selected/Release all". "About multiple-choice"→p.38

NOTE

- If received or sent mail meets multiple sort criteria, the priority of the Auto-sort settings is assigned as follows.
  ①Sort all ②Subject sort
  ③Reply/Send impossible
  ④Mail address/Phone number
  ⑤Mail member ⑥Phonebook group
- Mail received or sent before the Auto-sort settings are not sorted.
- The mails sent as broadcast message are searched for the sorting criteria in the order of address entered.
- When using 2in1 and setting Auto-sort, select the criteria from "Look-up address (Phonebook,/Sent address/Received address list)", "Look-up member", "Direct input", "Subject sort", "Reply impossible", "Sort all", or "Edit addr/subj".
- The Area Mail is not included for "Address sort", "Subject sort" and "Reply impossible".

<Address sort>
- You can set a total of 700 addresses for automatic sorting (more than one setting is available for 1 folder).

<Address sort (Look-up group)>
- When you set address sort to the mail address stored as secret data and receive mail from the address, the mail is stored in the "Inbox" folder when the FOMA terminal is not in Secret or Secret data only mode and stored in the sorting destination folder when the FOMA terminal is in Secret or Secret data only mode.

<Address sort (Enter address)>
- Ensure that the e-mail address domain (the part that follows the @ symbol) is entered correctly. However, if the address format is "[phone number]@docomo.ne.jp", simply enter the phone number.

<Subject sort>
- If the subject meets the sort criteria for multiple folders, the mail is sorted into the folder closest to the Inbox or Outbox folder.
- You cannot use this function to sort i-mode mail that has no subject entered and is displayed as "No title" even if you set "No title" as a sort criteria.
- You cannot use this option to sort SMS.

<Reply impossible>
- You cannot use this option to sort SMS reports.
- "Reply impossible" can only be set for 1 folder of Inbox.

<Send impossible>
- "Send impossible" can only be set for 1 folder of Inbox.

NOTE

<Sort all>

- You cannot use this option to sort SMS reports or SMS received directly to the FOMA card (UIM).
- "Sort all" can only be set for 1 i-αppli mail folder for received and sent i-αppli mail respectively.

FUNC Mail list screen (pp.170, 171)

Reply[*1]→p.165

Edit[*2]……Edits the recipient, subject or message body of the sent mail. Press [ ] (Send) to send the mail.

Move……Selects from "Move this/Move selected/Move all" and moves the mail to the other folder you select.
"About multiple-choice"→p.38

Search mail……Searches for mail using a specified criteria.

> **Search sender**[*1]**/Search receiver**[*2]……Searches for mail by specifying the mail address from the phonebook mail address list or entering the mail address manually.
>
> **Search subject**……Enters a subject to search.

Display all……Returns the search and sort displays or displays that use filter functions to their original display settings (all Chronological ↑).

Sort……Sorts the mail in a selected criteria.

Filter……Displays only the mails which meet the selected criteria.

Color coding……Sets the color coding for the mail from "Default (black)/Red/Blue". You can also change the color by pressing [ ] (1 second or longer) in the mail list screen.

List setting……Selects a mail-list format from "Subject/Name/Address".

Read all[*1]……Marks all the unread mail in the folder as read.

Protect[*1]……Selects the protecting method from "Protect this/Protect selected/Protect all"[*3].
"About multiple-choice"→p.38

Unprotect[*1]……Selects the unprotecting method from "Unprotect this/Unprotect selected/Unprotect all".
"About multiple-choice"→p.38

Protect ON/OFF[*2]……Protects or unprotects mail.

Unprotect all[*2]……Unprotects all protected mail.

iC transmission→p.259

Send Ir data→p.258

Copy to microSD→p.248

UIM operation……"Moving or copying SMS from the mail screen"→p.255

Mail info[*1]……Displays the information such as sender of the mail.

No. of messages……Displays the total number of mails in the folder.

Store in Center→p.176

Delete……Selects the deleting method from "Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all".
"About multiple-choice"→p.38

- For received mails, you can delete only read mails or SMS reports at once by selecting "Delete read/Delete all SMS-R".

Keep in secret⇔**Put out**[*4]……Select the setting from "Keep this/keep selected/keep all".
"About multiple-choice"→p.38
"Preventing Others from Viewing Data"→p.104

*1: Available only with the received mail list screen.
*2: Available only with the sent mail list screen.
*3: Only available in the Secret folder.
*4: Available only in Secret or Secret data only mode. Unread mail or Area Mail cannot be saved to the Secret folder.

FUNC Unread mail list screen (p.163)

Reply→p.165

List setting……Selects a mail-list format from "Subject/Name/Address".

Protect ON/OFF……Protects or unprotects mail.

Delete this……Deletes one mail.

NOTE

<Search mail>

- You can also search the results of a search.
- You cannot use this function to search i-mode mail that has no subject entered and is displayed as "No title" even if you set "No title" as a criteria for searching by subject.

<Sort> <Filter>

- The sort and filter function can be used together. For example, to view only the unread mail in the received mail list screen in chronological order, select "Chronological ↓ " in the sort menu and then "Unread" in the Filter menu.
- When you exit from the mail list screen, the sort display and filter function are canceled.

<Read all>

- If you view mail with the filter function and then select "Read all", only the currently displayed mail is marked as read.

Continued on next page

NOTE

<Protect ON/OFF>
- A mail that is not displayed by the setting of 2in1 is not targeted for setting of "Protect all" nor "Unprotect all" even if either of them is selected.

<Keep in secret> <Put out>
- A mail that is not displayed by the setting of 2in1 is not targeted for setting of "Keep all" nor "Put out all" even if either of them is selected.

Storing mails at the Data Security Center

You can store i-mode mails and SMS stored in the FOMA terminal at the Data Security Center.

- Data Security Service is a pay service you need to apply for. If you have not subscribed to the service and try to connect to the Data Security Center, the notification screen appears.

1 Mail list screen (pp.161, 170)▶ ✉ (FUNC)▶"Store in Center"▶Use ⊡ to select ☐ (checkbox)▶ i (Finish)

You can select up to 10 mails.

2 Enter your security code▶"YES"

The FOMA terminal connects to the Data Security Center to start saving the mails.

3 i (Finish)

NOTE

- You cannot store SMS stored in the FOMA card at the Data Security Center.
- When saving mails with attached files, the attached files are deleted.
- When saving received mails in which images prohibited to be output from the FOMA terminal are pasted into, these images are deleted.
- The setting of "Color coding" is not saved.

■To restore the mail

The mail data stored at the Data Security Center can be stored on the FOMA terminal from the site of the Data Security Center. For details on how to use, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

FUNC Mail detail screen (pp.170, 172)

Reply[*1*2]→p.165

Reply with quote[*1*2]→p.165

Forward[*1*2]→p.165

Edit[*3]……Edits the recipient, subject or message body of the sent mail. Press i (Send) to send the mail.

Resend[*3]……Resends the message.

Protect ON/OFF……Protects or unprotects mail.

Move……Selects the destination folder to move a mail message to the folder.

Copy……Copies the message body, subject or e-mail address. The copied text can be pasted into the Character entry screens, etc.→p.308

Save address • Add to phonebook→p.166

Save data……"Checking and Saving the File Attached to i-mode Mail"→p.166

Save insert image……Selects the image inserted to the Deco-mail® and saves it on the My picture folder. After saving the image, you can specify whether to set it as the standby screen.

Add shortcut→p.94

Save template……Saves an i-mode mail as a template. →p.160

Refer dictionary……Starts the dictionary.→p.296

Property……Selects an image to display the file name and size of an image inserted into the message in Deco-mail®.

Read out message[*1]→p.168

Disp. SMS report[*3]……Displays the SMS report for an SMS.

iC transmission→p.259

Send Ir data→p.258

Copy to microSD→p.248

UIM operation……"Moving or copying SMS from the mail screen"→p.255

Message scroll (default: 1 line)……Selects the number of scrolling lines in a screen from "1 line/3 lines/5 lines".

Font size (default: Standard)……Selects the font size from "Small/Standard/Large/X-large".→p.93

Delete att. file • Del all att. files……Deletes one or all attached file(s).

Delete……Deletes a mail.

Keep in secret⇔Put out[*4]……"Preventing Others from Viewing Data"→p.104

*1: Available only with the received mail detail screen.
*2: Not available when 2in1 is in B mode.
*3: Available only with the sent mail detail screen.
*4: Available only in Secret or Secret data only mode.

NOTE

<Delete att. file> <Del all att. files>
- You cannot delete the data pasted into the message body or undownloadable file ( ).

Using Mail Records

<Sent address/Received address>

When you send or receive mail, the mail addresses are recorded in the Sent address list or Received address list. You can send mail by selecting an address from these address lists.

- Up to 30 i-mode mail address or SMS phone number entries can be stored in the respective Sent address and Received address lists. However, up to 60 received addresses can be stored if you use 2in1.
- When the Mail box lock is set to Inbox or Outbox, the mail address is not recorded in the address list.

Checking an address list

<Example: To open the received address screen>

1 On the standby screen▶ (1 second or longer)

The "Received address screen (list)" appears.

■ **To display the sent address screen (list)**

(1 second or longer)

■ **Displayed icon on the Address screen (list)**

/: i-mode mail transmission successful/failed

/: SMS transmission successful/failed

Received address (list)

Function menu➡p.177

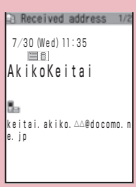
2 Select a sender

The "Received address screen (detail)" appears.

■ **Displayed icon on the Address screen (detail)**

/: i-mode mail transmission successful/failed

/: SMS transmission successful/failed



Received address (detail)

Function menu➡p.177

3 Check the details

NOTE

- Turning the FOMA terminal off or deleting sent or received mail messages does not delete the entries in the address lists. You should delete the record entries themselves to prevent others from viewing them.

NOTE

- When 2in1 is set to A mode or B mode, up to 30 message histories arrived at or sent from the used address are displayed. However, if set to B mode, the Sent address list screen cannot be displayed.
- When 2in1 mode is set to Dual mode, "B" icon appears in Number B/Address B received records.

FUNC Address screen (list/detail) (p.177)

Add to phonebook……Adds the mail address to the phonebook.→p.166

Look-up phonebook……Displays the detail screen of the phonebook in which the mail address is stored.

Add shortcut→p.94

Compose message*……Composes an i-mode mail with the mail address set as the recipient.

Dialing……Uses the Phone To/AV Phone To function to make a voice/videophone call for the phone number in the phonebook entry that contains the e-mail address.→p.147

Received calls*2……Switches to the Received calls record screen.→p.53

Redial*3……Switches to the Redial screen.→p.53

Big font⇔Standard font*4……Switches the font size between "Big font/Standard font".→p.93

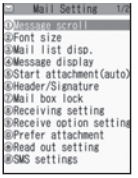
Delete……Selects the deleting method from "Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all".
"About multiple-choice"→p.38

*1: When an SMS is selected, this option changes to "Compose SMS", which composes an SMS with the phone number pasted in as the recipient.
"Composing and Sending SMS"→p.182
*2: This function is available only for the received address screens (list/detail).
*3: This function is available only for the sent address screens (list/detail). If the Sent address screen appears from Dialed calls, "Dialed calls" appears.
*4: Only available on the Address screen (list).

Setting up the FOMA Terminal Mail Functions <Mail Setting>

1 ✉▶"Mail settings"

The "Mail Setting" screen appears.



Mail Setting

2 Select any item:

Message scroll (default: 1 line)……Selects the number of lines that are scrolled when you press ⎙ on the mail detail screen, from "1 line/3 lines/5 lines".

Font size (default: Standard)……Selects the font size displayed on the mail detail screen from "Small/Standard/Large/X-large". →p.93

Mail list disp. (default: 1line+body)……Sets the number of lines and item to be displayed on the mail list screen. Select the lines to display from "2 lines/1 line/1 line+body" and the format from "Subject/Name/Address".

Message display……Sets the position from where to start displaying the message body.

- **From header** (default)……Displays the message from the headers onwards (date and time received/sent).
- **From message**……Displays the message from the message body onwards.

Start attachment (auto) (default: ON)……Sets whether to automatically play the attached or pasted melody when opening an i-mode mail.

Header/Signature →p.179

Mail box lock →p.112

Receiving setting……Sets whether to give display priority to the receiving and received result screen if a mail, MessageR/F is received while you are using the FOMA terminal.

- **Alarm preferred** (default)……Displays the receiving and received result screen.
- **Operation preferred**……Gives priority to the screen being used rather than displaying the receiving and received result screen.

Receive option setting (default: OFF)……Sets whether to receive mails selectively (ON) or automatically(OFF).

Prefer attachment (default: all selected)……Selects the attached file type to receive at the time you receive the mail from "Image/i-motion/Melody/PDF/ToruCa/Tool data (Phonebook, Schedule, Bookmark)/Other (including documents)". "About multiple-choice" →p.38

Read out setting

- **Select voice** (default: Female 1)……Sets the type of voice used for reading out mail.
- **Read out received mail** (default: ON)……Sets whether to allow the mail to be read out or not when it is received.

SMS settings

- **SMS report request** (detail: OFF)……Sets whether to request an SMS report after sending an SMS.
- **SMS validity period** (default: 3 days)……Selects the storage period of the sent SMS kept at the SMS center from "None/1 day/2 days/3 days". When set to "None", SMS messages are not stored at the SMS center.
- **SMS input character** (default: Japanese (70char.))……Sets the SMS body character input method. When set to Japanese, you can enter up to 70 characters regardless of double-byte or single-byte. When set to English, you can enter up to 160 single-byte alphanumeric characters.

Area Mail setting →p.182

Check settings……Allows you to check the settings specified in "Mail Setting".

Reset……Resets the settings specified in "Mail Setting" to the default settings.

NOTE

- When 2in1 is in B mode, you cannot select "Mail Setting".

<Font size> <Mail list disp.>

- When set to "X-large", the "Mail list disp." setting is automatically set to "2 lines". When "Mail list disp." is set to "1 line" or "1 line+body" while Font size is set to "X-large", automatically switch it setting to "Large".

<Receiving setting>

- When you are receiving/sending a voice call, during a voice call or using functions such as an i-αppli or the camera, the receiving and received result screen may not appear when you receive mail or Message R/F even when set to "Alarm preferred".
- When 2in1 is in A mode and a mail arrives only at the mail address of B mode, the receiving screen appears, but the received result screen does not appear even when set to "Alarm preferred".

NOTE

<Receive option setting>

- This option applies to i-mode mail only. SMS, MessageR/F are received automatically regardless of this setting.

<Prefer attachment>

- To check the contents of the file, you have to download the file manually afterwards. →p.166
- When "Other" is deselected, documents are not received.

Editing Headers, Signatures and Quotation Marks

By storing your header or signature, you can automatically paste it into an i-mode message. You can also edit the quotation marks when you reply to received mail by quoting the original message.

1 Mail Setting screen (p.178)▶"Header/Signature"

2 "Edit header" or "Edit signature"▶ ■ (Edit)

■ To edit the quotation marks

▶"Edit Quotation marks"

3 Enter the header or signature▶ i (Finish)

You can enter up to 5,000 double-byte or 10,000 single-byte characters for the header and signature.

You can decorate the header or signature. →p.158

■ To enter the quotation marks

▶Enter the quotation marks

You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.

■ When you add the header or signature automatically

▶"Insert setting"▶Select the checkbox of "Header" and/or "Signature"▶ i (Finish)

Deselect the checkbox when you do not add it automatically.

NOTE

- Even if you select the "Insert setting" checkbox, the header or signature is not pasted into i-mode mail composed using Template. Insertion is also unavailable when sending i-αppli mail with mail-linked i-αppli.

Specifying which items are checked for in Center inquiries

<Set check new messages>

You can specify which items are checked for "Check new messages" whether to check for "Mail" (i-mode mail), "MessageR" and/or "MessageF".

1 MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"i-mode common set"▶"Set check new messages"

2 Use ⊡ to select ☐ (checkbox)▶ i (Finish)

A deselected checkbox (☐) denotes that the FOMA terminal will not check for that item.

When You Receive a Message

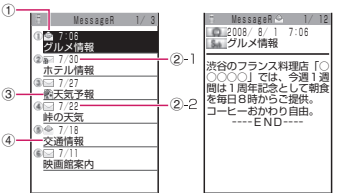
When the FOMA terminal is in a service area, MessageR/F are automatically sent to the FOMA terminal from the i-mode Center. →p.162

- You can store up to 100 MessageR/F respectively on the FOMA terminal (the number of messages you can actually store may be reduced depending on the file size).
- Perform "Check new messages" when you receive the messages kept in i-mode center. →p.164

NOTE

- If the storage capacity for messages is full when you receive a message, read messages are deleted from the oldest one (unread or protected messages are not deleted).
- When the FOMA terminal cannot receive any more messages (because it is full with unread and protected messages), R (red)/ F (red) appears (R/F (red), R/F (R: red), R/F (F: red) may appear to display the 2 conditions simultaneously). Read the unread messages or unprotect the unnecessary messages.
- When the i-mode center keeps Messages, R/F appears. Perform "Check new messages" to receive messages. When the messages kept at the i-mode center are full, R (red)/ F (red) appears.
- Received MessageR/F are not automatically displayed when displaying other than the standby screen, an i-αppli is running, Public mode (Driving mode) is set, Dial lock is set, or when Original lock is set to "i-mode" or "Mail disp."

How to view the MessageR/F screens



List (2-line display) Detail

①Message status

Icon	Description
	Unread Message
	Read Message
	Read and protected Message

: Protected

②Message received time and date

②-1 The time is displayed for Message received today

②-2 The date is displayed for Message received yesterday or earlier

③Attached file information

<List screen>

Icon	Description
	Message with an attached or pasted melody
	Message with an attached image
	Message with an attached ToruCa
	Message with multiple attached or pasted data

: One or more data is invalid

: Invalid data

: Deleted by the scanning function

<Detail screen>

Icon	Description
	Pasted melody

: Invalid data

④Subject

Viewing Messages in the Message Box <MessageR/F>

- When a MessageR/F from the i-mode Center arrives on the FOMA terminal, the "R" or "F" icon appears at the top of the screen.

1 ✉▶"Inbox"▶"MessageR" or "MessageF"

The "Message list" screen appears.

Message list

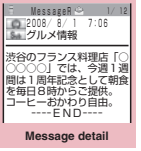
Function menu➡p.180

2 Select a message

The "Message detail" screen appears.

To display the next or previous message in the message detail screen, press ✉.

In the message detail screen, press CLR to return to the message list screen.



Message detail

Function menu➡p.181

FUNC Message list screen (p.180)

Display all……The original display (all Chronological ↑) is reverted from a sorted or filtered display.

Sort……Sorts the messages in a selected criteria.

Filter……Displays only the messages which meet the selected criteria.

Protect ON/OFF……Protects or unprotects MessageR/F.

Unprotect all……Unprotects all the protected MessageR/F.

No. of messages……Displays the number of stored MessageR/F, unread messages and protected messages.

Delete……Selects the deleting method from "Delete this/ Delete selected/Delete read/Delete all".

"About multiple-choice"→p.38

- When selecting "Delete read", you can delete only the read messages at once.

NOTE

<Sort> <Filter>

- The sort display and filter function can be used together. For example, if you want to display the unread messages in chronological order, select "Chronological ↓" in the sort menu, then select "Unread" in the filter menu.
- When you exit from the MessageR/F list screen, the sort and filter are canceled.

FUNC Message detail screen (p.180)

Add to phonebook……Adds the phone number and e-mail address displayed on MessageR/F to the phonebook. →p.70

Save melody……Saves a melody attached to MessageR/F.

Save image……Saves an image attached to or inserted in MessageR/F.

Save ToruCa……Saves a ToruCa attached to MessageR/F.

Protect ON/OFF……Protects or unprotects MessageR/F.

Delete……Deletes the MessageR/F.

NOTE

<Save melody>

- Some saved melodies may not play correctly.

What is Early Warning "Area Mail"?

A service that you can receive the urgent earthquake news flash, etc. delivered by the Meteorological Agency.

- Area Mail is available without subscribing to i-mode.
- To receive Area Mail, the receiving setting is required. →p.182
  In the following situations, area mails are not received regardless of this setting.
  - During international roaming
  - Omakase Lock is set
  - When Self mode is set
- Area Mails may not be received when:
  - During a videophone call
  - Data communication in progress

When You Receive Early Warning "Area Mail"

<Receive Area Mail>

When the FOMA terminal is in a service area, the Area Mail is automatically received.

- When you receive Area Mail, the "" icon appears at the top of the screen.
- Received Area Mail is stored in Inbox.
- You can store up to 100 Area Mails on the FOMA terminal.
- The Area Mail ring tone sounds in the pattern and color set in "Mail receiving" under "Illumination set". →p.92

NOTE

- The vibration pattern links to the beep tone/ring tone regardless of the "Vibrator" setting.
- If the storage capacity for Area Mails is full when you receive an Area Mail, Area Mails are deleted from the older read mails first and then the older unread ones in order.

When you receive the Area Mail for the earthquake early warning

When you receive the Area Mail, you are notified on the description screen with beep and vibration.
The screen returns to the previous screen, when you press any of [■], [CLR] and [☎].

- The beep tone volume is fixed to "Level 6" and cannot be adjusted. However, you can set the ring time for beep or the beep ON/OFF with setting for "Beep setting" in the "Area Mail setting".
  The ring tone for the Area Mail sounds when the beep sound setting is set to "OFF".
- When Manner mode is set, the beep is determined by "Manner mode set".
- Vibrator pattern links to the beep while in beep sounding, and follows the "Mail" setting under "Vibrator" while in incoming mail sounding. If an earthquake early warning is received, the vibrator always works regardless of the manner mode setting.

When you receive the Area Mail other than the earthquake early warning

When you receive the Area Mail, you are notified on the "Receive Area Mail" or the "Description Screen", then notifies them with a beep for the Area Mail (the screen is specified by the provider).
The "Receive Area Mail" screen returns to the previous screen, if no operation is performed or you press any key. The description screen returns to the previous screen, when you press any key [■], [CLR] and [☎].

Continued on next page

NOTE

- The volume of the ring tone is set to the same volume set at "Mail" of "Ring volume".
- The description screen or "Receive Area Mail" screen may not appear when you receive the Area Mail during using functions such as an i-αppli or the camera. If an earthquake early warning is received, the vibrator always works regardless of the manner mode setting.

Setting Early Warning "Area Mail" <Area Mail setting>

Make the settings for receiving Area Mail.

1 Mail Setting screen (p.178)▶"Area Mail setting"

"Area Mail setting" screen appears.

Area Mail setting

2 Select any item:

Receive setting (default: No)……Sets whether to receive the Area Mail.

- The confirmation message asking whether to use Area Mail appears before setting, read the given notes carefully and select "YES"/"NO".

Beep setting

Beep setting (default: ON)……Turns the beep ON/OFF.

Beep time (default: 10 seconds)……Sets the beep time between 01 and 30 seconds.

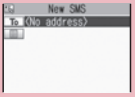
Receive entry……Registers "Area Mail name" (any name) and "Message ID" (provided by the service provider) of information you want to receive except early warning. Select "<Not recorded>" at the "Receive entry" screen, and enter "Area Mail name" and "Message ID" after you enter your security code. The urgent news flash is sent regardless of the settings of Receive entry.

Composing and Sending SMS <Compose SMS/Send>

- Your SMS address is your "subscriber mobile phone number".
- This service allows you to exchange text messages with subscribers to overseas carriers other than DOCOMO. For information on the supported country and the supported overseas carriers, refer to the DOCOMO website.

1 ✉▶"Compose SMS"

The "New SMS" screen appears.



New SMS

Function menu➡p.183

2 "To <No address>"▶Enter an address

Select the mail address input method to enter the address. Sets the e-mail address by browsing the phonebook, received address list or entering text directly→p.156

■ **If the recipient is using an overseas carrier other than DOCOMO**

▶Enter + (0 (1 second or longer)), the country code, the other party's mobile phone number

If the mobile phone number begins with zero (0), omit the zero.

You can also send SMS by entering "010", the country code, the other party's mobile phone number in this order. (To reply to received SMS from overseas, enter "010".)

3 "▤"▶Enter the message body

The numbers and types of characters that can be entered are as specified in the "SMS input character" settings. When set to "Japanese", you can enter up to 70 characters regardless of double-byte or single-byte. When set to "English", you can enter up to 160 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols. Spaces are also counted in the same way as characters.

4 (Send)

An animation is displayed while the SMS is being sent.

Editing sent and unsent SMS→pp.175, 176

NOTE

- You cannot send SMS to the entered address when:
  - The address contains the characters other than numbers, "✱" or "#"
  - The address contains "+" except for the head of the address
  - The address contains a space
- Depending on the signal quality, types of characters or device of the other party, the recipient may not be able to display the text correctly.
- Even when "Caller ID Notification" is set to "OFF", your caller ID is provided to the recipient during SMS transmission.
- The line feed symbol is counted as 2 characters in Japanese input mode and as 1 character in English input mode.
- You cannot send an SMS from the additional number of multi number. Set the multi number setting to the basic number.
- When 2in1 is in B mode, you cannot compose and send SMS.

FUNC New SMS screen (p.182)

Send……Sends an SMS.

Preview……Allows you to check the SMS recipient and message before sending it.

Save→p.161

SMS report req.* (detail: OFF)……Sets whether to request an SMS report after sending an SMS.

SMS valid. per.* (default: 3 days)……Selects the storage period of the sent SMS kept at the SMS center from "None/1 day/2 days/3 days". When set to "None", the SMS is resent and deleted when set time elapses.

SMS input char.*……Sets the SMS body character input method.

- **Japanese** (default)……You can enter up to 70 characters regardless of double-byte or single-byte.
- **English**……You can enter up to 160 single-byte alphanumeric characters.

Erase message……Only the message body is deleted.

Delete……Deletes the SMS being edited.

* : This function menu is only valid for the current SMS. Set in the "Mail Setting" (p.178) if you want to keep the setting to all SMS.

● SMS reports <SMS report req.>

SMS reports are the mail to notify you that the other party has received SMS. You can check SMS reports in the Inbox or in the "Disp. SMS report" in the function menu of the sent SMS detail screen. SMS reports are indicated by "SMS report" in the subject line.

When You Receive an SMS <Receive SMS>

When the FOMA terminal is in a service area, SMS is automatically sent to the FOMA terminal from the SMS Center.

- The operations when SMS is received is same as the operations when i-mode mail is received. Also, the storage capacity and the operation when the storage capacity for received mails becomes full are the same as i-mode mail.→p.162
- SMS in the received mail list screen, the beginning of the message is displayed as the subject.

NOTE

- If you receive Short Mail sent from a mova terminal, etc., the sender's phone number is displayed. If the caller ID is not provided, the reason is displayed.
- If a received SMS includes double-byte characters that are not listed in the Kuten code list, those characters are displayed as blanks (spaces). For the Kuten code list, refer to the PDF format "Kuten Code List" in the provided CD-ROM.
- Pressing ■ (Select) while the sender of the current SMS is highlighted allows you to make a voice or videophone call to that number, compose SMS or select an image for videophone (Phone To, AV Phone To, and Mail To function).→p.147

Forwarding and replying to received SMS

You can forward SMS and send a reply to the sender. →p.165

- You cannot enter a subject.

NOTE

- You cannot reply to an SMS when the sender has withheld his or her caller ID (User unset) or is sending from a pay phone (Payphone) or a phone that does not support caller ID notification (Not supported).
- Even if you reply to or forward an SMS on the FOMA card (UIM), the "" remains on the received mail list screen and received mail detail screen and the ""/"" icon does not appear.
- When 2in1 is in B mode or Dual mode, you cannot reply an SMS sent to Number B.

Checking for SMS <Check new SMS>

The SMS that are not received by the FOMA terminal are kept at the SMS Center. You can receive the kept SMS by checking new SMS.

- SMS are kept in the following cases:
  - When the FOMA terminal is turned off
  - When " " is displayed
  - When the Inbox is full
  - When Self mode is set

1 ✉ ▶ **"Check new SMS"**

"SMS Checking" appears while you check for new SMS. Press ■ (Select) after checking for new SMS. The automatic receiving starts if the center keeps any SMS.
The automatic receiving may not start immediately after inquiry.

Specifying the SMS center setting <SMS center selection>

- Refer to the "SMS settings" (p.178) in the "Mail Setting" screen about the SMS settings other than the SMS center.

* There is normally no need to change this setting.

Use this setting to specify whether the FOMA terminal uses the DOCOMO SMS Center or another provider's SMS center for SMS.

1 MENU ▶ **"SETTINGS"** ▶ **"i-mode common set"** ▶ **"SMS center selection"** ▶ **Select any item:**

DoCoMo……Uses the DOCOMO SMS Center.

User setting……Enters SMS center's address, then selects from "International/Unknown" to use the other SMS center.

Reset……Deletes the "User setting" data and resets the setting to "DoCoMo".

NOTE

- If the entered SMS Center address includes "#" or "＊", you cannot select "International".

i-αppli

What is an i-αppli? 186
Downloading i-αppli from Sites 186
Launching an i-αppli 187
Pre-installed Software 190
Launching i-αppli Automatically 197
Launching an i-αppli from a Site or Mail ..... i-αppli To 197
Setting the i-αppli Standby Screen ..... Set i-αppli stand-by 198
Organizing i-αppli 199

What is an i-αppli?

Downloading an i-αppli from a site enables you to use i-mode terminal in more convenient. Some i-αppli allow you to store data from the i-αppli directly into the phonebook or your schedule, and Some i-αppli linked to Data box allow you to save or download images. As the FOMA terminal supports mega i-αppli with large capacity, you can enjoy high-resolution 3D games or long roll-playing games.

- For details on i-αppli, refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version”.

Downloading i-αppli from Sites

You can download software from an i-mode site and run the software on your FOMA terminal.

- Up to 1M-byte i-αppli can be downloaded. Up to 200 i-αppli can be stored. The maximum number of software applications that can be saved varies depending on the data size. The number includes partly downloaded i-αppli.

1 Select software

Press [■] (Select) when the “Completed” message appears. For the software that is immediately launched from the site, the software starts up without displaying a completion message.

■ To cancel data downloading in progress

▶During downloading▶[■] (Cancel) or [CLR]

■ When the software setting screen appears

▶Set the software▶“YES”

Software settings→p.188

2 “YES”

The downloaded software is launched.

■ Not to launch the software

▶“NO”

Downloading Mail-linked i-αppli

- When you download a mail-linked i-αppli, an i-αppli mail folder is automatically created in the inbox or Outbox folder. The folder names are assigned by the downloaded mail-linked i-αppli and cannot be changed. The FOMA terminal can store up to 5 mail-linked i-αppli.
- Mail sent and received using a mail-linked i-αppli is automatically sorted into the dedicated folders created when that mail-linked i-αppli was downloaded. You can also manually sort received mails.
- You cannot download mail-linked i-αppli in the following cases:
  - If there are already 5 dedicated folders for mail-linked i-αppli
  - If there is already saved a mail-linked i-αppli that uses the same folder
  - Mail box lock is set for Inbox/Outbox

NOTE

- To restore deleted software that had been pre-installed, download from “PlayNow” by SO.
  “iMenu”▶“メニューリスト”▶“ケータイ電話メーカー ”▶“PlayNow by SO”
  QR code on the right is also available to select the displayed URL and access the site.
- Some i-αppli software automatically opens communication after being downloaded. You can set your terminal not to automatically communicate by using “Network set” in “Software setting”.
- If you download an i-αppli that uses the terminal data (the stored information or mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacture numbers) or an i-αppli DX, a message appears notifying that the i-αppli uses the terminal data. When you select “YES”, your terminal information is sent to the IP (information service provider) via the internet and may be disclosed to the third party as a result.
- Depending on the data storage capacity of the IC card, you may not be able to download Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli even when there is capacity available in the software storage area. Follow the confirmation screen, delete the displayed software and download again. You may not be able to delete the software depending on the software type you are going to download. Depending on the software, the software itself is deleted after the software is launched and data in the IC card is deleted.
- When 2in1 is set to B mode, the activation confirmation screen may not appear after download, depending on the i-αppli.

Viewing i-αppli information during downloading <Disp. Software info>

You can specify whether the software information is displayed for checking when downloading software.

1 [MENU]▶“SETTINGS”▶“i-αppli settings”▶“Disp. Software info”▶“Display”

■ Not to check information

▶“Not display”

Launching an i-αppli

Launching an i-αppli

1 **[i] (1 second or longer)**

The "Software list" screen appears at the bottom of the screen.

Software list

Function menu➡p.188

■ **To search i-αppli by i-mode**

▶"Search by i-mode"▶ "YES"

Illustrations Dick Bruna © copyright Mercis bv, 1953-2008 www.miffy.com

2 **Select software**

When you launch the software, "[icon]" or "[icon]" appears at the bottom of the screen.

Pre-installed software→p.190

Quitting an i-αppli

1 **[CLR] (1 second or longer) or [icon]▶ "YES"**

NOTE

- If you receive a voice or videophone call while i-αppli is active, the software is paused. The software screen reappears when the call ends. However, the setting of "V-phone while packet" applies to videophone during i-αppli communication.
- The i-αppli mail used with mail-linked i-αppli may not be displayed correctly.
- You can save the data you use (i-αppli data (microSD)) to the microSD card depending on the software.
- Some i-αppli allows you to use the Phone To/AV Phone To or Web To function from the i-αppli. However, you cannot use these functions from the i-αppli standby screen. (You can use these functions when an i-αppli is activated.)
- Images used in i-αppli* and data you enter may be automatically sent to the server via the Internet.
  * : Images used in i-αppli refers to images shot by the camera activated by a camera-linked i-αppli, images retrieved using an i-αppli Infrared data exchange or iC communication function, images downloaded by an i-αppli from an i-mode site or website or images loaded by an i-αppli from Data box.

NOTE

- If the memory used to store trace information is full, the oldest entry is overwritten.
- Some i-αppli software may not make sounds.
- If the camera is activated from an i-αppli, the shot images are saved and used as part of the i-αppli.
- You can use an i-αppli to activate the Bar code reader and read JAN codes and QR codes. The read data are used by the software.
- With some software applications, the IP (information service provider) may access software stored on your FOMA terminal and directly disable the use of the software. In this case, you can no longer launch, upgrade or set the software as the standby screen. You can only delete the software or view the software information. To use the software again, you have to contact the IP and have them send an instruction to re-enable the software.
- With some software applications, the IP (information service provider) may send data to software stored on your FOMA terminal.
- When an IP (information service provider) sends a disable or re-enable instruction or other data to software stored on your FOMA terminal, the "[icon]" icon flashes. No communication charges are applied in this case.
- When 2in1 is set to B mode or Dual mode, you may not be able to launch, operate or set an i-αppli depending on the i-αppli.
- You cannot launch an i-αppli:
  - While an image is edited
  - While an i-motion or Chaku-Uta Full® is downloaded
- Some software is displayed on fullscreen, and the remaining battery icon or the signal strength icon may not be displayed.

● Motion tracking

The FOMA terminal supports "motion tracking" that operates i-αppli using camera recognition technology (by waving or shaking the FOMA terminal).

- The function may not be available in the following cases:
  - The camera lens is dirty
  - Clothes and background colors are similar
  - Background changes quickly, e.g. when in transit
  - The location is dark or too bright

■ Warning

- Motion tracking i-αppli is a game that you play by tilting or shaking the FOMA terminal. Shaking the terminal may hit a person, thing, etc. and result in an accident or damage. When playing the game, firmly grip the FOMA terminal, do not shake it too much, and confirm safety around.

FUNC Software list screen (p.187)/ IC card content screen (p.202)

Software setting……Specifies the software settings. Press [i] (Finish) to finish the setting operation.

Stand-by display→p.198

Network set……Sets whether to communicate when an i-αppli is launched. When "Check every start" is selected, you can select whether to communicate every time you launch an i-αppli.

Stand-by net……Sets whether the i-αppli set as standby screen communicates.

Icon info……Specifies whether the use of unread mail or message icon information is permitted when an i-αppli is running.

Change mld./img.……Specifies whether to allow the ring tones for phone calls, mail and messages, images such as those used in the standby screen or when mail is sent or received or menu icon to be changed when an i-αppli DX is running. When "Check every change" is set, you can select whether to change the ring tone or image every time an i-αppli attempt to change such item automatically.

See P.book/hist.……Sets whether to allow the application to look up the phonebook, the latest Dialed and Received calls records, and the latest unread mail automatically when an i-αppli DX is launched.

Program guide……Sets whether to use the software as program guide i-αppli to activate by pressing [ch] (EPG) on the 1seg screen (p.210). Downloaded program guide i-αppli can also be set. "Gガイド番組表リモコン" (G-GUIDE EPG Remote Control) is set at the time of purchase.

Power saver……Sets whether to set the Power saver during i-αppli is activated. Sets whether to pause the i-αppli when the FOMA terminal is folded during i-αppli is activated, or sets whether to pause the i-αppli following the setting of "Backlight " in "Settings" when the FOMA terminal is not operated during i-αppli is activated.

Software info→p.189

Upgrade→p.199

List setting……Selects the list display style for i-αppli from "Title image+icon/Icon/Software name".

Set i-αppli To→p.197

Auto-start time→p.197

Add shortcut icon→p.94

Move to microSD……Moves one i-αppli or i-αppli data in the FOMA terminal to the microSD card.
"Displaying the i-αppli data in the microSD card"→p.199

Memory info……Displays the amount of the stored i-αppli.

Delete……Selects the deleting method from "Delete this/ Delete selected/Delete all".
"About multiple-choice"→p.38

NOTE

<Software setting (Network set)>
- If you specify "OFF", note that you may not be able to receive timely information.

<Software setting (Icon info)>
- If you set this function to "ON", as information about whether there are unread messages and mail, icons for in/out of service area, the battery level and the status of manner mode are sent to the IP (information service provider) via the Internet in the same way as your mobile phone/FOMA card (UIM) manufacturer numbers, there is a possibility that the information may be disclosed to the third party.
- If this function is set to "OFF", some i-αppli that require the icon information may not work.

<Software setting (Program guide key set)>
- When "No" is selected, a message appears asking whether to release the setting. When "Yes" is selected, the pre-installed "Gガイド番組表リモコン" (G-GUIDE EPG Remote Control) is set.
- This can only be set for 1seg-linked i-αppli DX whose "Program guide key "i-αppli To"" in "Software info" is set to "ON".

<Software setting (Power saver)>
- When "After folded" is set to "ON", the software is paused when the FOMA terminal is folded. Note that you may not be able to receive timely information.
- When "Timer" is set to "ON", the software is paused following the setting of "Backlight " in "Settings" when FOMA terminal is not operated during i-αppli is activated. Note that you may not be able to receive timely information.

<Move to microSD>
- When i-αppli on the FOMA terminal (Phone) is moved to the microSD card, the data of i-αppli on the FOMA terminal (Phone) is also moved to the microSD card.
- Mail-linked i-αppli folder in the FOMA terminal is not deleted even if the mail-linked i-αppli is moved to the microSD card.
- Use "Software info" (p.189) to check whether the i-αppli can be saved to the microSD card.

NOTE

<Delete>

- When deleting a mail-linked i-αppli, a message appears asking if you also delete the corresponding dedicated folder for the mail-linked i-αppli. Select "NO" to delete only the software and select "YES" to delete the folder at the same time. However, even when you select "YES", you cannot delete the folder dedicated for the mail-linked i-αppli if it is being used, if the folder is locked, or if the folder contains a protected mail.
- For some Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli, the software itself is deleted after the data in the IC card is deleted. After selecting "Delete this" for this kind of software, launch and delete the data in the IC card following the confirmation screen, then delete the software itself. Since "Delete selected" or "Delete all" cannot launch the software, delete the data before deleting the software.
- Some Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli cannot be deleted.
- When 2in1 is in B mode, some i-αppli cannot be deleted.

Adjusting the volume of i-αppli

<i-αppli vol.>

You can adjust the volume of i-αppli.

1 **MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"i-αppli settings"▶"i-αppli vol."**

2 **Adjust the volume**

NOTE

- You can set the volume depending on the software. However, when "i-αppli vol." is set to "Silent", there is no sound regardless of the volume setting of the software.
- When Manner mode is set, the volume of the i-αppli is set to the Manner mode setting.

Checking the information of i-αppli

1 **Software list screen (p.187)▶ (FUNC)▶"Software info"▶Check the software information**

NOTE

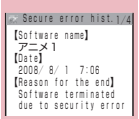
- The software name displayed by this function cannot be changed.
- On the software list screen, software types and settings can be checked by the following icons.
  - : i-αppli DX
  - : Mail-linked i-αppli
  - : "Auto-start time" is set
  - : "Set i-αppli stand-by" is set
  - : "Auto-start time" and "Set i-αppli stand-by" are set
  - : "i-αppli To setting" can be set
  - : "Set i-αppli stand-by" can be set
  - : "i-αppli To setting" and "Set i-αppli stand-by" can be set
  - SSL : Software downloaded from an SSL-compatible page
  - SD : Software whose data can be saved to the microSD card→p.200
  - : Partially downloaded i-αppli
  - IC : Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli→p.202
- When you select partly downloaded i-αppli ( ) or i-αppli only with management information ( ) on the "Software list" screen (p.187) or "IC card content" screen (p.202), you can download the rest of the data.

Checking the security error history

When an i-αppli or i-αppli DX attempts to launch a function that is not permitted to run, a security error occurs and the details of the error are recorded in the security error history.

1 **MENU▶"I-APPLI"▶"i-αppli action info"▶"Security error history"**

The "Security error history" screen appears.



Security error history

Function menu➡p.190

2 **Check the details of the security errors**

FUNC **Security error history screen (p.189)**

Copy info……Copies the security error details.

Delete info……Deletes the security error details.

Launching software from active software

Activate software from the currently active software. Downloading software that launches the specified software enables you to launch that software without returning to the software list screen.

- If the software to be launched is not specified, specify the software.
- If the software to be launched is specified but is not stored on the FOMA terminal, you must download the software beforehand.

1 Select an item for launching software

Pre-installed Software

10 applications are pre-installed at the time of purchase.

- Note that looking at the display for extended periods of time may cause eye strain.

モバイルGoogleマップ (Mobile Google map)

Enjoy interactive maps, aerial photos and rich shopping store/service information. Zoom in/out and scrolling are available. You can look up detailed maps or local information on 16 or more countries over the world including United States and Europe.

- For first time use, agree with the terms of service.

1 Software list screen (p.187)▶"モバイルGoogleマップ" (Mobile Google map)

■ **To exit**
▶✉ (メニュー (Menu))▶"終了" (Exit)

■ **To see how to play**
▶✉ (メニュー (Menu))▶"ヘルプ" (Help)

©2008 Google - Map data
©2008 Geocentre Consulting, NFGIS, Zenrin, Europa Technologie

デコ絵つくーる® (deco-e maker®)

Clip text, face, etc. out of pictures taken with Camera and edit them to use for Deco-mail®.

1 Software list screen (p.187)▶"デコ絵つくーる" (deco-e maker)

■ **To exit**
▶✉ (終了 (Exit))▶"はい" (YES)

■ **To mute**
▶"サウンド：オン" (Sound: On)

■ **To see how to play**
▶"ヘルプ" (Help)

はじめてのおつかい for SO

Shopping game to buy requested things. Cooperate with fellows to enjoy shopping.

1 Software list screen (p.187)▶"はじめてのおつかい"

■ **To exit**
▶ℹ (終了 (Exit))

■ **To mute**
▶✉ (♪○)

■ **To see how to play**
▶"ヘルプ" (Help)

Illustrations Dick Bruna
© copyright Mercis bv, 1953-2008
www.miffy.com

Map i-αppli

"地図アプリ" (Map i-αppli) is i-αppli that you can get the confirmation at current location with Open i-area, get a map you specify or find the route.
You can use transfer guide easily through voice input.

- Packet communications charges apply for use. For this software, use of Pake-hodai/Pack-hodai Full is recommended.
- To restore this software after deletion, download from "ｉエリアー周辺情報ー" (i-area -Surrounding area information-).
- Not available if 2in1 is in the B mode.
- We are not liable for accuracy and immediacy of the map and route information.
- During driving, a person other than the driver must operate the software.

● Basic service and additional service

This software provides the basic service and additional service.

Basic service: Service provided by DOCOMO free of charge

Additional service: Pay service provided by ZENRIN DataCom

The additional services other than traffic information are available free of charge for 90 days from the first launch of this software.
To use additional services thereafter, membership registration (charged) for "ゼンリン地図＋ナビ" (ZENRIN Map + Navi) provided by ZENRIN DataCom is necessary.
If you register membership during the use of this software, you need not download the software again. This software can be used as it is.

Menu	Description	91st day and later
地図 (Map)	• Use Open i-area or enter a keyword, address, phone number, etc. to view the current location map. • Enter an address by voice to view a map easily.	Free
	• Check the map of the location stored in this software or the server, or the location you previously searched. • Saving location into the server shares its information in PC.	Charged
周辺検索 (Local Search)	• Check information including shops (iD accepted shop as well) or facilities around the current or specified location, and acquire coupons from gourmet information. • Check information on parking lots nearby. • Check surrounding area information simply through voice input.	Free
ルート案内 (Route)	• Search for routes by all transportation means including vehicle, walk and car. • Search for routes to home you marked.	Charged
乗換案内 (Transfer)	• Check transfer and timetable of the train. • Check the train route by map and set the alarm before departure. • Start the transfer guidance simply through voice input.	Charged
エクストラ (Extra)	• Change the map mode to the normal map, moving map by waving the FOMA terminal, 3D map, train-route-emphasized map, etc. • Show colored views of previously Open i-area-positioned locations in the unit of city, town, village, ward and prefecture.	Free
	• Back up information on previously Open i-area-positioned locations to the server.	Charged
災害用メニュー (Emergency)	• Search for facilities useful in case of emergency. • Emergency i-αppli without any communication required, linking to the map i-αppli.	Charged
設定/ヘルプ (Setting/Help)	• Check the settings and usage of map view and route view.	Free

● Screen and operation for the TOP menu of "Map i-αppli"

- The screens shown here are for reference only and may look different from the actual screens.
- Upon the initial activation, the terms of service and precautions on use are displayed.

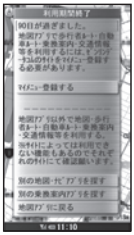
■Top screen

Menu list appears on the front top screen. Closing menu returns to the last map accessed.

Top menu

■If 91 days elapse without membership registration

Message appears to notify limitation of the available function and make inquiry for subscription when using this software first time on 91st day or later.
The similar messages are displayed when the additional service menu is selected.



* Subscribe on the website of "ゼンリン地図＋ナビ" (ZENRIN Map+Navi) using this software when you register as a member.

Map view and operations

Map view

©2008 ZENRIN DataCom CO., LTD.

Key operations in map view

Key operation	Action
✉ (メニュー (Menu))	Displays menu screen.
■	Displays easy access menu
ℹ (拡縮 (Zoom))	A scale slide bar appears. Press ⊡ and ⊡ to zoom in and out, respectively. Press ℹ (閉じる) to set the scale and clear up the slide bar.
✥	Moves on the map in all directions.
CLR	Closes menu screen or returns to the location accessed last.
＊	Rotates the map counterclockwise.
0	Sets the north of the map to the north.
#	Rotates the map clockwise.

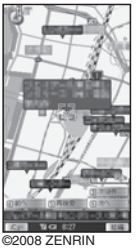
Key operations in the easy access menu

Key operation	Action
⊡ (周辺を調べる (Search around))	Checks information on the focused area of the map shown and the surrounding area as well.
⊡ (ココへのルート (Here))	Searches for a route from a specified starting location to the center of the displayed map.
⊡ (ココを✉送信 (Send here))	Fires off the URL of the displayed map.
⊡ (ココを登録 (Save here))	Saves location information on the center of the map into this software or the server. Saving location into the server enables you to share its information in PC as well.
■ (地図へ (To map))	Exits the easy access menu.
1 (3Dパノラマ (3D Panorama))	Displays the point that allows you to browse the 3d intersection or panorama image. When the point is selected, you can view the 3d intersection or panorama image.
2 (ビル テナント (Tenant))	Displays buildings in the area and allows you to check the tenants by clicking.

Screen and operation for the search result for surrounding area information

- The screens shown here are for reference only and may look different from the actual screens.
- The screen and operation are provided when the search result is displayed with the map but not provided as a result of selection from the list.

Search result screen for surrounding area information



©2008 ZENRIN DataCom CO., LTD.

Key operation in the search result screen for surrounding area information

- If the cursor does not hit the shop, etc. as the search result, the easy access menu appears.

Key operation	Action
■	Checks detail information of the search result.
✥	Moves the map in four directions.
5	Re-searches with the displayed map as the center.
4	Checks the previous search result.
6	Checks the next search result.
✉ (メニュー (Menu))	Displays menu screen.
ℹ (拡縮 (Zoom))	The scale slide bar appears. Press ⊡ to display a wider range, or ⊡ to display the detailed map. Press ℹ (閉じる) (close) to set the scale and clear up the slide bar.

Finding the route

Set the start and destination to search for a route. Displays the route for walk, public transport, and cars.

1 Top Menu screen (p.191)▶"ルート案内" (Route)▶ "ルート検索" (Search route)

2 Select "出発地" (Start) from following items:

このあたり (Here)……Positions and sets the approximate location by Open i-area.

フリーワード検索 (By keyword)……Searches by keyword.

地図上で指定 (From map)……Sets the starting location with map.

TEL／〒検索 (By number/code)……Searches by phone number or zip code.

住所一覧から (From address list)……Selects an address.

ジャンルから (From genre)……Selects a category.

履歴から (From history)……Selects from previously viewed maps.

登録地点から (From marked point)……Sets from the location information stored in this software or the server.

自宅 (Home)……Sets location information on your home.

出発地の確認 (Check)……Checks information on the starting location.

3 Select "目的地" (Destination) as in Step 2

4 Select "時間指定" (Time) from the following item:

現時刻で検索 (Current time)……Checks the route using the current time.

出発時刻指定 (Start time)……Sets the start time to check the route.

到着時刻指定 (Arrival time)……Sets the arrival time to check the route.

終電を利用 (Last train)……Checks the route with the last train of the day.

5 Select "条件設定" (Condition) from the following item▶"上記で設定" (Set above)

乗換条件 (Transfer)……Selects transfer priority criteria from "早い／安い／楽々" (Fast/Cheap/Easy).

徒歩ルート (Walking route)……Selects route priority criteria from "おまかせ／屋根多い／階段少ない" (Recommended/Many roofs/Less up-and-down).

特急利用 (Express)……Selects whether to use an express if the total distance of the route is 100km or shorter.

通常利用車種 (Vehicle type)……Selects the vehicle type to be used.

6 Search for route

Using a variety of route search "で検索" (Search by) and car route search "のみで検索" (Search only by car), you can search and find the route. As a search result, a route (up to 6 routes) are displayed. If there is another transfer route, the characteristics of the route are indicated by icon.

Route Level	Meaning
早 (Fast)	Takes a short time
安 (Cheap)	Low cost
楽 (Easy)	Fewer transfer times
オススメ (Recommended)	Meets the above three conditions
有料 (Toll)	Uses toll road (car)
一般 (Open)	Uses open road (car)

■ **To register the route**
▶"ルートを登録" (Register route)

7 Select the route▶"ルート確認" (Check route)

Starts checking route to the destination.

● Using the voice input

The voice input menu enables voice input to simply check surrounding area information and transfer guidance, or view a map.

<Example: To use the Local Search voice input>

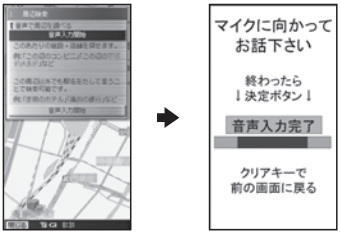
1 TOP menu screen (p.191)▶"周辺検索" (Local Search)▶"音声入力" (Voice input)

The voice input guidance screen appears.

2 "音声入力開始" (Voice input start)▶Enter information through voice input

After the voice input screen appears, enter the desired peripheral information through voice input.

<Example: "この辺のコンビニ" (Convenience stores near here)>



Continued on next page

❸ Voice is recognized and a confirmation screen appears

■ **When recognition is incorrect**

▶"音声再入力" (Retry)

● Using 設定/ヘルプ (Setting/Help)

❶ TOP menu screen (p.191)▶"設定/ヘルプ" (Setting/Help)▶Select any item:

各種設定 (Settings)……Make the basic settings/route guide settings/home settings/station settings, delete history and reset the settings.

ヘルプ・規約 (Help/Terms)……Shows usage, FAQ and terms of service.

会員情報確認 (Membership information)……Checks your subscription state to "ゼンリン地図＋ナビ" (ZENRINMap+Navi).

PC確認方法 (PC check method)……View URL, login ID or password to view a PC-designed map i-αppli site.

Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE EPG Remote Control)

This is a useful monthly-charge-free i-αppli containing the program guide and AV remote control function. You can obtain digital, analog or BS digital TV program information easily anywhere at any time. You can check the program title, contents of program and start/end time, etc. 1seg can be activated from the program guide. The program guide can be activated from 1seg. If you are interested in some program, you can set timer recording via the Internet to record the program on the DVD recorder (a DVD recorder compatible with the online timer recording function is required. To use this function, you need initial settings on this application). You can also search for program information by keyword such as TV program genre, your favorite personality or pickup keyword on the top of the main screen. Moreover, the remote control is possible for TV/Video/DVD player (some models do not support this function).

- When you use this application for the first time, agree to the license agreement and set the default settings.
- Packet communication charges will apply.
- When using this software overseas, set "Set main time" to the Japanese time.
- For details on Gガイド番組表リモコン (G-GUIDE EPG Remote Control), refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

* The above is a screen image. The actual screen may look different. The displayed TV guide corresponds to the area where you live.

■ **Booking program function**

You can book a 1seg view by selecting a program from the program guide of this application.

- Timer activation
  Activate this application to select a program you want to watch. Select "予約実行" (Book) from "視聴予約" (Book program) in メニュー (Menu) to activate the booking scheduler. Follow the on-screen instructions.

■ **Timer recording function**

You can reserve 1seg recording by selecting a program from the program guide of this application.

- Timer recording
  Activate this application to select a program you want to record. Select "予約実行" (Book) from "#ワンセグ録画予約" (#1Seg timer recording) in メニュー (Menu) to activate the booking scheduler. Follow on-screen instructions.
  (* Alternatively, activate this application, select a program, and press [#].)

■ **Online timer recording**

If you have a DVD recorder compatible with the online timer recording, you can set timer recording from the program guide of this application via the Internet while you are away from your house. To use online timer recording, you need initial settings on this application.

- Initial settings
  ① Perform the Internet connection setting on the DVD recorder (refer to the manual supplied with the DVD recorder).
  ② Launch this application. When you select "リモート録画予約" (Online timer recording) on メニュー (Menu), instructions appear. Follow the instructions to perform initial settings.

- Timer recording
  After initial settings completes, specify the program and select リモート録画予約 (Online timer recording) from the menu. You can connect to the DVD player set with this application and set the timer recording.
  * If a timer recording is already set for the time you set, a message appears on the program guide.
- You are charged for the packet communication.

NOTE

- Not available when 2in1 is in B mode.
- NTT DOCOMO accepts no liability whatsoever regarding the information set on the FOMA terminal.

iD設定アプリ (iD setting application)

The electronic cash “iD” does not need to be charged, it is the credit service which enables you to pay or use a cashing service only by holding the Osaifu-Keitai. You can easily enjoy shopping without leaving signature. The cash service is also available according to the credit card company.

* The above is a screen image. The actual screen may look different.

- To use “iD”, besides a subscription to a company issuing iD-supported credit card, you also need iD application and Osaifu-Keitai for which settings for the card application provided by the card company are completed or a credit card that contains “iD”.
- To use “iD” as Osaifu-Keitai, complete the iD appli settings, download or start the card application provided by the card issuer, and configure the specified settings on the card application. Depending on the card, only the card application settings are required, and the iD appli settings not required.
- The cost for using the card compatible with iD (such as annual fee) varies depending on the card company.
- See the i-mode site of “iD” for information on “iD”.
  - i-mode site (Japanese) : i▶iMenu▶“メニューリスト” (Menu List)▶“iD”

DCMXクレジットアプリ (DCMX credit application)

“DCMX” is the iD-compatible credit service provided by NTT DOCOMO. DCMX is categorized into DCMX mini that will offer a monthly credit line of 10,000 yen, and DCMX/DCMX GOLD that offers the higher limit than DCMX mini while earning DOCOMO Point.
You can easily apply for “DCMX mini” from this application and start the mobile credit service immediately.

* The above is a screen image. The actual screen may look different.

■ Function

Application/Audit*1

↓

Set card information

↓

Use
No complicated charging! Wave your mobile phone over a reader at stores with the following iD mark, and enjoy shopping without your signature*2.

Check
Check the DCMX service content, monthly available credit*3, receipt, etc!

Change
Make model change settings or validity term updates!

*1 : A simple audit will be performed online at the time of application. Applications for other than DCMX mini will be connected to the application page on i-mode.
*2 : Security code entry may be required.
*3 : Only available for DCMX mini.

- See the i-mode site of DCMX for details on the service contents or how to apply.
  - i-mode site (Japanese) : i▶iMenu▶DCMX iD

Continued on next page

NOTE

- When you launch this application for the first time, agree with “ご利用上の注意” (Notes on using the application).
- Packet communication charges are applied for settings or operations.

■Notes on Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli

- NTT DOCOMO accepts no liability whatsoever regarding the information set on the IC card.

i アプリバンキング (i-αppli banking)

This i-αppli enables you to conveniently use mobile banking. Mobile banking is a service that you can check your bank balance or account activity, or you can transfer money whenever or wherever, by using a mobile phone. You can use Mobile banking for up to 2 banking facilities, only by entering the password you have set when launching the i-αppli.

- To use the mobile banking service, a bank account of the banking facility and application to the mobile banking service is required.
- You are charged for the packet communication.
- For details on i-αppli banking, refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version”.
- For information on i-αppli banking, see the i-mode site.
  - i-mode site (Japanese) : i▶iMenu▶“メニューリスト” (Menu List)▶モバイルバンキング▶ i アプリバンキング

* The above is a screen image. The actual screen may look different.

楽オク出品アプリ2 (Rakuten Auction application 2)

楽オク出品アプリ2 (Rakuten Auction application 2) is a useful application that you can easily sell goods at Rakuten Auction site. It provides a guidance display for new users who use the i-αppli for the first time. There are helpful functions such as shooting/editing a photo or saving the history, and you can bring goods to the auction in a shorter time than from a site.

- You need to agree to “利用規約” (Terms and conditions) before you use i-αppli for the first time.
- Packet communication is charged.
- For more information, refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version”.
- Member subscription and auctioneer registration to Rakuten are required to sell goods on Rakuten Auction.
- For details, see i-mode site (Japanese).
  - i-mode site: i▶iMenu▶オークション (Auction)

* The above is a screen image. The actual screen may look different.

FOMA通信環境確認アプリ (FOMA communication environment check application)

FOMA communication environment check application is the application that checks whether the FOMA terminal can use the FOMA High-speed area.

- To use the FOMA communication environment check application, agree with “ご利用上の注意” (Notes on using the application).

* The above is a screen image. The actual screen may look different.

NOTE

- The displayed items may be different or the description that the FOMA terminal is out of service area is displayed depending on the conditions (weather, the signal quality, or network traffic) even if it is the same place and time.
- When you use other functions during this application is activated, the checking may fail.

Launching i-αppli Automatically

You can set the software to launch automatically at the specified date and time or interval of time.

Enabling automatic launching

<Auto-start set>

- You can set 3 automatic startup times for each application.
- Set to "OFF" at the time of purchase.

1 MENU▶"I-APPLI"▶"Auto-start set"▶"ON" or "OFF"

Setting the launch date/time

<Auto-start time>

You can specify the date and time to launch the software automatically.

- Software does not start up automatically in the following cases:
  - When the FOMA terminal is turned off
  - When another function is running
  - During calls
  - During communication
  - When the time for Software Update, Alarm, Schedule, To Do list or 1Seg booking program is the same as Auto-start time
  - If the time to launch is set within 10 minutes after the same application is automatically launched for the last time

1 Software list screen (p.187)▶ (FUNC)▶"Auto-start time"▶Use to select a checkbox (□)

■ **To enable the time interval set for the software**

▶Check the "Time interval set" checkbox

■ **To set the launch date and time**

▶Check the "Start time set" checkbox

2 (Finish)▶Set the launch date and time

■ **To set the launch date and time**

▶Select a date and time▶Enter the launch date and time

■ **To set the automatic launch repetition**

▶Select the repeat setting item▶"Daily" or "Weekly"

If you select "Weekly", use to select a checkbox (□) and press (Finish).

3 (Finish)

Checking whether an i-αppli launched automatically

You can check whether an i-αppli automatically started up at the specified time.

- You can also check for the software whose launching from the IC card function failed.

1 MENU▶"I-APPLI"▶"i-αppli action info"▶"Auto-start info"

The screen displays information such as the software name, the automatic launch time and whether or not the software was launched. "StartO" indicates that the software started up automatically, "StartX" indicates that it did not start up automatically and "Start-" indicates that the time for automatic launch has not yet been reached.

NOTE

- If the software could not be launched automatically, the " " (Not run soft) shortcut icon appears on the standby screen. Select the icon to view the Auto-start info screen. Select software that could not be activated.

  Shortcut icons that provide information→p.94

Launching an i-αppli from a Site or Mail

<i-αppli To>

You can launch an i-αppli from a function other than i-αppli, such as an i-mode site or mail.

Enabling software launching with i-αppli To

<Set i-αppli To>

You can specify whether i-αppli software can be launched from i-mode sites, mail, the Infrared data exchange function, Bar code reader, IC card function, ToruCa or data broadcast.

- This setting can be specified separately for each software application.

1 Software list screen (p.187)▶ (FUNC)▶"Set i-αppli To"

2 Use to select □ (checkbox)▶ (Finish)

Launching i-αppli from a site

When an i-αppli software launch specification is displayed on an i-mode site, this setting allows the software to be launched from the site.

- This function cannot be used with some sites.

1 Sites screen (p.136)▶Select an item for launching the software▶"YES"

NOTE

- Unlike ordinary i-αppli, some i-αppli software is immediately launched from an i-mode site.
  - These i-αppli are not stored on the FOMA terminal after downloading from i-mode sites,
  - Some i-αppli software cannot be stored on the FOMA terminal.

Launching i-αppli from a mail

When an i-αppli software launch specification is pasted into a received i-mode mail, this setting allows the software to be launched from the i-mode mail.

1 Received mail detail screen (pp.170, 172)▶Select an item for launching the software▶"YES"

NOTE

- The i-αppli launch specification cannot be quoted even when you reply with a quote or forward the i-mode mail. You cannot quote a launch specification of an i-αppli by forwarding mail using the Infrared data exchange function or DOCOMO keitai datalink (p.329), etc.

Launching i-αppli from other functions

You can launch an i-αppli from various functions such as Infrared data exchange function, Bar code reader, IC card function, ToruCa, data broadcast, etc.

■Infrared data exchange function

When the FOMA terminal received the i-αppli launching signal while Infrared data exchange, i-αppli software launches.

■Bar code reader

When the data scanned by the Bar code reader contains an i-αppli software launch specification, you can launch the software from the Bar code reader.

■IC card function

You can launch the software by holding the FeliCa mark on the FOMA terminal over the reader/writer unit.

■ToruCa

When an i-αppli software launch specification is pasted into an acquired ToruCa, you can launch the software from ToruCa.

■Data broadcast

When 1seg data broadcast site contains i-αppli activation specification, the software can be activated from the site.

NOTE

<IC card function>

- The software is not launched in the following cases:
  - When another function is running
  - During calls
  - When the software you want to launch cannot be found

Setting the i-αppli Standby Screen

<Set i-αppli stand-by>

You can set a selected i-αppli software as the standby screen.

- Some software applications cannot be set as the standby screen.

1 Software list screen (p.187)▶[i] (Set)▶"Stand-by display"▶"ON"▶[i] (Finish)

NOTE

- Only 1 i-αppli can be set as the i-αppli standby screen.
- If software that communicates is set as the standby screen, it may not run correctly when problems such as poor signal quality occur.
- If you select "OFF" for "Stand-by net" in "Software setting", note that you may not be able to receive timely information.
- If "Dial lock" or "Original lock" is set or 2in1 is set to B mode or Dual mode while the i-αppli standby screen is displayed, the i-αppli standby screen ends. If "Dial lock" or "Original lock" is released or 2in1 is set to A mode, the i-αppli standby screen reappears.
- When you switch tasks and display the standby screen, the screen specified in "Stand-by display" of "Display setting" appears even though the i-αppli standby screen is set.

Activating the i-αppli standby screen

You can activate the software set as the i-αppli standby screen.

1 On the i-αppli standby screen▶[CLR]

The i-αppli is activated and [icon] or [icon] flashes at the bottom of the screen.

Deactivating the i-αppli standby screen <Deactivate i-αppli standby screen>

● Deactivating the i-αppli standby screen while running an i-αppli

1 While running an i-αppli▶CLR (1 second or longer) or ☎▶Select any item:

Cancel……Returns to the screen of running the i-αppli standby screen.

End……Returns to the i-αppli standby screen.

Terminate……Deactivates the setting of the i-αppli standby screen.

● Deactivating the i-αppli standby screen while it is displayed

1 MENU▶"SETTINGS"▶"i-αppli settings"▶"End stand-by display"

2 "Terminate"▶"Yes"

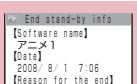
■ **To cancel deactivating**
▶"End"

Checking the i-αppli standby screen exit information

If an error occurs that causes the i-αppli standby screen to be deactivated, you can check the recorded information on the name of the software in which the error occurred, the time of the error and the reason.

1 MENU▶"I-APPLI"▶"i-αppli action info"▶"End stand-by info"

The "End stand-by info" screen appears.



End stand-by info

Function menu➡p.199

FUNC End stand-by info screen (p.199)

Copy info……Copies the contents of the end stand-by info screen.

Delete info……Deletes the contents of the end stand-by info screen.

NOTE

● No information is recorded if the i-αppli standby screen ends normally (at normal exit).

Organizing i-αppli

Upgrading i-αppli <Upgrade>

You can upgrade downloaded software when a new version is available on the site.

1 Software list screen (p.187)▶✉(FUNC)▶"Upgrade"▶"YES"

NOTE

● You cannot upgrade mail-linked i-αppli that rename mail folders in the following cases:
- Mail box lock is set
- Folder lock is set
- Inbox or Outbox folder for the mail-linked i-αppli to be upgraded is being used

Displaying the i-αppli software in the microSD card <microSD software>

You can display the i-αppli data list which is stored on the microSD card.

1 MENU▶"I-APPLI"▶"microSD"▶"microSD software"

The "microSD software list" screen appears.
Function menu→p.199

FUNC microSD software list screen (p.199)

Software info……Displays the i-αppli software data which is stored on the microSD card.

Move to phone……Moves one i-αppli or i-αppli data in the microSD card to the FOMA terminal.

Memory info……Displays the amount of the stored i-αppli.

Delete……Selects the deleting method from "Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all".
"About multiple-choice"→p.38

NOTE

● You cannot launch an i-αppli from the microSD software list.

● You may not be able to use the i-αppli saved on the microSD card on the other FOMA terminal.

Continued on next page

NOTE

- When i-αppli that is stored on the microSD card is moved to the FOMA terminal (Phone), the data of i-αppli that is stored on the microSD card is also moved to the FOMA terminal (Phone).
- Use “Software info” (p.189) to check whether the i-αppli can be moved to the FOMA terminal (Phone) from the microSD card.

Displaying the i-αppli data in the microSD card <microSD data>

You can display the folder name list of the i-αppli data (microSD) stored on the microSD card.

1 MENU ▶**“I-APPLI”**▶**“microSD”**▶**“microSD data”**

The “microSD data list” screen appears.

Function menu→p.200

FUNC microSD data list screen (p.200)

Display info……Displays the maker of the i-αppli, the available software and whether to use the microSD card.

Delete this • Delete selected • Delete all……Select the deleting method. “About multiple-choice”→p.38

NOTE

- You may not be able to use the i-αppli data saved on the microSD card from the software on the other FOMA terminal.
- Use “Software info” (p.189) to check whether the i-αppli data will be saved to the microSD card from the software.

Osaifu-Keitai/ToruCa

What is Osaifu-Keitai? 202
What is iC Transfer Service? 202
Launching Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli 202
Checking the IC Card Owner Information ..... Check IC owner 203
What is ToruCa? ..... ToruCa 203
Acquiring ToruCa ..... Acquire ToruCa 204
Viewing ToruCa ..... ToruCa viewer 204
Making the ToruCa Settings ..... ToruCa settings 206
Setting Illumination for IC Card Function ..... IC card Illumination 206
Locking the IC Card Function ..... IC card lock setting 206

What is Osaifu-Keitai?

Hold the “Osaifu-Keitai” up to a reader/writer at a member store and pay for your shopping, or utilize as membership card, coupons, and more.
You can also use the i-mode network to add e-money credit, check balances and usage history. Enough security is provided so the Osaifu-Keitai can be used without worries.

- For details, refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version”.

* In order to use Osaifu-Keitai services, please download the i-αppli for Osaifu-Keitai from the Osaifu-Keitai site* and then make the necessary settings.

*: i-mode site (Japanese): iMenu▶メニューリスト (Menu List)▶おサイフケータイ (Osaifu-Keitai)

- If a malfunction occurs with the FOMA terminal, the data (including e-money, points, etc.) on the IC card may be erased or altered (If you need to send your cell phone to NTT DOCOMO for repairs, please delete the data yourself as we cannot accept your cell phone for repair if there is data on it). For support such as having data reissued or restored or to have it temporarily kept or transferred (except for transferring data using iC transfer service), please contact your Osaifu-Keitai service provider. Make sure to use the service which provides backup service for important data.
- NTT DOCOMO shall not be liable for any loss of or damage to data stored on the IC card, or any other loss related to Osaifu-Keitai service under any circumstances whatsoever, including but not limited to malfunctions, model changes, etc.
- If the FOMA terminal is lost or stolen, contact your Osaifu-Keitai service provider immediately about what to do. Please note, you can use Omakase Lock and IC Card lock with this FOMA terminal.
→pp.101, 206

What is iC Transfer Service?

The iC Transfer Service*1 is a service that allows you to move all the data on your Osaifu-Keitai’s IC card*2 to a replacement Osaifu-Keitai*3 when your Osaifu-Keitai is replaced due to a model change, repairs, etc. Once you move the IC card data, it is a snap to start using the Osaifu-Keitai services by simply downloading*4 the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli. The iC transfer service is available at a NTT DOCOMO shop or service counter near you.

- For details, refer to “Mobile Phone User’s Guide [i-mode] FOMA version”.

*1 : To use the iC Transfer Service, both the new and the old phones must be Osaifu-Keitai compatible. To use the service, please visit your nearest DOCOMO shop.

*2 : Some iC transfer services may not be supported by all Osaifu-Keitai services; only the data inside the IC card of an iC transfer service compatible Osaifu-Keitai service can be moved.

*3 : This service does not copy the data; it moves it, so no data inside the IC card is left on the source FOMA terminal. There may be instances when the iC transfer service may not be utilized. Use back-up services of your Osaifu-Keitai service.

*4 : Packet communication charges do apply for downloading i-αppli and the different kinds of settings.

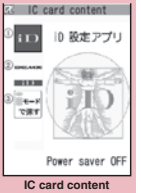
Launching Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli

You can launch the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli from the software list screen. You can use the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli to read and write the data in the IC card to use useful functions such as charging electronic money or ticket, or browsing the balance and transaction history on the FOMA terminal.

- Take great care not to disclose your security code and passwords of each service to others.
- The reading/writing of the data from the software to the IC card is interrupted in the following cases. In this case, the read/written data is discarded. The operation after the call varies depending on the service.
  - If you receive a call while launching i-αppli
  - If the battery fails
- When Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli is activated or downloaded for the first time, FOMA card (UIM) information is linked to an IC card. After this, you cannot use the IC card function unless the linked FOMA card (UIM) is inserted.
  If you use another FOMA card (UIM), you cannot use the IC card functions unless you delete (Reset IC owner) Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli first.

1 MENU▶“OSAIFU-KEITAI”▶“IC card content”

The “IC card content” screen appears.



IC card content

Function menu➡p.188

2 **Select the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli**

You can also launch the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli from the “Software list” screen (p.187).

NOTE

- When 2in1 is set to B mode, you cannot launch an i-αppli which uses the mail function.

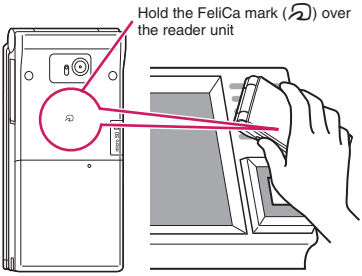
Using the Osaifu-Keitai

By holding the FeliCa mark "" on the FOMA terminal over the reader/writer unit, you can pay with the electronic cash or use the FOMA terminal as a ticket. These functions can be used without launching the software.

- Though you cannot launch the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli during a call, you can use the Osaifu-Keitai by holding the FeliCa mark over the reader/writer unit.

1 Hold the FeliCa mark "" over the reader/writer unit to use the service you want

The center illumination flashes following the "IC card Illumination" setting when you use Osaifu-Keitai.



NOTE

- You can use the IC card function by holding the FeliCa mark over the reader/writer unit even when the FOMA terminal is turned off or the battery is low. (You cannot launch the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli.) However, you may not be able to use this function when the battery pack is not attached, the battery pack is attached but not used for a long period of time, or when the FOMA terminal is left uncharged after the battery alarm sounds, so be sure to charge the battery pack.
- Do not shock the FOMA terminal when holding the FeliCa mark over a reader/writer unit.
- If the FeliCa mark is not recognized, hold the FOMA terminal close to the reader/writer section of the unit, move the FOMA terminal back and forth and around to be parallel to the reader/writer unit.
- The Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli may be launched when you hold the FeliCa mark over the reader/writer unit.

Checking the IC Card Owner Information <Check IC owner>

Check if the IC card in Osaifu-Keitai links to the inserted FOMA card (UIM).
To use another FOMA card (UIM), delete (reset) the Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli then use the IC card functions.

1 MENU▶"OSAIFU-KEITAI"▶"Check IC owner"

If another FOMA card (UIM) is inserted, select "Reset IC owner" to change the IC owner (reset Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli).

■ **To change the IC owner (reset Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli)**

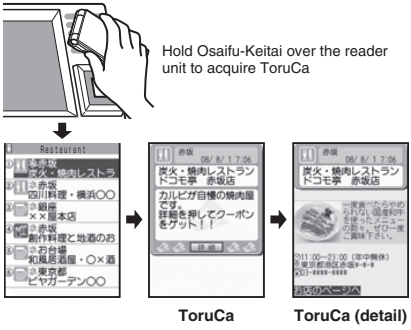
▶"Change IC owner"▶"Reset IC owner"▶"YES"▶Enter your security code▶"YES"

What is ToruCa? <ToruCa>

ToruCa is the electronic card that can be acquired via Osaifu-Keitai, which can be used as an flyer, restaurant card, coupon, etc.
ToruCa can be acquired via a reader/writer unit or websites, and can be easily exchanged via mail, Infrared data exchange or microSD card.

- The acquired ToruCa is stored in "ToruCa" of "OSAIFU-KEITAI" menu.
- This function is available with ToruCa-compatible models. For details, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

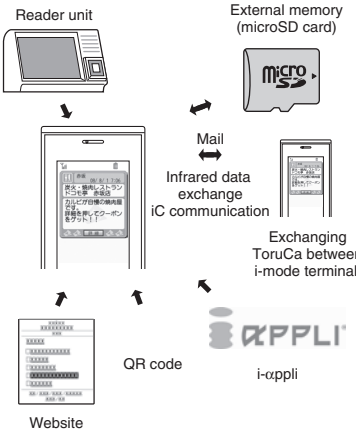
ToruCa usage flow



Select ToruCa from the list. Pressing the "詳細" (Detail) button displays the detailed information.

Continued on next page

How to acquire ToruCa



NOTE

- Packet communication charge is applied when acquiring ToruCa or ToruCa (detail) from sites.
- Depending on settings of the IP (Information service provider), some ToruCa cannot be updated or redistributed using a mail or Infrared data exchange.

Acquiring ToruCa <Acquire ToruCa>

You can acquire ToruCa from the reader/writer unit.

- You can save up to 100* ToruCa on the ToruCa folder. You can save up to 1K bytes for 1 ToruCa. You can save up to 100K bytes for 1 ToruCa (detail).

  * : You can save up to 20 ToruCa separately in the used ToruCa folder.

1 Hold the FeliCa mark "" on the FOMA terminal over the reader/writer unit

The illumination flashes following the "IC card Illumination" setting. ToruCa acquisition tone sounds, and the acquired ToruCa or ToruCa (detail) are displayed for about 15 seconds. When holding the FOMA terminal over the reader/writer unit →p.203

NOTE

- Acquired ToruCa is not displayed when another function is activated.
- You cannot change the ToruCa acquisition tone. The volume is set to the same volume set at "Phone" of "Ring volume". When set to "Step", the tone sounds at the volume of "Level 4".
- You cannot acquire ToruCa from the reader/writer unit when IC card lock or Omakase Lock is set.

Viewing ToruCa <ToruCa viewer>

1 MENU ▶"OSAIFU-KEITAI"▶"ToruCa"

The "ToruCa folder list" screen appears.

ToruCa folder list

Function menu➡p.205

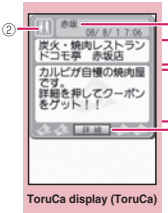
2 Select a folder▶Select ToruCa

The "ToruCa display" screen appears.

Guide to the ToruCa list screens/ToruCa display screen

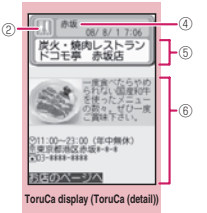
ToruCa list

Function menu➡p.205



ToruCa display (ToruCa)

Function menu➡p.205



ToruCa display (ToruCa (detail))

Function menu➡p.205

①Folder title
②ToruCa category icon
③ToruCa status

: Unread ToruCa

: Read ToruCa

: Expired ToruCa

④Location, etc. (index)
⑤ToruCa title
⑥ToruCa contents (you can also use the Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To, Web To or i-αppli To* function)
*: Available with ToruCa (detail) only
⑦Acquire ToruCa (detail)

NOTE

- You may not be able to use the Phone To/AV Phone To, Mail To, Web To or i-αppli To function depending on ToruCa.

FUNC ToruCa folder list screen (p.204)

Add folder……Enters a folder name to add a folder. You can add up to 20 folders on the FOMA terminal. For the folders on the FOMA terminal, you can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters, and for the folder on the microSD card, you can enter up to 31 double-byte or 63 single-byte characters.

Edit folder name[*1]……Edits the folder name of the added folder.

Search all[*2*3]……Displays the corresponding ToruCa list by selecting the item (Index/Title) and entering the text to search.

Filter all[*2*3]……Displays only the ToruCa which meets the selected criteria.

Display all[*2*3]……Displays all the saved ToruCa after releasing the display arranged by Search all or Filter all function (except for data in the "microSD" or "Used ToruCa" folder).

iC trans. all[*2*3]→p.260

Send all Ir data[*2*3]→p.258

Delete folder[*1]……Deletes the folder.

No. of ToruCa[*3]……Displays the number of ToruCa stored on the FOMA terminal.

Delete all……Deletes all the ToruCa stored on the FOMA terminal.

*1: Unavailable with the folder other than the user-created folders.
*2: Unavailable with the folder in the "microSD" folder.
*3: Except for the data in the "microSD" and "Used ToruCa" folders.

FUNC ToruCa list screen (p.204)

Move[*1]……Selects from "Move this/Move selected/Move all" and moves ToruCa to the other folder you select. "About multiple-choice"→p.38

Copy[*1]……Selects from "Copy this/Copy selected/Copy all" and copies the ToruCa to the other folder you selected. "About multiple-choice"→p.38

Search[*2]……Displays the corresponding ToruCa list by selecting the item (Index/Title) and entering the text to search.

Disp all in folder[*2]……Releases the search, sort or filter result display, and all ToruCa in the folder appear.

- When "Search all", "Filter all" or "Display all" is performed on the ToruCa folder list screen, this item is displays as "Display all".

Sort[*2]……Sorts ToruCa in a selected criteria.

Filter[*2]……Displays only the ToruCa which meets the selected criteria.

Compose message[*1*3]……Composes an i-mode mail with ToruCa attached.

iC transmission[*2]→p.259

Send Ir data[*2]→p.258

Copy to microSD[*2]→p.248

Copy to phone[*4]→p.249

No. of ToruCa[*1]……Displays the number of ToruCa saved in the FOMA terminal.

ToruCa info[*1]……Displays the ToruCa information.

Delete……Selects the deleting method from "Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all". "About multiple-choice"→p.38

*1: Unavailable in the "used ToruCa" folder.
*2: Unavailable in the "microSD" and "Used ToruCa" folders.
*3: Unavailable when 2in1 is in B mode.
*4: Available only for ToruCa stored on the microSD card.

FUNC ToruCa display screen (p.204)

Move……Selects the destination folder to move a ToruCa to the folder.

Copy……Selects the destination folder to copy a ToruCa to the folder.

Compose message[*1]……Composes an i-mode mail with ToruCa attached.

iC transmission[*2]→p.259

Send Ir data[*2]→p.258

Copy to microSD[*2]→p.248

Copy to phone[*3]→p.249

Update[*2*4]……Updates ToruCa (detail) information.

Save image[*2*4]……Saves the ToruCa (detail) image. Selects the setting from "Normal image/Background image".

Add to phonebook[*2]……Stores the phone number or mail address displayed on ToruCa.→p.70

Replay[*2*4]……Plays the Flash movie or animation of ToruCa (detail) again from the beginning.

Delete……Deletes 1 ToruCa.

*1: Unavailable when 2in1 is in B mode.

Continued on next page

*2: Unavailable in the “microSD” folder.
*3: Available only for ToruCa stored on the microSD card.
*4: Available only when ToruCa (detail) stored on the FOMA terminal is displayed.

NOTE

- You may not be able to copy ToruCa, perform attaching ToruCa to mail, iC transmission, Send Ir data, copying to the microSD card or updating depending on ToruCa.

Making the ToruCa Settings <ToruCa settings>

1 MENU▶“OSAIFU-KEITAI”▶“Setting”▶“ToruCa settings”▶Select any item:

Receive from R/W……Sets whether to acquire (Accept) ToruCa or not (Reject) when holding the FeliCa mark over a reader/writer unit.
When set to “Accept”, set whether to check if the acquired ToruCa is duplicated with those stored on the FOMA terminal (except for “Used ToruCa” folder and expired ToruCa).

Auto reading setting……Sets whether to automatically read the available ToruCa when holding the FOMA terminal over the reader/writer unit to use ToruCa.
When set to “ON”, an available ToruCa on the FOMA terminal (except for “Used ToruCa” folder and expired ToruCa) is recognized automatically and moved to “Used ToruCa” folder.

Scroll……Selects the number of scrolling lines in a screen from “1 line/3 lines/5 lines”.

NOTE

<Receive from R/W>
- When the Repetition check is set to “Yes”, you cannot acquire the same ToruCa. If you want to acquire the same ToruCa, set to “No”. The default setting is “Yes”.

<Auto reading setting>
- If you hold the FOMA terminal over the reader/writer when set to “OFF”, a confirmation message about using the auto reading function or a message that the auto reading is not available may appear. To use ToruCa, select “YES” and set this function to “ON”.

Setting Illumination for IC Card Function <IC card Illumination>

Turn on/off the illumination for IC card function.

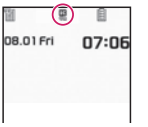
1 MENU▶“OSAIFU-KEITAI”▶“Setting”▶“IC card Illumination”▶“ON” or “OFF”

Locking the IC Card Function <IC card lock setting>

You can lock the IC card function to prevent others from using the IC card functions without your consent.
- IC card lock is not released even when the power is turned off.

1 On the standby screen▶ ✱ (1 second or longer)

IC card lock is set and “ ” appears.



■ **To release the setting**
▶ ✱ (1 second or longer)
▶Enter your security code

NOTE

- When you remove the battery pack, IC card lock is set automatically. In this case, attaching the battery pack automatically release IC card lock.
- IC card lock is not released even when the power is turned off because the battery runs out when IC card lock is set.
- You may not be able to download, version upgrade or uninstall some Osaifu-Keitai i-αppli when IC card lock is set.

Locking the IC card function when the power is turned off <IC lock (power-off)>

You can lock the IC card function to disable the Osaifu-Keitai when the power is turned off.

1 MENU▶“OSAIFU-KEITAI”▶“IC card lock setting”▶Enter your security code▶“IC lock (power-off)”▶Select any item:

Maintain……Keeps the same IC card lock setting as before turning off the power.

IC card lock ON……The IC card function is locked regardless of the IC card lock setting.

1seg

What is 1seg? 208
Setting Channels ..... Channel setting 209
Watching 1seg Programs ..... Active 1Seg 210
Using G-GUIDE EPG Remote Control ..... G-GUIDE EPG Remote Control 212
Using Data Broadcasting ..... Data broadcast 212
Using TV Link ..... TV link 213
Recording Scenes While Watching ..... Record 1seg 213
Using Timer Activation/Recording ..... Booking program list/Timer recording list 214
Configuring 1seg Settings ..... User settings 215
Notifying New Message Arrival While Watching ..... Mail ticker 216

What is 1seg?

1seg is a mobile digital terrestrial audio/video and data broadcasting service. Use i-mode to get detailed program information, join a quiz show, enjoy TV shopping, etc.
For 1seg service details, visit the following website:
The Association for Promotion of Digital Broadcasting (Dpa)
PC: http://www.dpa.or.jp/english/index.html
i-mode: http://www.dpa.or.jp/1seg/k/ (Japanese)

Using 1seg

- 1seg service is provided by TV broadcast station, etc.
- 1seg video/audio/data broadcast can be received for free, and no application is required.
- There are two types of data displayed in the storage area: “Data broadcast” and “Data broadcast site”.
  “Data broadcast” is broadcast with video and audio. By “Data broadcast site”, a site that TV broadcast station, etc. prepares is accessed from broadcast information. “i-mode site”, etc. may be accessed. i-mode application is required for site access.
- Packet communications charges apply to view “Data broadcast site” and “i-mode site”. Information charges may apply for some sites (i-mode pay sites).

Signals

1seg is one of the broadcast services, and receive signals (broadcast waves) different from those of FOMA services. Programs cannot be viewed in/out of FOMA range when waves do not reach or broadcast is paused.
Even in digital terrestrial broadcast range, signals may be weak or not be received in the following cases:

- Far from the signal tower
- Hiding behind objects; e.g. in a mountain or building
- In tunnels, underground areas, buildings, etc.

1seg antenna is built in the FOMA terminal. Also, attempt to move the antenna, keep the FOMA terminal away from/close to your body, or move to another location for better reception.

Display when using 1seg for the first time

The disclaimer screen appears.
Press [▽] or [△] to check content, press [■] (OK), then select “YES”.
If “NO” is selected, the screen will not appear from the next time.

Storage area for broadcasts

The storage area for broadcasts is a storage area in the handset that is dedicated to 1seg. Some information you enter while following the instructions of data broadcasts when watching programs may be saved to the storage area for broadcasts.
That includes answers to quizzes, membership numbers, and your gender, age, and occupation. Furthermore, stored information may be displayed while viewing a data broadcast or data broadcasting site without re-entering or sent to the corresponding broadcasting company (broadcaster).

To reset storage area→p.215

If another FOMA card is inserted, a message appears asking whether to initialize storage area. Select “YES” to initialize. When “NO” is selected, storage area services are not available.

■Display when reading storage area

When using information stored in storage area while watching program, “Use saved information? It may include information used by the same broadcasting group” appears. Select “YES” not to confirm by screen display when reading information while watching the same program hereafter.
If “YES(Always)” is selected, the screen will not appear from the next time even if programs are changed.

Before use

● View procedure

Step 1 Set channels→p.209

Register channels for the area and set a list.

Step 2 View 1seg→p.210

■When a call, etc. arrives while watching or recording

When one of the following arrives while watching or recording, video and audio are interrupted and each function activates (Recording is not interrupted). Watching can be resumed after each function is finished.

- Voice call
- Videophone call
- Alarm, Schedule, To Do, booked program (When "Alarm setting" is set to "Alarm preferred")

NOTE

- 1seg programs cannot be viewed if FOMA card (UIM) is not inserted, subscription to DOCOMO is canceled, or FOMA service usage is stopped.
- Even if subscribed FOMA card (UIM) is inserted, 1seg may not be activated, e.g. if 1seg programs are watched repeatedly out of FOMA range. In this case, move into FOMA range and retry activation.
- Do not activate in the following situations when watching 1seg programs for the first time:
  - Out of FOMA range
  - Self mode activating
- Prolonged 1seg watching while charging may shorten battery life.

■Important

- The information stored in your mobile phone (still images recorded with 1seg, TV links, information saved to the storage area for broadcasts, etc.) cannot be transferred. We recommend that you take precautions such as keeping a separate note of important information.

Setting Channels

<Channel setting>

To use 1seg, set channels and select a channel list beforehand. Register a channel list for each area. Selecting the channel list allows you to watch local channels.

- Up to 10 channel lists can be registered, each of which can contain up to 50 broadcast stations.
- Receivable channels vary depending on the area.

Registering channel lists

1 MENU▶"1SEG"▶"Channel setting"▶"Select area"

■ To search for channels automatically and register a channel list

▶"Auto channel setting"▶"YES"▶"YES"▶Enter title

To interrupt search, press i (Cancel) or CLR then select "YES".

2 Select area▶Select prefecture▶"YES"

NOTE

- "Select area" may not work properly depending on the area. In this case, use "Auto channel setting".
- Perform "Auto channel setting" in a digital terrestrial TV service area with strong signals.
- "Remote control No. duplicated" may appear in "Auto channel setting". In this case, select area manually.

Changing channel lists

Select a channel list to set channels.

1 MENU▶"1SEG"▶"Channel list"

The "Channel list" screen appears.

Channel list

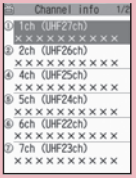
Function menu➡p.210

1seg

Continued on next page

❷ Select channel list

Channel list is set, and the "Channel info" screen appears.



Channel info

Function menu➡p.210

FUNC Channel list screen (p.209)

Channel setting→p.209

Edit title……Edit channel list title.

Delete this……Delete the channel list.

FUNC Channel info screen (p.210)

Remote control No.……Change channel set to remote control No.

Delete this……Delete the channel.
When all channels in the channel list are deleted, the channel list is also deleted.

NOTE

- Current channel list cannot be deleted on the channel list selection screen or channel info screen. Change the channel list then delete.

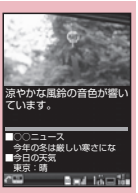
Watching 1seg Programs

<Active 1Seg>

❶ MENU▶"1SEG"▶"Active 1Seg"

The "1seg" screen appears with last-viewed channel.

- To end watching, press ☎, or CLR (1 second or longer), then select "YES".
- The disclaimer screen appears the first time 1seg activates.→p.208



1seg

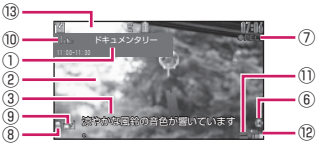
Function menu➡p.211

NOTE

- G-GUIDE EPG Remote Control, channel link displayed on a site or mail message, etc. are also available to activate 1seg.
"Media To function"→p.147

Guide to the 1seg screen

Portrait



Landscape

① Program title
② Video
③ Subtitles
④ Data broadcasting
⑤ TV/Data mode→p.212
TV DATA……TV mode
TV DATA……Data broadcast mode
⑥ ECO mode→p.215
……ECO mode activating
⑦ Recording status
●REC……Recording/Timer recording
●‖……Recording paused
⑧ Save destination
SD……microSD
⑨ Signal strength (approximate)

Good ⟷ Poor

appears when out of range.
⑩ Channel (remote control No.)
⑪ Subtitle reception
appears when receiving subtitles.
⑫ Volume

⑬ Mail ticker
Ticker displays information on i-mode mail, SMS, Area Mail and MessageR/F received while viewing 1seg.

Operations available while viewing 1seg

- Some key operations are not available in data broadcast mode.

Key	Action
[◇]	Forward channel selection
[0] to [9] [＊] [#]	One-touch channel selection Press keys corresponding to channels from 1 to 12.
[◇] (1 second or longer)	Channel search Searches for receivable channels in frequency order. To interrupt search, press [i] or [CLR].
[◇] ([▲マナー])/ [▼メモ])	Volume adjustment
[CLR]	Mute
[■] [9] (1 second or longer)	Switch screen directions In order of “Portrait” → “Wide (90° right)” → “Wide (90° left)”
[✆]	Switch TV/data BC
[✆] (1 second or longer)	Switch display In order of “Data broadcast”→ “Visual image+DBC”→ “V.img+Caption+DBC”
[i]	Still image recording, Recording end
[i] (1 second or longer)	Recording start
[ch]	Activate G-GUIDE EPG Remote Control

- In data broadcast mode, press [◇]/[■] to highlight/select a link, [◇] to move between pages, and [CLR] to go back.

NOTE

- Subtitles may not appear depending on the program.
- Data broadcast cannot be displayed in landscape display.
- E.g. when you move to another location and perform channel search, you may find a channel that was not found in Auto channel setting. Perform “Add Channel” to watch the channel from the next time.

[FUNC] 1seg screen (p.210)

Program info……Display information on the viewed program.

Mail*

- **Inbox**……Shows the Inbox folder list screen.
- **Compose message**→p.156
- **Suggested message**……Compose mail by pasting information on a channel being viewed into the message body.→p.156
  On the recipient handset, the program can be activated using the Media To function.

Program guide……Activate G-GUIDE EPG Remote Control.→p.212

Display setting

- **Switch display**……Change screens.
  - **Visual image+DBC**……Display TV/data broadcast.
  - **V.img+Caption+DBC**……Display TV, subtitles and data broadcast.
  - **Data broadcast**……Display data broadcast only. 1seg audio plays.
- **Subtitles**……Show subtitles at bottom (ON(Wide:Bottom)), at top (ON(Wide:Top)), or hide (OFF).
- **Brightness**……Adjust brightness between three levels.
- **Icon show(Wide)** (default: Show always)……Set whether to always or temporarily show icons other than program title in landscape mode (p.210).

Sound

- **Main/Sub sound** (default: Main sound)……Set sound output mode.
- **Sound switch**……Change sounds. Can only be performed when the sound can be changed.
- **TV sound w/ closed**……Set whether to continue outputting sound when the FOMA terminal is closed while watching.

ECO mode (default: OFF)……Set whether to reduce backlight brightness to conserve battery.

Channel

- **Channel info**……Display information on the selected channel list.
- **Channel list**→p.209
- **Channel setting**→p.209

Continued on next page

Select service……Select service to view when multiple services (programs) are broadcast from the same channel.

Add channel……Add currently viewed channel to channel list.

Data broadcast

TV link list……Display the TV link list screen. →p.213

Re-read……Reload the displayed data broadcast site.

Show certificate……Display certificate used on SSL communication. →p.149

Back to data BC……End viewing data broadcast site and return to data broadcast.

Data BC settings

Set image disp. (default: ON)……Set whether to display images on data broadcast site.

Sound effect (default: ON)……Set whether to enable sound effects for data broadcast/data broadcast site.

Reset disp. set.……Set to hide a confirmation screen afterwards by selecting "YES(Always)". Perform this setting to redisplay a confirmation screen.

Switch TV/data BC……Switch between TV and data broadcast modes while viewing.

Add desktop icon →p.94

*: When 2in1 is in B mode, you cannot compose and send i-mode mail. →p.320

Using G-GUIDE EPG Remote Control <G-GUIDE EPG Remote Control>

G-GUIDE EPG Remote Control allows activating 1seg from program guide or booking program/timer recording. →p.194

1 MENU ▶**"1SEG"**▶**"Program guide"**

The program guide appears.

■ **To view a program**

▶Highlight a program▶✉ (TV起動 (Activate TV))

NOTE

- To use downloaded Program guide i-αppli, select "Program guide" from the Software setting on the Software list screen (p.188).

Using Data Broadcasting <Data broadcast>

In 1seg, use data broadcast as well as video/audio. Make use of program-linked site and other various information including pictures and videos.
Select item (link) to use Phone To/Mail To functions, etc. →p.147

- Data broadcast cannot be displayed in landscape display.

1 **1seg screen (TV mode) (p.210)**

▶📞

Data broadcast mode activates and TV LINK appears.

■ **To view data broadcast only**

▶1Seg screen▶✉ (FUNC)▶"Display setting"▶"Switch display"▶"Data broadcast"

2 **Select an item (link)**

If i-mode access confirmation appears, select "YES". If "YES(Always)" is selected, the screen will not appear from the next time.

• Operation during site viewing →p.139

NOTE

- 1seg audio plays in data broadcast mode.
- In data broadcast/data broadcast site text entry, pictographs cannot be entered.
- If "YES(Always)" is selected on the data broadcast confirmation screen, data broadcast information automatically updates and packet communications charges may apply.

Using TV Link <TV link>

Sites or memos can be added to TV link depending on data broadcast/data broadcast site. Add to TV link to view often-used sites or memos easily.

Adding to TV link

If selected item (link) can be added to TV link, a message appears asking whether to add to TV link.
- Up to 50 entries can be added.

1 On the 1seg screen (data broadcast mode) (p.212)▶Select available item▶"YES"

■ If selected URL or memo is already added
A message appears asking whether to overwrite the existing one. Select "YES" to overwrite.

NOTE
- URLs or memos added to TV link are only available on 1seg, not on i-mode or full browser.
- Some links may have validity periods.

Opening sites or memos from TV link

1 MENU▶"1SEG"▶"TV link"▶Select TV link

If i-mode access confirmation appears, select "YES".

■ If validity period has expired
A message appears asking whether to delete the link.

TV link list

Function menu➡p.213

● TV link list icons

Icon	Type
	Memo
	Data broadcast site
	i-mode contents

- Videos/Subtitles do not appear even if accessing data broadcast site.

FUNC TV link list screen (p.213)

Display detail……View Title, URL, Outline, Contents type and Expiration Date.

No. of TVlink……View the number of stored TV links.

Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all……Select the deletion method.
"Selecting multiple"→p.38

Recording Scenes While Watching <Record 1seg>

Save current program as a video or picture.
- Recorded videos are saved to a microSD card.
  - Maximum number of videos: 99*1
  - Maximum recording time*2: 600 min.*3
    - *1 : Actual storable count may be decreased depending on the data size.
    - *2 : Maximum recording time varies depending on the channel or program.
    - *3 : Figure estimated with 2GB microSD card.
- Pictures are saved to the Image folder in Data Box 1Seg folder.

<Example: To record video>

1 On the 1seg screen (p.210)▶ (1 second or longer)

Recording starts.
Channels cannot be changed during recording.

■ To record picture
▶
Picture is saved.

2

Recording ends and video is saved.
- If storage area becomes full, recording automatically ends and video recorded until then is saved.

NOTE
- Recording may not be performed due to copyright restrictions, etc.
- Recorded video or picture cannot be set as standby screen, ring tone, receiving screen, etc.
- Data broadcast cannot be recorded.
- The following shows saved video file name and title:
  File name: PRGXXX (XXX: Alphanumeric)
  Title: YYYYMMDDhhmmXXX (Y: Year, M: Month, D: Day, h: Hour, m: Minute, X: Number)
- The following shows saved picture file name and title:
  YYYYMMDDhhmmXXX (Y: Year, M: Month, D: Day, h: Hour, m: Minute, X: Number)
- Video cannot be recorded if signal strength is .

Continued on next page

NOTE

<Video recording>

- If signal strength becomes , recording continues but video/audio are not saved.
- " " flashes during recording.
- Recording is not interrupted even if screens are changed by Multitask or a call arrives.
- During recording, alarm sounds for about 2 seconds, one minute before recording scheduled time. Operation is performed based on "Priority" set at the time of timer recording registration as follows:
  - "Recording": Confirmation message appears, video recording is finished and timer recording starts.
  - "Operation preferred": Message appears asking whether to start timer recording. Select "YES" to end video recording and start timer recording. Select "NO" to continue video recording.
- Some data cannot be recorded until the memory is full.
- 1seg contains copy control signals: "Copy Never", "Copy Once", "Copy Free". Each broadcast station sets copy control signals.
- "Copy Never" program cannot be recorded. When copy control signal changes to "Copy Never" during recording, recording stops and video recorded until then will be saved.

Using Timer Activation/ Recording

<Booking program list/Timer recording list>

Set date and time, channel, program title, etc. Alarm sounds at specified date and time indicating the program/recording start.

- Timer activation/recording alarms→p.289
- Up to 100 activation/recording entries can be booked.
- Program guide i-αppli, channel link displayed on a site or mail message, etc. are also available for timer activation/recording.

<Example: To book activation>

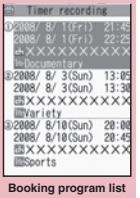
1 MENU▶**"1SEG"▶"Booking program list"**

The "Booking program list" screen appears.

■ To book timer recording

▶"Timer recording list"

The "Timer recording list" screen appears.



Booking program list

Function menu➡p.215

2 (FUNC)▶**"New"**

■ To edit booked schedule

▶(FUNC)▶"Edit"

Software key displays "New" if no entry is stored and "Edit" if any.

3 Select any item

Date setting (Start/End)*1……Enter date and time to start/end.

- **Enter date**……Enter date and time.
- **Choose date**……Select date from Calendar, then enter time.

Channel……Select channel.

Edit title……Enter program title.

Repeat……Select "1 time", "Daily" or "Select day".

Alarm*2……Set whether to play the alarm at specified date and time of time recording.

Alarm*3……Select "ON", "ON/Set time" ("15 seconds before" to "10 seconds before") or "OFF" for alarm at timer activation date and time.

Alarm tone……Select the alarm tone from Clock Alarm Tone or melody, i-motion or music folders at timer activation date and time.

Volume……Use to adjust the alarm tone volume.

Priority*2……Set operation to be performed when the start date and time arrives while using 1seg/Music group (1seg, Data Box (1seg), Music, Music&Video Channel).

- **Recording**……Interrupt/End current operation to start recording.
- **Operation preferred**……A screen appears asking whether to start recording. Select "YES" to interrupt/end current operation to start recording.

Activate TV w/ alarm……Set whether to activate 1seg from the alarm notification screen. If "ON" is selected, press (TV) then select "YES" to activate 1seg in alarm notification.

*1 : For booking program, set "Date setting(from)".
*2 : Set only for timer recording.
*3 : Set only for booking program.

4 Set each item▶ (Finish)

● When recording is finished

" " appears on the standby screen. Select " " to view up to 100 results from the latest.
Select recording result to play recorded program.

NOTE

<Booking program>

- If multiple alarm entries are added for the same date and time, priority is given to an entry with earlier start date and time. If the same start date and time is set, priority is given to an entry added later.
- To set alarm illumination, go to "Illumination set" then "Schedule/Alarm".

<Timer recording>

- Recording is not possible if the FOMA terminal is in the following statuses one minute before start date and time:
  - Powered off
  - During Dial lock/Omakase Lock
  - During infrared data exchange/iC communication
  - Software updating
- Recording may not start at specified date and time in the following cases:
  - Weak signals
  - Unstable reception
  - Video image is not provided
  - Insufficient memory in destination
  - During international roaming
  - Out of FOMA service area
- 1seg audio does not play while recording by timer recording. To play audio, press CLR or adjust volume.

FUNC Booking program list screen (p.214)/Timer recording list screen (p.214)

New, Edit……Newly add or edit booking program/timer recording entries. →p.214

Sort……Sort entries by selected condition.

Delete……Select "Delete this", "Delete selected", "Delete past" or "Delete all".
"Selecting multiple"→p.38
- "Delete past" deletes entries with start date and time set before current date and time.

Memory info*……View video storage capacity.

*: Only available on the Timer recording list screen.

Configuring 1seg Settings

<User settings>

1 MENU ▶"1SEG"▶"User settings"

2 Select any item

Subtitles……Show subtitles at bottom (ON(Wide:Bottom)), at top (ON(Wide:Top)), or hide (OFF).

Rec. while low battery……Set whether to continue recording when battery becomes low while recording.

- **ON** (default)……Continue recording without displaying the confirmation screen.
- **OFF**……A screen appears asking whether to finish recording.

TV sound while closed (default: ON)……Set whether to continue outputting sound when the FOMA terminal is closed while watching.

ECO mode (default: OFF)……Set whether to reduce backlight brightness to conserve battery.

Display light……Set display light for watching.

- **Constant light** (default)……Always turn on display light.
- **Lighting duration**……Set display light duration (01 to 30 minutes).

Data BC settings

- **Set image disp.** (default: ON)……Set whether to display images on data broadcast site.
- **Sound effect** (default: ON)……Set whether to enable sound effects for data broadcast/data broadcast site.
- **Reset disp. set.**……Set to hide a confirmation screen afterwards by selecting "YES(Always)". Perform this setting to redisplay a confirmation screen.

Icon show(Wide) (default: Show always)……Set whether to always or temporarily show icons other than program title in landscape display (p.210).

Check TV settings……Confirm User settings.

Reset channel setting……Delete all channels.

Reset storage area……Delete channel information from storage area.

- **Delete this**……Delete selected channel only.
- **Delete all**……Delete all channels.

Reset TV settings……Reset "User settings" to default.

Continued on next page

NOTE

<TV sound while closed>

- If set to “ON”, data broadcast site information may automatically update and packet communications charges may apply even when the FOMA terminal is closed.

<ECO mode>

- When activating the view style in ECO mode, cache data broadcast site data will be cleared.

<Reset disp. set.>

- 1seg activation confirmation screen (p.208) is not reset.

<Icon show(Wide)>

- Even if set to “Show temporarily”, an icon may appear in a weak signal location.

Notifying New Message Arrival While Watching

<Mail ticker>

Ticker shows new message arrival while viewing 1seg: i-mode mail, SMS, Area Mail and MessageR/F.

1 MENU ▶“SETTINGS”▶“Display”▶“Mail ticker”▶Select any item

Display sender……Display sender name stored in Phonebook.

Display sender/subject……Display sender name stored in Phonebook and subject.

Not display……Hide mail ticker.

NOTE

- Only new arrival appears in the following cases:
  - Sender e-mail address is not stored in phonebook
  - Area Mail or MessageR/F arrives
  - New filtering message comes to lock-active folder
  - Inbox is locked
  - Original lock is active for the phonebook or message

Full Browser

Displaying Website Designed for PC ..... Full Browser 218
Setting the Full Browser ..... Full Browser settings 221
Cookie 221
Referer 222

Home URL, bookmark and other data registered in Full Browser are not available for i-mode. Furthermore, the settings performed in Full Browser are invalid for i-mode.

Displaying Website Designed for PC <Full Browser>

You can enjoy viewing websites designed for PC with the Full Browser function. Some websites incompatible with i-mode can be displayed correctly.

- Some websites may not be displayed or be displayed incorrectly.
- Note that the communication charge can become expensive if large volumes of data is acquired by viewing websites containing many image data or downloading files. For details on packet communication fee, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".
- You can view a website composed of frames*1. You can also select a frame to display it. →p.220
- You can view SSL/TLS*2-compliant websites in Full Browser.

*1: The "frame" used in this chapter refers to each of separated sections that constitute a website page and differs from that used for framed photography.

*2: SSL and TLS are authentication/encryption technology to protect your privacy in data transmissions. Data sent to or received from a SSL/TLS page is encrypted to prevent hackers from eavesdropping data, site spoofing or altering, thus making credit card transactions and the sending of personal information (e.g. address) safer.

Displaying a website

1 [i] ▶ **"Full Browser"**

2 **Select any item:**

Home……Displays a website with the URL registered as home URL.

Bookmark……Displays the website registered as bookmark.

URL history →p.138

Enter URL……Enters a URL to display the website.

Full Browser settings →p.221

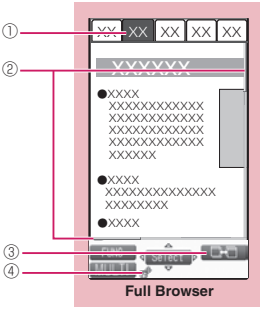
■ When the confirmation message asking whether to use Full Browser appears

The default setting of "Access setting" (setting whether to use Full Browser) is "OFF".
When "OFF" is set for "Access setting", the confirmation message asking whether to use Full Browser appears. Read the given notes carefully and perform the setting.
When you select "Yes" on the confirmation message, "ON" is set for "Access setting" (p.221) and the setting will be retained.

NOTE

- You cannot save a page displayed in Full Browser as a screen memo.
- Websites displayed in Full Browser cannot be viewed in i-mode.
- The Full Browser does not support Flash movies or PDF.
- Be sure to insert the FOMA card (UIM) before setting "Access setting".
- When "Access setting" is set to "ON" and the FOMA card (UIM) is replaced, the "Access setting" changes to "OFF".

Guide to the Full Browser screen



Function menu➡p.220

①Tab
- As many tabs and titles as the number of websites displayed simultaneously (if there is no title, the URL is displayed)
- "" indicating that the selected frame (p.220) appears
- "" is also displayed when another frame is in communication while the selected frame is displayed (p.220).

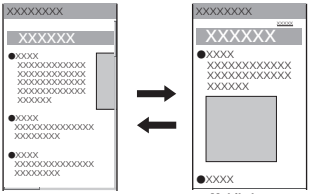
②Scroll bar
Current position in the displayed website (Not displayed for Mobile layout)

③ Change window icon
Pressing ( ) switches pages when multiple websites are open.

④ FB or
Appears during connection to the Internet with Full Browser.
(Displays "FB" when Mobile layout mode is used)

● Layout

2 display mode are available (Original layout/Mobile layout).



Original layout Mobile layout

■Original layout

Websites are displayed in the similar size to the display of 800 dots wide × 600 dots high on a PC. You can view the area not displayed on the screen by scrolling vertically and horizontally.

■Mobile layout

Websites are displayed in the width of a FOMA terminal display. Only vertical scrolling is required for viewing websites.

■Switching the display mode

The display mode switches between Original layout and Mobile layout each time you select "Change disp. mode" from the function menu.

- The default mode can be set in "Display mode setting" (p.221) of "Full Browser settings".
- The display mode is retained when Full Browser is exit. The same display mode is applied when the Full Browser is activated next time.

Operations on the Full Browser screen

● Scrolling

Key	Description
	Scrolls to the direction that the key is pressed. Holding the key scrolls the screen continuously in the same direction.
(▲マナー) (▼メモ)	Scrolls up or down by screens.
(▲マナー) (1 second or longer) (▼メモ) (1 second or longer)	Jumps to the top or bottom of the website.

● Useful keys for the Full Browser screen

Key	Description
1	Zooms out (Makes the font size smaller in Mobile layout)
2*	Selecting a desired portion of the entire page, then displaying the designated part. (Not available for the landscape screen)
3	Zooms in (Makes the font size bigger in Mobile layout)
4	Goes back one page from the current page.
5	Displays the Bookmark folder list screen.
6	Jump forward to a page that has been stored in the FOMA terminal's cache.
9*	Displays the website in landscape screen or release the landscape screen (return to the portrait screen).
0	Displays a description of an operation assigned to a key.

* : Available only in Original layout.

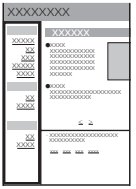
NOTE

- The function key is available in the landscape screen even though the function screen is not displayed.
- The landscape screen returns to the portrait screen after pressing CLR to close any window while multiple windows are active.

● Displaying a page composed of frames

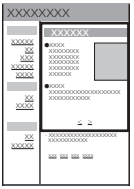
You can view websites composed of frames that are designed for PC.

1 Full Browser screen (p.218)▶Display a website composed of frames

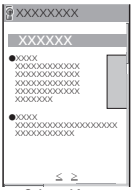


2 Select a frame

The selected frame is displayed.



All frames



Selected frame

■ **To return to the all frames screen**

▶CLR

NOTE

- For a website including several frames, all the frames may not be displayed (resulting in frames without characters or images).

● Uploading images

You can upload JPEG or GIF images stored in your FOMA terminal to websites depending on websites.

- Procedure for uploading images depends on websites. Follow the procedure described on the website you visit.

NOTE

- You cannot upload multiple images that exceed 80K bytes in total or data in which the selected image and other data exceed 100K bytes in total.
- Some websites may not support uploading function.
- You cannot upload images that are not allowed to be output to a device outside the FOMA terminal.

FUNC Full Browser screen (p.218)

Add bookmark……Adds the website to the bookmark. Up to 100 entries can be stored.

Bookmark……Opens the Bookmark folder list screen. Up to 12 Bookmark folders can be created, and the minimum folders are 3 (including Secret folders).

Save image……Saves the image on the displayed page.

Enter URL……Enters a URL to display the website.

URL history→p.138

Change side mode⇔**Release side mode***1……Displays the website in landscape screen or release the landscape screen (return to the portrait screen).

Zoom*2……Selects the screen size from "Small 2/Small 1/Standard/Large 1/Large 2/Zoom in position".
When you select the "Zoom in position", select a desired portion of the entire page.

Change font size*3……Selects the font size from "Small/Standard/Large/X-large".→p.93

Window

- **Open new window**……"Using multi window"→p.140
- **Close window**……Closes the displayed window.
- **Change window**……Switches windows when multiple websites are open.

All frames……Returns to the all frames screen from the Selected frame screen

Change disp. mode……Switches between "Original layout" and "Mobile layout".

Reload……Refreshes the displayed website.

Compose message……Pastes the URL of the displayed website to compose an i-mode message.

History back……Goes back one page from the current page.

History forward……Returns to the page that had been displayed before performing "History back".

Add shortcut→p.94

Home

- **Set as home URL**……Registers the URL of the displayed website as the home URL. Only one URL can be stored.
- **Display home**……Displays a website registered as home URL.

Site info

- **Title**……Displays the title of the displayed website.
- **URL**……Displays the URL of the displayed website.

Certificate……Displays the SSL/TLS certificate details when the displayed website supports SSL/TLS.

Browser settings

Replay……Plays an animation in the displayed website from the beginning.

Set image disp. (default: ON)……Sets whether to display images. When "OFF" is set, "" appears instead of images.

Referer setting (default: Send)→p.222

Cookie settings (default: Valid)→p.222

Delete cookies→p.222

Change CHR code……Changes the character code to redisplay a website that is not displayed correctly.

Help……Displays a description of an operation assigned to a key.

*1: Unavailable in Mobile layout.
*2: Appears when Original layout mode is used.
*3: Appears when Mobile layout mode is used.

NOTE

<Save image>

- PNG and BMP images are automatically saved in an "OUDXXX" (XXX are numerals) folder under the "OTHER" folder of the microSD card.

Setting the Full Browser

<Full Browser settings>

1 ▶"Full Browser"▶"Full Browser settings"▶Select any item:

Access setting (default: No)……Sets whether to use the Full Browser.

Home URL (default: Google (http://www.google.co.jp))……Sets the home URL.

Scroll

Speed (default: High speed)……Selects the scrolling speed from "High speed/Low speed".

During scroll in focus (default: OFF)……Sets whether to highlight the linked pages while scrolling.

Set image disp. (default: ON)……Sets whether to display images. When "OFF" is set, "" appears instead of images.

Cookie settings (default: Valid)→p.222

Delete cookies→p.222

Referer setting (default: Send)→p.222

Display mode setting (default: Original layout)

Original layout (default: Standard)……Selects the display from "Small 2/Small 1/Standard/Large 1/Large 2".

Mobile layout (default: Standard)……Selects the font size from "Small/Standard/Large/X-large".

Script setting (default: Valid)……Sets whether to validate JavaScript* or not when displaying a page. Some websites may be displayed incorrectly unless "Script setting" is set to "Valid".

Window open guard (default: Invalid)……Sets whether to automatically open a new window by using JavaScript*. When set to "Valid", a window is not opened automatically.

Tab display setting (default: Open at the back side)……Sets whether to switch the screen (Open at the front) or not (Open at the back side) while the current screen is displayed.

Check settings……Checks the Full Browser settings.

Reset……Resets the settings specified in "Full Browser settings" to the default settings.

* : JavaScript is a programming language that can be included on web pages to make them more interactive.

Cookie

Using Cookie* enables you to effectively access the websites that you have seen once.

* : Cookie is the mechanism for temporarily saving the date you accessed the website, number of accesses and your other information. The information is sent from server, saved temporarily in your FOMA terminal and used for contents service.
If Cookie is sent, the information such as date you accessed the website and number of accesses is also sent to the site. Please note that NTT DOCOMO is not responsible for any reveal of your information to third parties because of sending Cookie.
However, some websites and contents services require you to validate the Cookie settings for their correct display and use.

Setting Cookie

1 [i]▶"Full Browser"▶"Full Browser settings"▶"Cookie settings"▶Select any item:

Valid……Always validates Cookie.
No confirmation is made when Cookie is sent or received.

Invalid……Always invalidates Cookie.

Notify (sending)……Enables you to choose whether to send Cookie every time you connect to a page. No confirmation is made when Cookie is received and the information is saved in your FOMA terminal.

Notify (receiving)……Enables you to choose whether to receive Cookie every time you connect to a page. No confirmation is made when Cookie is sent.

Notify (send/recv.)……Enables you to choose whether to send or receive Cookie every time you connect to a page.

NOTE

- Cookies are deleted in the ascending order of no use when the number and size of Cookies exceed the maximum limit.
- Resetting the Full Browser settings deletes Cookies.

Deleting Cookie

You can delete the Cookies for Full Browser stored in your FOMA terminal.

1 [i]▶"Full Browser"▶"Full Browser settings"▶"Delete Cookies"▶Enter your security code▶"YES"

All the Cookies for Full Browser stored in your FOMA terminal are deleted. (You cannot delete them separately.)

Referer

You can set whether to send Referer*.

* : Referer is information of source link. Sending Referer transfers information such as the page from which you access the site.
Please note that NTT DOCOMO is not responsible for any reveal of your information to third parties because of sending Referer.
However, you may not access the linked pages in some websites unless Referer is sent.

Setting Referer

1 [i]▶"Full Browser"▶"Full Browser settings"▶"Referer setting"▶Select any item:

Send……Sends Referer.

Unsend……Does not send Referer.

Notify……Confirms whether to send Referer.

Data Display/Edit/Management

Data Box 224

Mastering still images

Displaying the Stored Images ..... My picture 225
Editing Images ..... Edit image 231

Mastering movies

Playing Movies/i-motion ..... i-motion 233
Editing Movies ..... Edit movie 235

Mastering video

Playing Video ..... Video player 235

Mastering Chara-den

What is Chara-den? 237
Saving Chara-den Character as Image or Movie ..... Rec. Chara-den 239

Mastering melodies

Playing Melodies ..... Melody 240

Mastering Kisekae Tool

Managing Kisekae Tool ..... Kisekae Tool 242

Mastering Memory Cards

microSD Card 243
Displaying the Data in the microSD Card 247
Exchanging the Data Between the microSD Card and FOMA Terminal 248
Moving the Copyrighted Data Among the microSD Card and FOMA Terminal ..... Movable contents 250
Managing the microSD Card 251
Setting the USB Mode ..... USB mode setting 251
Using the FOMA Terminal as a microSD Reader/Writer 252
Setting How to Print Images Stored on the microSD Card ..... DPOF setting 252

Mastering various data

Working with Folders and Files 253
Managing the Phonebook and SMS on the FOMA Card ..... UIM operation 254

Transferring data with Infrared data exchange/iC communication/cable connection

Infrared Data Exchange/iC Communication 255
Forwarding Data with Infrared Data Exchange ..... Infrared data exchange 257
Forwarding Data with iC Communication ..... iC communication 259
Forwarding Data by Cable Connection ..... OBEX™ connection 260
Barring Phonebook Image Forwarding ..... Forwarding image 260
Using the Infrared Remote Control Function 261

Mastering PDF/Document viewer

Viewing PDF Data ..... My document 261
Viewing Documents ..... Document viewer 263
PDF Data Screen/Document View Screen 263

Data Box

In Data Box, still images and movies shot using the FOMA terminal's camera or data downloaded from mails or websites are saved.

■Folders

- The following items and folders are prepared and you can categorize the data into the folders depending on the file type.

Folder	Contents
My picture	
Inbox	You can select this folder to save still images shot using the FOMA terminal's camera, and images retrieved from websites, mails or Bar code reader. Images copied from the microSD card or forwarded by infrared data exchange are automatically saved to this folder.
Camera	You can select this folder to save same images as Inbox. Images shot with Chara-den shooting are automatically saved to this folder.
Decomail-picture*1	Images for Deco-mail® are pre-installed. You can select this folder to save same images as Inbox.
Decorate PI*2	Deco-mail® pictographs are stored in the folder which is arranged by the categories. Deco-mail® pictographs downloaded from website, attached to mails or copied from the microSD card are saved.
Pre-installed	Standby screens, wakeup images and animations are pre-installed.
Secret*3	Save the images you want to prevent others from viewing.
User-created folder*4	You can select this folder to save same images as Inbox.
Original animation	Animations created from continuous mode and original animations are stored.

Folder		Contents
micro SD	Picture	Still images you shot, JPEG/GIF images copied from the FOMA terminal, JPEG/GIF images stored on the microSD card from a PC are saved.
	Decorate PI*2	Deco-mail® pictographs copied from the FOMA terminal or stored on the microSD card from a PC are saved.
	Image Box	GIF animations and SWF Flash movie copied from the FOMA terminal, JPEG images, GIF animations stored and SWF Flash on the microSD card from a PC are saved.
Frame		Frames are pre-installed. Frames retrieved from websites are automatically saved to this folder.
Stamp		Image stamps are pre-installed. Stamps retrieved from websites are automatically saved to this folder.
Music		
Playlist		Playlists created on the FOMA terminal are saved.
Inbox		You can select this folder to save music data.
WMA		Music data transferred from a PC to the microSD card is saved.
Movable contents		Music data moved from the FOMA terminal to the microSD card is saved.
Pre-installed		Music data is pre-installed.
User-created folder*4		You can select this folder to save same the music data as Inbox.
Music&Video Channel		
Delivery program		The stored programs appear.
User-created folder*4		You can select this folder to save the programs that is moved from the Delivery program.
i-motion		
Inbox		You can select this folder to save movies shot using the FOMA terminal's camera, movies and i-motion retrieved from websites or mails. Movies/i-motion copied from the microSD card or forwarded by infrared data exchange are automatically saved to this folder.
Camera		You can select this folder to save same movies and i-motion as Inbox. Movies shot with Chara-den shooting are automatically saved to this folder.

Folder		Contents
Secret*3		Save the movies and i-motion you want to prevent others from viewing.
User-created folder*4		You can select this folder to save same movies and i-motion as Inbox.
micro SD	SD Video*5	Movies you shot, movies/i-motion copied from the FOMA terminal or movies stored on the microSD card from a PC are saved.
	Multimedia*6	
Movable contents		Movie/i-motion moved from the FOMA terminal to the microSD card is saved.
Playlist		This folder is used for playing a movie playlist.→p.234
Melody		
Inbox		You can select this folder to save melodies retrieved from websites, mails or Bar code reader. Melodies copied from the microSD card or forwarded by infrared data exchange are automatically saved to this folder.
Pre-installed		Melodies and sound effect are pre-installed.
User-created folder*4		You can select this folder to save same melodies as Inbox.
Voice announce		Voice recorded using the voice announce function is automatically saved to this folder.
microSD		Melodies copied from the FOMA terminal or stored on the microSD card from a PC are saved.
Playlist		This folder is used for playing a melody playlist.→p.242
My document		
Inbox		PDF data is pre-installed. You can select this folder to save PDF data obtained from websites or mail. PDF files copied from a microSD card or forwarded by infrared data exchange are automatically saved to this folder.
User-created folder*4		You can select this folder like Inbox to save PDF data.
microSD		PDF files copied from the FOMA terminal or PC to a microSD card are saved.
Chara-den		
Chara-den is pre-installed. Chara-den retrieved from websites are automatically saved to this folder.		
Kisekae Tool		
Packages are pre-installed. Packages retrieved from websites are automatically saved to this folder.		

Folder		Contents
1Seg		
Image	Inbox	1seg still images are automatically saved here.
	User-created folder*4	Still images can be moved from Inbox to save here.
Video	microSD	1seg videos are saved here.
Document viewer		
microSD		Documents obtained from mail or copied from a PC to a microSD card are saved.

*1: Images set to functions cannot be saved.
*2: You can save only Deco-mail® pictographs (20 dots wide × 20 dots high, non-file-restricted JPEG/GIF images, GIF animations) to this folder.
*3: Displayed only in Secret or Secret data only mode.
*4: You can create up to 20 folders with "Add folder". Enter the folder name when using "Add folder". You can change the folder name afterwards using "Edit folder name".
*5: Movies/i-motion with video are saved.
*6: Movies/i-motion with sound only (including the music data of AAC format) can be stored.

Displaying the Stored Images
<My picture>

Still images shot using the FOMA terminal's camera or downloaded from websites can be displayed in My picture of the Data Box.

1 MENU▶"DATA BOX"▶"My picture"

The "Folder list" screen appears.
Contents of the My picture folder→p.224

Folder list

Function menu➡p.253

■ **To view still images recorded with 1seg**

▶MENU▶"DATA BOX"▶"1Seg"▶"Image"

2 **Select a folder**

The "Image list" screen (9 images) appears.
Image list screen→p.226

Image list

Function menu➡p.228

■ **To search images by i-mode**

▶"Search by i-mode"▶"YES"

Continued on next page

3 Select an image

The "My picture" screen appears.
Use [ch] to display the previous or next image.

My picture

Function menu➡p.228

■ **To switch the screen mode**

▶[ch] (Normal/Full)

In the Full screen mode, the oblong image is displayed just as it is, and rectangular image rotates to the right 90 degrees and displayed.

■ **To zoom in an image**

▶[■] ([🔍])

The image is zoomed in or out by one step each time you press [🗑] (+) or [ch] (-).
Pressing [✉] (Actual) displays the image in the actual size.
If the image does not fit in the screen, use [⊕] to scroll the image.
To return to the original zoom, press [■] (Back).

NOTE

- The following images cannot be displayed:
  - An image which exceeds 2M bytes
  - An image whose width or height exceeds 2,592 dots or total number of dots exceeds 2,592 × 1,944 dots
  - A progressive JPEG or GIF image whose total number of dots exceeds 854 × 480
- While displaying in the large size, you cannot change to the previous or next image by using [⊕] or display the function menu.
- When enlarging an image larger than 1,705 dots wide × 1,705 dots high, you may not be able to display the image in the actual size.
- Original animation, GIF-formatted animation or Flash movie cannot be displayed in the large size.
- Flash movies are played at the volume set in "Phone" in the "Ring volume" settings (if "Step" is set, Flash movies are played at the "Level 2" volume).

Guide to the 9 images view/list view

● Setting the Image list display mode

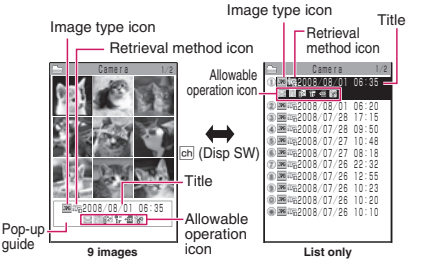
<Viewer settings>

1 [MENU]▶"SETTINGS"▶"Display"▶"Viewer settings"▶Select any item:

List only (default)……Changes to the list view.

9 images……Changes to the images view.

● Guide to the 9 images view/list view



■**9 images**

9 images stored on the FOMA terminal appear on the screen.

* Original animations are always displayed in list view.

■**List only**

11 images are listed on the screen.

■**Image type icon**

Icon	Description
JPG	JPEG format image
GIF	GIF format image
	GIF (IFM) frame, image stamp
	SWF Flash movie
	MP4 movie/i-motion
(Blue note)	MP4 i-motion with sound effect
(Orange note)	ASF i-motion
	MP4 i-motion with playback restriction
	MP4 format i-motion with sound effect and playback restriction
	Partially downloaded i-motion
(Green note)	i-motion that can be moved to the FOMA terminal (Phone)
(Blue note)	Sound effected i-motion that can be moved to the FOMA terminal (Phone)
	i-motion that is prohibited to move to the FOMA terminal (Phone)
	AFD Chara-den
	Video recorded with 1seg
	Image to which the FOMA card security function applies

: Data that are file-restricted or not allowed to be attached to mails or output from the FOMA terminal

: i-motion with playback restriction (“ ” turns to “ ” when the playback count, period or limit expires)

: Movable only when the FOMA card being used was also used to save the i-motion

: Movable only when the model and FOMA card being used were also used to save the i-motion

■Retrieval method icon

Icon	Description
No icon	Pre-installed data
	Data downloaded from site, mail, ToruCa or retrieved from i-αppli
	Data you shot with camera
	Data acquired via Infrared data exchange, iC communication, the microSD card, Bar code reader or PC
	Downloaded frames and image stamps
	Chara-den shots
	Data recorded with 1seg
	Data clipped out of PDF data

■Allowable operation icon

Icon	Description
QVGA	Movies/i-motion of QVGA size (can be displayed only on the i-motion folder)
VGA	Movies/i-motion data of VGA size (can be displayed only on the i-motion folder)
	Can be attached to i-mode mail (2M bytes or smaller)
	Can be inserted into Deco-mail®
	Can be set to the screen
	Can be specified as Ring tone
Ir	Can be transferred via Infrared data exchange and iC communication
	Can be copied to the microSD card
	Can be edited
	i-motion data that can be moved to the microSD card
	Larger than 10M bytes (10M bytes is not included) (can be displayed only on the microSD folder)

: Movable only when the FOMA card being used was also used to save the i-motion

: Movable only when the model and FOMA card being used were also used to save the i-motion

■File format

Folder	File format
My picture	
Inbox	JPEG, GIF, SWF
Camera	
Decomail-picture	
Decorate PI	JPEG, GIF
Pre-installed	JPEG, SWF
Secret	JPEG, GIF, SWF
User-created folder	
Original animation	—
microSD	JPEG, GIF, SWF
Frame	IFM
Stamp	
Music	
Playlist	—
Inbox	3GP
WMA	WMA
Movable contents	SB2
Pre-installed	3GP
User-created folder	
Music&Video Channel	
Delivery program	3GP, MP4
User-created folder	
i-motion	
Inbox	MP4
Camera	
Secret	
User-created folder	
microSD	MP4, ASF (ASF is for playback only)
Movable contents	SB1
Playlist	—
Melody	
Inbox	SMF, MFi
Pre-installed	MFi
User-created folder	SMF, MFi
Voice announce	—
microSD	SMF, MFi
Playlist	—
My document	
Inbox	PDF
User-created folder	
microSD	
Chara-den	
—	AFD

Continued on next page

Folder	File format
Kisekae Tool	
—	UCM, UCP
1Seg	
Image	JPEG
Video	MPEG2-TS
Document viewer	
microSD	Word, Excel, PowerPoint

■**Titles and file names**

- Still images or movies you shot are automatically titled and named.
  Title : yyyy/mm/dd hh:mm (Year/Month/Day Time*)
  File name : yyyymmddhhmmxxx
  Date and time*
  (3-digit number is added in the xxx part for still image)
  * : The time when the still image is saved or when the movie shooting is finished is used. Note that the time when the movie is saved is used if the "Auto save set" is set to "OFF".
- Original titles are assigned to downloaded i-motion and Chara-den characters.
- The file names and titles are the same for downloaded images.
- Titles and file names of videos or still images recorded with 1seg→p.213
- The title is displayed on the Image list screen of the FOMA terminal.
- The file name is displayed when the data is transmitted to PC.
- If the file name contains an inappropriate character, the file is automatically renamed to "imagexxx" or "moviexxx".

■**File restriction**

This setting specifies whether you allow the receiver's FOMA terminal to redistribute (attach or forward) the image or movie you shot or melody when attaching it to a mail. When set to "File unrestricted", the receiver can redistribute the file freely. However, when set to "File restricted", the receiver cannot redistribute the file.

- You can change the file restriction setting after saving the image or movie.→pp.228, 234, 241

FUNC Image list screen (p.225) /My picture screen (p.226)

● The available functions vary depending on the folders, which means that the items listed in the function menu are different.

Edit image→p.231

Edit title*1……Edits the title of the image.
You can enter up to 9 double-byte or 18 single-byte characters (you can enter up to 18 double-byte or 36 single-byte characters for the microSD card.

Display image*1……Displays the image (displays the My picture screen).

Set as display……Sets the image for screens such as the standby screen.
"★" appears next to the selected item.
"Changing the Display"→p.88
"Setting an image to send"→p.67

Image info……File name and File save date and time are displayed.

Compose message*2……Composes an i-mode mail by selecting either attaching the still image or inserting it in the message.→p.230

iC transmission→p.259

Send Ir data • IrSS→p.258

Set image disp.*3……Sets the display size of images.

- **Normal** (default)……Displays the image in the actual size.
- **Fit in display**……Displays the image fit in the screen regardless of the image size.

Normal⇔Full screen*3……In the Full screen mode, the oblong image is displayed just as it is, and rectangular image rotates to the right 90 degrees and displayed. In the Normal mode, the oblong image or the rectangular image is displayed just as it is.

Add shortcut→p.94

Copy to microSD→p.248

Add image to PB……Saves the image to the phonebook.→p.71

Edit file name*1……Edits the file name of the image.
You can enter up to 36 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols ("-" and "_" only).

File restriction*1……Specifies whether to allow the redistribution of the saved image.→p.228

Move*1……Selects from "Move this/Move selected/Move all" and moves the image to the other folder you select.
"About multiple-choice"→p.38

Memory info*1……Displays the amount of image stored and available space (the amount of the data of the FOMA terminal does not contain the amount of the secret data).

Sort*1……Sorts images in a selected criteria.

Chg. list view⇔Chg. images view*1……Switches between list view and images view.

Composite image*1→p.230

Retry*3……Replays the displayed animation from the beginning.

Store in Center*1→p.229

Delete[*1]……Selects the deleting method from "Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all".
"About multiple-choice"→p.38

Delete this[*3]……Deletes one image.

Keep in secret⇔**Put out**[*1*4]……"Preventing Others from Viewing Data"→p.104

Copy to Phone[*5]→p.249

DPOF setting[*5]→p.252

Copy[*1*5]……"Copying the data to the different folder in the microSD card"→p.250

*1: Available only with the Image list screen.
*2: Not available when 2in1 is in B mode.
*3: Available only with the My picture screen.
*4: Available only in Secret or Secret data only mode.
*5: Available only for images stored on the microSD card.

NOTE

<Edit title>
- You may not be able to edit the title when the space is not enough on the microSD card.
- You cannot edit the titles of the pre-installed images.

<Set as display>
- You can set the images in Inbox, Camera or User-created folder to the following screens:
  - Standby screen, wake-up display
  - Dialing/calling screens of voice or videophone calls
  - Mail sending/receiving/checking/receiving result
  - Answer hold/on hold/substitute image/record message/preparing message/voice memo for videophone calls
- You cannot specify the following images to the screens:
  - An image whose width or height is larger than 854 dots
  - An image whose file size exceeds 100K bytes (except for standby and wake-up display)

<Normal/Full screen>
- In case of GIF animations and SWF Flash movies, the display does not change even if you switch the Normal mode and Full screen.

<Add image to PB>
- You can add an image whose size is 100K bytes or smaller and whose width or height is 854 dots or smaller.
- You cannot add images other than JPEG or GIF.

<Edit file name>
- You cannot edit the names of the following images:
  - Pre-installed images
  - A still image of Chara-den character with "Rec. File Restriction"
  - Images that is prohibited to be output from your FOMA terminal
- You cannot use single-byte spaces for file names.

<File restriction>
- You cannot change restrictions if it is:
  - Neither JPEG nor GIF
  - A still image of Chara-den character with "Rec. File Restriction"

NOTE

<Sort>
- "By source" sorts the images in the following order.
  ①Downloaded images or images acquired from i-αppli or ToruCa
  ②Still images shot by the camera
  ③Images retrieved using Infrared data exchange, iC communication or from microSD card, etc.
  ④Chara-den shots
  ⑤Images clipped out of PDF data
  ⑥Pre-installed images

● Storing images at the Data Security Center

You can store images, etc. stored in the FOMA terminal at the Data Security Center.
- Data Security Service is a pay service you need to apply for. If you have not subscribed to the service and try to connect to the Data Security Center, the notification screen appears.

1 Image list screen (p.225)▶✉ (FUNC)▶"Store in Center"▶Use ✥ to select an image▶i (Finish)
You can select up to 10 images.

2 Enter your security code▶"YES"
The FOMA terminal connects to the Data Security Center to start saving the images.

3 i (Finish)

NOTE

- You cannot save images when the file size for a image exceeds 100K bytes, when it is prohibited to be output from the FOMA terminal, pre-installed Deco-mail® pictures or pictographs.

■To restore images

The image data stored at the Data Security Center can be stored on the FOMA terminal from the site of the Data Security Center. For details on how to use, refer to "Mobile Phone User's Guide [i-mode] FOMA version".

Attaching or inserting image to compose an i-mode mail or Deco-mail®

You can attach the saved still image to an i-mode mail message or insert it in a Deco-mail® message.

1 Image list screen (p.225)▶✉ (FUNC)▶"Compose message"▶Select any item:

Attach image……Attaches the image that is not larger than 240 dots wide × 320 dots high or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high. Select any of the following items to attach an image that is larger than the image described above.

Attach mail……Attaches the image without changing the image size.

QVGA scale down……Attaches image by reducing its image size to 240 dots wide × 320 dots high or 320 dots wide × 240 dots high or smaller without changing its aspect ratio.

Insert image……Inserts the image that is smaller than 96 dots wide × 128 dots high or 128 dots wide × 96 dots high and its file size is 90K bytes or less to the Deco-mail® message. Select any of the following items to attach an image that is larger than the image described above.

Insert mail……Inserts image by reducing its file size to 90K bytes or less without changing the image size.

SubQCIF scale down……Inserts image by reducing its image size to 96 dots wide × 128 dots high or 128 dots wide × 96 dots high without changing its aspect ratio. Also, changes the file size if its file size is larger than the maximum.

2 Check the edited image▶■ (Set)▶Compose message

■ **When you select "Attach mail/Insert mail"**
There is no checking operation of the image.
"Composing and Sending i-mode Mail"→p.156
"Composing Deco-mail®"→p.158

Making a composite image from 4 images

- You cannot specify images larger than 352 dots wide × 288 dots high or 288 dots wide × 352 dots high, except the following:
  - VGA (640 × 480), VGA V. (480 × 640)
  - Screen (240 × 427)
  - CIF V. (288 × 352)
  - QVGA V. (240 × 320)

1 Image list screen (p.225)▶✉ (FUNC)▶"Composite image"

2 Select the position▶Select a folder▶Select an image▶Repeat the step to select 4 images

■ **To cancel the specified image**
▶Select the image to cancel▶"Release this" on the folder selection screen

3 ℹ (Finish)▶■ (Save)

■ **To retry creating the composite image**
▶ℹ (Cancel)

Creating animations <Original animation>

You can create an animated cartoon made of up to 20 frames using stored images.

- You can specify JPEG images which are 854 dots wide × 854 dots high or smaller as an original animation.
- You can create up to 20 animations.

1 MENU▶"DATA BOX"▶"My picture"▶"Original animation"

The "Original animation list" screen appears.

Original animation list
Function menu➡p.231

2 "<New>"

3 Select a frame▶Select a folder▶Select an image▶Repeat the step to specify images

■ **To cancel the specified image**
▶Select the frame to cancel▶"Release this" on the folder selection screen

4 [i] **(Finish)**

FUNC Original animation list screen (p.230)

Edit title……Edits the title of the original animation. You can enter up to 9 double-byte or 18 single-byte characters.

Org. animation……Newly creates Original animation when "<New>" is highlighted.
Edits the original animation when the existing one is highlighted.

Display image……Plays the original animation (Displays the original animation playback screen).

Set as display……Selects the item to which the original animation is set.

Image info……Checks the destination to save the original animation set in "Set as display".
If there is no setting, "No set" is displayed.

Release animation……Cancels the original animation.

Playing the original animation

1 Original animation list screen (p.230)▶Select an original animation

The "Original animation playback" screen appears.
If there are two original animations or more, use [◇] to play the previous or next animation.

Original animation playback

Function menu➡p.231

FUNC Original animation playback screen (p.231)

Set as display……Selects the item to which the image is set.

Set image disp.……Specifies the display mode of an image smaller than the image display area.

- **Normal** (default)……Displays the image in the actual size.
- **Fit in display**……Enlarges the movie to the display size.

Retry……Plays the animation from the beginning.

Editing Images <Edit image>

You can edit the still images you shot, etc.

- The following are the contents and size you can edit:

  [Frame]
  - 854 × 480, 480 × 854 dots
  - 640 × 480, 480 × 640 dots
  - 352 × 288, 288 × 352 dots
  - 320 × 240, 240 × 320 dots
  - 427 × 240, 240 × 427 dots
  - 176 × 144, 144 × 176 dots
  - 128 × 96, 96 × 128 dots

  [Image effect/Correct backlight/Refresh skin tone]
  - Up to 854 × 480, 480 × 854 dots

  [Image stamp/Character stamp/Trim away/Brightness/Rotate/Change size]
  - 2,592 × 1,944, 1,944 × 2,592 dots
  - 2,304 × 1,728, 1,728 × 2,304 dots
  - 2,048 × 1,536, 1,536 × 2,048 dots
  - 1,616 × 1,212, 1,212 × 1,616 dots
  - 1,600 × 1,200, 1,200 × 1,600 dots
  - 1,280 × 960, 960 × 1,280 dots
  - Up to 854 × 480, 480 × 854 dots
    However, an image larger than 854 × 480 or 480 × 854 dots is scaled dowen to 640 × 480 or 480 × 640 dots before editing.

* Even if the image size is able to edit in the descriptions above, some image may not support editing function. You can edit only the image with "✂". You cannot select the menu that cannot be edited.

- When "Edit image" is selected in the photo mode checking screen function menu, only the "Frame", "Image effect", "Refresh skin tone" and "Correct backlight" are available.

1 My picture screen (p.226)▶[✉] (FUNC)▶"Edit image"▶Select any item:

Frame→p.232

Image effect……Applies effects to the image.

- **Sharp**……Sharpens the outline of the image.
- **Blur**……Softens the outline of the image.
- **Sepia**……Makes the sepia-tone image.
- **Emboss**……Brings out the image in relief.
- **Negative**……Makes the negative image.
- **Horizontal flip**……Reverses the left and right in the image (mirroring).

Image stamp→p.232

Character stamp→p.232

Continued on next page

Trim away……Trim a constant size.
▶Select the image size for trimming▶ Adjust the position to trim with ▶ (Set)

Brightness……Selects the brightness in 5 levels from "-2 to ±0 to +2" using .

Rotate……Selects the angle to rotate the image from "90° to right/90° to left/180°".

Change size……Selects the image size for changing. The image is enlarged or reduced to fit in the selected size keeping the aspect ratio.

Correct backlight……Makes the dark part clear, which is caused by the backlight.

Refresh skin tone……Corrects the skin parts.

Compose message[*1*2]→p.230

Save[*1]……Saves the edited image.

*1: This function is available after editing an image.
*2: Not available when 2in1 is in B mode.

2 Check the edited image▶ (Set)

3 (Save)▶"YES" or "NO"
Selecting "YES" overwrites the original image. Selecting "NO" saves a new image to the folder where the original is stored.

NOTE
- Editing repeatedly may impair the image quality or increase the file size.

Adding frames

- You can use the downloaded frames in addition to the pre-installed ones.

1 My picture screen (p.226)▶ (FUNC)▶"Edit image"▶"Frame"▶Select a frame
The image is displayed in the selected frame. Use to change to another frame.

■ To rotate the frame 180°
▶ (Rotate)

■ To cancel the selected frame
▶ (FUNC)▶"Cancel"

NOTE
- If the size of the image that has been trimmed or resized is the same as that of the frame, the image can be framed.

Pasting image stamps

- You can use downloaded image stamps in addition to pre-installed ones.
- You can rotate, enlarge or reduce image stamps.

1 My picture screen (p.226)▶ (FUNC)▶"Edit image"▶"Image stamp"▶Select an image stamp

■ To edit an image stamp
▶ (FUNC)▶Select any item:

90° to right……Rotates 90° clockwise.

90° to left……Rotates 90° counterclockwise.

180°……Rotates 180°.

Scale up……Doubles the size.

Scale down……Reduces the size to half.

2 Adjust the image stamp position with ▶ (Put)

■ To paste another image stamp
▶ (Add)▶Repeat steps 1 to 2

NOTE
- You can only use downloaded stamps of 240 dots wide × 240 dots high or smaller. The stamps larger than the above size are handled as GIF images.

Pasting character stamps

- You can enter up to 15 double-byte or 30 single-byte characters as a stamp. The number of characters that can be entered differs depending on the image size and character size.
- You can change the character stamp color, font and size.

1 My picture screen (p.226)▶ (FUNC)▶"Edit image"▶"Character stamp"▶Enter characters

■ To edit a character stamp
▶ (FUNC)▶Select any item:

Character input……Enters the character.

Character color……Sets the color.
To use another color palette, press (Change).

Font type……Selects "Gothic" or "Ming-cho".

Font size……Selects the size from "Enlargement size/Standard size/Reduction size".

2 Adjust the character stamp position with ▶ (Put)

NOTE
- The font thickness is specified in the "Font" setting.

Playing Movies/i-motion

<i-motion>

You can play movies you have shot and i-motion downloaded from i-mode sites or websites.

1 MENU ▶"DATA BOX"▶"i-motion"

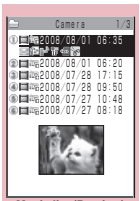
The "Folder list" screen appears.
i-motion folder→p.224

Folder list

Function menu➡p.253

2 Select a folder

The "Movie list screen (Preview)" appears.
Movie list screen→p.233



Movie list (Preview)

Function menu➡p.233

■ **To search i-motion by i-mode**

▶"Search by i-mode"▶"YES"

■ **For partly downloaded i-motion**

A confirmation message about downloading the remaining data appears. You cannot play the i-motion unless you download the rest of the data.

- Selecting "YES" starts downloading of the rest of the data.
- Selecting "NO" redisplays the "Movie list" screen.

3 Select a movie

The "Music Player" screen appears and the movie playback starts.
"Guide to Music Player" screen→p.277
"Operations on the Music Player" screen→p.278

NOTE

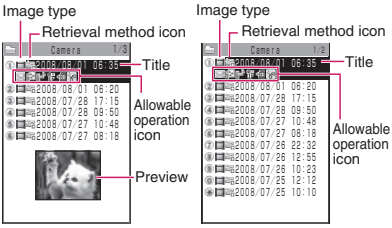
- Movies transmitted from blu-ray disc recorder can be played. For details, visit the following website:
http://www.sonyericsson.co.jp/so706i/bd.html
- A movie may not be properly played if it was not shot with FOMA SO706i.
- You can start playback from the point the playback was stopped last time when you receive a call during playback or when the playback is stopped by CLR or ☎. However, the playback may not start the precise point the playback was stopped last time.

NOTE

- For some i-motion, you can also select a chapter to play.

Guide to the preview/list view

- The icons for image types, retrieval methods and the available settings→p.226
- Titles and file names→p.228



Preview　　List view

■ **Preview**

The screen lists 6 movies and displays a preview image of the highlighted movie under the list. Preview images are not displayed for movies with no video such as a sound only i-motion (an i-motion with no video, such as a singer's voice).

■ **List view**

11 movies are listed on the screen.

FUNC Movie list screen (p.233)

- The available functions vary depending on the folders, which means that the items listed in the function menu are different.

Edit movie→p.235

Edit title……Edits the movie title.
You can enter up to 9 double-byte or 18 single-byte characters (You can enter up to 18 double-byte or 36 single-byte characters for the microSD card).

Select ring tone……Sets the movie sound as a ring tone.→p.82

Stand-by display……Sets the movie to the standby screen.

i-motion info……Displays an i-motion file name, a file save date and whether the i-motion can be moved to the microSD card.

Compose message[*1]……Composes an i-mode mail message with the movie attached.→p.156

iC transmission→p.259

Send Ir data→p.258

Continued on next page

Copy to microSD→p.248

Move to microSD→p.250

Move……Selects from "Move this/Move selected/Move all" and moves the movie to the other folder you select. "About multiple-choice"→p.38

Add shortcut→p.94

Edit file name……Edits the file name of the movie. You can enter up to 36 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols ("-" and "_" only).

File restriction……Specifies whether to allow the redistribution of the saved movie. "File restriction"→p.228

Reset title……Resets the title to the default.

Memory info……Displays the amount of movie stored and available space (the amount of the data of the FOMA terminal does not contain the amount of the secret data).

Sort……Sorts the movies in a selected criteria.

List setting……Specifies how to list the movies. The displayed menu differs on the FOMA terminal and microSD card.

Delete……Selects the deleting method from "Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all". "About multiple-choice"→p.38

Keep in secret⇔**Put out***2……"Preventing Others from Viewing Data"→p.104

Copy to Phone*3→p.249

Move to Phone*4→p.250

Copy*3……"Copying the data to the different folder in the microSD card"→p.250

*1: Not available when 2in1 is in B mode.
*2: Available only in Secret or Secret data only mode.
*3: Available only for movies stored on the microSD card.
*4: Available only for movies stored on the movable contents folder.

NOTE

<Select ring tone>
- You can only set a movie or i-motion with the Set as ring tone "Available". Refer to the "i-motion info" to check whether it is "Available" or "Unavailable".
- You cannot set the following movie or i-motion to the ring tone:
  - A movie or i-motion without audio
  - i-motion with the playback restriction
  - The size of the movie/i-motion is larger than QVGA (320 × 240) and smaller than VGA (640 × 480)
- If a movie larger than VGA (640 × 480) is set as a ring tone, an i-motion image does not appear on the screen.

NOTE

<Stand-by display>
- You cannot set the movie to the standby screen when:
  - The movie or i-motion is voice only
  - i-motion with the playback restriction
  - The size of the movie is larger than QVGA (320 × 240)

<Memory info>
- The displayed file size is only an approximation.

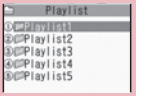
<Sort>
- "By source" sorts the images in the following order. Movies or i-motion with the same retrieval icon are arranged in the order in which they were displayed before you selected "By source".
  ①Downloaded i-motion or i-motion retrieved from i-αppli, etc.
  ②Movies shot by camera
  ③Movies retrieved using Infrared data exchange, iC communication or from microSD card, etc.
  ④Chara-den shots

● Playing movies in your preferred order
<Play movie playlist>

You can select and store up to 25 movies or i-motion to play multiple movies in sequence.
- There are 5 Playlist folders.

1 Folder list screen (p.233)▶Select "Playlist"

The "Playlist folder list" screen appears.



Playlist folder list
Function menu➡p.235

2 Highlight the destination playlist folder▶✉ (FUNC)▶"Edit playlist"

3 Select No. for the movie▶Select a folder▶Select a movie ▶Repeat steps to add

■ **To release the added movie**
▶Select the movie to release▶Select "Release this" on the folder selection screen▶"YES"

4 ▯ (Finish)

The i-motion Playlist folder list screen appears. Selecting the Playlist folder starts the playback of the playlist and the stored movie is played repeatedly.

FUNC Playlist folder list screen (p.234)

Edit playlist……Starts editing the playlist. You can edit a playlist which is already set.

Release playlist……Deletes the set movies and releases a playlist.

Editing Movies <Edit movie>

- You can edit the movies with "✂" only.

<Example: Movie list screen for Inbox, Camera or User-created folders>

1 Movie list screen (p.233)▶✉ (FUNC)▶"Edit movie"

The "Edit movie" screen appears.

Edit movie

2 ✉ (FUNC)▶Select any item:

Trim i-motion→p.235

Compose message*……Composes an i-mode mail with the movie attached.

File restriction……Specifies whether to allow the redistribution of the trimmed movie with "Trim i-motion". "File restriction"→p.228

* : Not available when 2in1 is in B mode.

NOTE

- You cannot use the Multitask function while editing movies.
- Editing may impair the movie quality.

● Trimming a part of the movie

1 Edit movie screen (p.235)▶✉ (FUNC)▶"Trim i-motion"

2 "Any size" or "500KB"▶■ (Start)

Trimming starts.

■ To start trimming at a scene mid-way through the movie

▶■ (Play)▶Press ■ (Stop) when it is the first frame you want to trim▶■ (Start)

3 Press ■ (Stop) when it is the last frame you want to trim▶■ (End)

■ When you select "500KB"

Trimming automatically stops once the trimmed size reaches 500K bytes.

4 The trimmed section of the movie is played

The playback stops automatically when it ends.

5 ■ (Set)▶■ (Save)▶"YES"

NOTE

- A movie whose size is larger than QCIF (176 × 144) cannot be trimmed away.

Playing Video <Video player>

Use the Video Player to play videos recorded from 1seg.

1 MENU▶"DATA BOX"▶"1Seg"▶"Video"

The "Folder list" screen appears.
Contents in the Video folder →p.225

Folder list

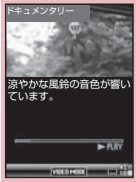
2 Select the microSD folder

The "Video list" screen appears.
Guide to the Video list screen→p.236

Video list (Preview)
Function menu➡p.236

3 Select the video

The "Video play" screen appears and video playback starts.
"Operation during the Video playback"→p.237



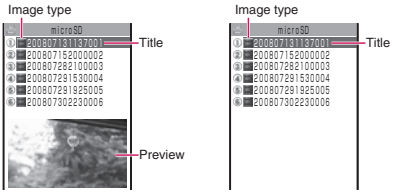
Video playback
Function menu➡p.237

NOTE

- Some types of video may not be played to the end.

Guide to the preview/list view

- Image type icons and retrieval method icons →p.226
- Titles and file names →p.226



Preview　　List view

■Preview

The screen lists 7 movies and displays a preview image of the highlighted movie under the list.

■List view

12 images are listed on the screen.

FUNC Video list screen (p.235)

Edit title……Edits the video title.

Show info……Displays the video program name, date and time of recording, etc.

Delete this/Delete all……Select the deletion method.

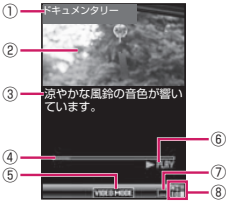
Multiple-choice……Delete multiple videos.

Check memory……Displays the video storage capacity.

Switch list……Specifies how to display the video list screen.

Initialize title……Resets the title to the default.

Guide to the video player screen



Portrait display

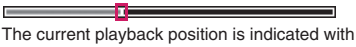
Landscape display

① Program title

② Image

③ Subtitles

④ Play position indication



The current playback position is indicated with a marker. Selecting “Position to play” from the Function menu and moving the marker with ⊡ and pressing ■ (Set) during pause starts playback from the position.

⑤ VIDEO MODE fixed display

⑥ Playback status

▶PLAY: During playback

❚❚PAUSE: During pause

▶x1.3: Quick view (x1.3)

⑦ Subtitles on/off

“⌨” is displayed if there are subtitles.

⑧ Volume

Indicates volume level from 0 to 20.

Operation during video playback

Key press	Operation
■ 9 (1 second or longer)	Switch screen directions In order of "Portrait" → "Wide (90° right)" → "Wide (90° left)"
i	Pause/Resume playback
ch	Mute
(▲マナー)/ (▼メモ))	Adjust volume
	Return to fast forward/ normal playback at 1.3× (During pause) Frame forward
	Return to fast forward/ normal playback at 1.3×
(1 second or longer)	30-second skip backward
(1 second or longer)	30-second skip forward
(1 second or longer)	Turn subtitles on/off
CLR	Stops playback

FUNC Video playback screen (p.235)

Show information……Displays the video program name, date and time of recording, etc.

Subtitles*……Sets whether to display subtitles.

- **ON (Wide:Bottom)** (default)……Displays subtitles at the bottom of the video playback screen.
- **ON (Wide:Top)**……Displays subtitles at the top of the video playback screen.
- **OFF**……No subtitle display.

Play……Plays at normal speed.

Quick view (×1.3)……Fast play at 1.3x speed.

Stop……Ends playback.

Location……Use to adjust and select the play position.

Main/Sub setting……Sets the audio output method.

- **Main sound** (default)……Outputs main sound only.
- **Sub sound**……Outputs secondary sound only.
- **Main+sub sound**……Outputs both primary and secondary sound.

Icon show(Wide)* (default: Show always)……Set whether to always or temporarily show icons such as playback position in landscape display.

*: This setting is also applied to the equivalent 1seg functions.

NOTE

- The function menu is available only when playback is paused.

<Quick view (×1.3)>

- Sound may hardly be heard during quick view.

What is Chara-den?

You can send a cartoon character to your party's FOMA terminal in a videophone call instead of the image from your own FOMA terminal camera.

Displaying Chara-den

- Downloading "Chara-den" characters→p.146

1 MENU▶"DATA BOX"▶"Chara-den"

The "Chara-den list" screen appears.

Chara-den list

Function menu➡p.238

2 **Select Chara-den**

The "Chara-den player" screen appears.

Chara-den

Function menu➡p.238

Illustrations Dick Bruna © copyright Mercis bv, 1953-2008 www.miffy.com

Guide to the Chara-den list

- The icons for image types, retrieval methods and the available settings→p.226
- Titles and file names→p.228

Image type icon (Chara-den)

Title

Allowable operation icon

Retrieval method icon

Using Chara-den characters

This function allows you to play a Chara-den character by selecting from pre-installed actions.

1 Chara-den player screen (p.237)▶ Using Chara-den characters

■ To check the action list

▶[*]

The actions displayed in the list differ depending on the type of character.
The number such as "1" or "#1" displayed on the right of the action indicates that pressing that key during the Chara-den playback will perform the corresponding action.

<To check the action details>

▶Highlight the action▶[i] (Detail)▶Check the details▶[✉] (Exit)

■ To change the Action mode

▶[i] (Parts/Whole)

This command switches to Parts action mode when [ ] is displayed and to Whole action mode when [ ] is displayed.

[ ] (Whole): The action mode in which the entire Chara-den character moves to express feelings.

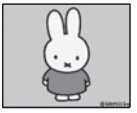
[ ] (Parts): The action mode in which the parts of the Chara-den character (head, hands, feet, etc.) move.

■ To use the keypad to select actions during the Chara-den playback

The keypad keys that can be pressed to make the displayed character perform actions are as follows:

"Whole": 1 digit number on the right side of the action name ([1] to [9]) or [#][1] to [#][9]
"Parts": 2 digit number on the right side of the action name ([1][1] to [9][9])

<Example: To select "おやすみ" (Good night) in Whole action mode>
* The Chara-den is displayed normally (not in mirror).

[i] (Whole) ➡  [8] ➡

Illustrations Dick Bruna
© copyright Mercis bv, 1953-2008
www.miffy.com

■ To have the character's mouth synchronize your voice

Some Chara-den characters can move the mouth synchronizing your voice as if it is talking. If you use the Function menu or press the key to make the character perform an action, the character performs the selected action rather than moving its mouth.

[FUNC] Chara-den list screen (p.237)/ Chara-den player screen (p.237)

Chara-den call……Makes a videophone call with the Chara-den character as the substitute image.
Use [✥] to search for a phone number from the Received calls, Redial or phonebook on the Chara-den dialing screen.

Substitute image……Sets the Chara-den character as the substitute image for videophone calls.

Rec. Chara-den→p.239

Edit title*1……Edits the title of the Chara-den.
You can enter up to 18 double-byte or 36 single-byte characters.

Switch Chara-den*2……Selects the Chara-den to display.

Action List*2……Displays the Action list.

Change Action*2……Changes the Action mode.

Chara-den info……Cara-den file name and file save date and time are displayed.

Memory info*1……Displays the amount of the stored Chara-den.

Add shortcut→p.94

Set image disp.

- **Normal**……Displays the image in the actual size.
- **Fit in display** (default)……Enlarges the image to the display size.

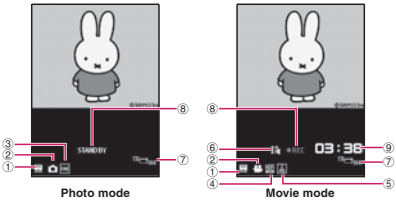
Reset title*1……Resets the title to the default.

Delete*1……Selects the deleting method from "Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all".
"About multiple-choice"→p.38

*1: Available only with the Chara-den list screen.
*2: Available only with the Chara-den player screen.

Saving Chara-den character as Image or Movie <Rec. Chara-den>

■Guide to the Rec. Chara-den screen



①Currently selected action mode
: Whole
: Parts

②Shooting mode
: Photo mode
: Movie mode

③Setting of "Storage setting" (Image)
: Normal
: Fine
: Super Fine

④Setting of "Storage setting" (Movie)
: Normal
: Prefer img qual
: Prefer time
: Prefer motion spd

⑤Setting of "File size setting"
: 500KB
: 2MB

⑥Setting of "Movie type set"
: Video + voice
: Video

⑦Indicates the size selected in "Select size"
: QCIF (176 × 144)
: Small (117 × 96)

⑧Shooting status
STANDBY: Stand-by
REC: Shooting

⑨Remaining shooting time in the "min:sec" format (not displayed until shooting starts)

Illustrations Dick Bruna
© copyright Mercis bv,
1953-2008
www.miffy.com

● Shooting Still Images

1 Chara-den player screen (p.237)▶ (FUNC)▶"Rec. Chara-den"

The "Rec. Chara-den (image)" screen appears.

Rec. Chara-den (image)
Function menu➡p.240

2 Perform an action▶ (Record)

Operation of actions
→p.238

■ **To perform a Parts action**
▶ (Parts)

■ **To compose an i-mode message with a shot image attached/inserted**
▶ (MAIL)▶"Attach image" or "Insert image"

■ **To retake the shot**
▶CLR

3 (Save)

The shot image is saved to the Camera folder under My picture.

● Shooting movies

1 Rec. Chara-den (image) screen (p.239)▶ (FUNC)▶"Movie mode"

The "Rec. Chara-den (movie)" screen appears.

Rec. Chara-den (movie)
Function menu➡p.240

2 (Record)▶ Perform an action

Operation of actions
→p.238

■ **To perform a Parts action**
▶ (Parts)

3 (Stop)

■ **To compose an i-mode message with the recorded movie attached**
▶ (MAIL)

■ **To check the movie**
▶ (FUNC)▶"Check w/ playing"

■ **To retake the shot**
▶CLR

4 (Save)

The movie is saved to the Camera folder under i-motion.

Continued on next page

NOTE

- The image size (QCIF (176 × 144)) cannot be changed.
- Performing an action during shooting may record keypad sounds.

FUNC Rec. Chara-den screen (p.239)

Switch Chara-den……Changes a Chara-den character to shoot.

Substitute image……Sets the Chara-den character as the substitute image for videophone calls.

Action List……Displays the Action list.

Change Action……Changes the Action mode.

Set image disp.

- **Normal**……Displays the image in the actual size.
- **Fit in display** (default)……Enlarges the image to the display size.

Movie mode⇔Photo mode……Switches between Movie mode and Photo mode.

Select size*1……Sets the size of character to shoot. Numbers in parentheses displayed in the menu is the size in dots (width × height).

Movie type set*2

- **Video + voice** (default)……Shoots a movie including sound.
- **Video**……Shoots a movie without any voice.

Storage setting*2

- **Normal** (default)……Shoots a movie with the normal quality and duration.
- **Prefer img qual**……Select this option to shoot a movie with higher quality. The available shooting time is shorter than for Normal.
- **Prefer time**……Select this option to shoot a long movie. The quality is not as high as for Normal.
- **Prefer motion spd**……Select this option to shoot a movie with smoother motion.

Storage setting*1……Selects the quality for image shooting from "Normal/Fine/Super Fine".

File size setting*2

- **500KB**……You can shoot up to 500K bytes.
- **2MB** (default)……You can shoot up to 2M bytes.

*1: Available only in the Photo mode.
*2: Available only in the Movie mode.

NOTE

<Switch Chara-den>

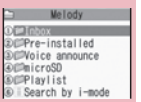
- Changing a Chara-den character sets the action mode to Whole.

Playing Melodies <Melody>

You can play the pre-installed melodies, sound effects or the melodies downloaded from the sites in the "Melody" folder of Data Box.

1 MENU▶"DATA BOX"▶"Melody"

The "Folder list" screen appears.
Contents in the Melody folder→p.225



Folder list

Function menu➡p.253

2 **Select a folder**

The "Melody list" screen appears.
Guide to the melody list →p.241

■ **To search melody by i-mode**

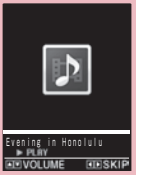
▶"Search by i-mode"
▶ "YES"

Melody list

Function menu➡p.241

3 **Select a melody**

The "Melody" screen appears and the melody playback begins.
"Operation during the melody playback"→p.241



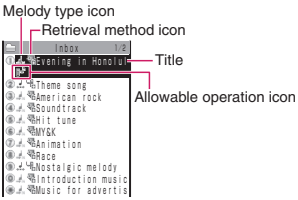
Melody

Function menu➡p.241

NOTE

- Melodies are played at the volume set in "Phone" under the "Ring volume" settings (played at "Level 2" when "Silent" or "Step" is set).
- Playback illumination pattern is "Melody linked" (if Melody linked is not registered, "Flash" applies).

Guide to the Melody list



■Melody type icon

Icon	Description
	MFi/SMF melody

: Data that are file-restricted or not allowed to be attached to mails or output from the FOMA terminal

■Retrieval method icon

Icon	Description
No icon	Pre-installed melody
	Melody downloaded from sites
	Melody retrieved through the Infrared data exchange, iC communication, microSD card, Bar code reader or PC

■Allowable operation icon

Icon	Description
	Can be attached to i-mode mail (2M bytes or smaller)
	Can be specified as Ring tone
	Can be transmitted via infrared data exchange or iC communication
	Can be copied to the microSD card

■Titles and file names

Original titles are assigned to downloaded melodies. The title is listed on the Melody list screen of the FOMA terminal.
The file name is displayed when the data is transmitted to PC.
If the file name contains an inappropriate character, it is turned to “melodyxxx” (xxx: 3-digit number).
The 3-digit number at the end of the file name is a serial number assigned to distinguish the file from other files.

Operation during the melody playback

You can use the following operations during the melody playback:

Key operation	Operation
	Plays the previous or next melody
(▲マナー)), (▼メモ))	Adjusting the volume*
0 to 9, ＊, #, , , , , MENU, ch	Stops the playback
CLR	Ends

* : When the melody is finished, the volume is restored to the level specified in “Ring volume”.

FUNC Melody list screen (p.240)/ Melody screen (p.240)

- The function menu varies depending on the folder containing the melody.

Edit title[*1]……Edits the title of the melody.
You can enter up to 25 double-byte or 50 single-byte characters.

Edit file name[*1]……Edits the file name of the melody.
You can enter up to 36 single-byte alphanumeric characters and symbols (“-” and “_” only).

Play melody[*1]……Plays the melody (Displays Melody screen).

Ring tone……Selects the item to which the melody is set.

File restriction[*1]……Specifies whether to allow the redistribution of the saved melody.→p.228

Set repeat play[*2]……Repeats the playback of the melody in the same folder.

Add shortcut→p.94

Compose message[*3]……Composes an i-mode mail with the melody attached.→p.156

iC transmission[*1]→p.259

Send Ir data[*1]→p.258

Copy to microSD→p.248

Copy to Phone[*4]→p.249

Melody info……Melody file name and file save date and time are displayed.

Memory info[*1]……Displays the amount of the stored melody.

Copy[*4]……“Copying the data to the different folder in the microSD card”→p.250

Reset title[*1]……Resets the title to the default.

Continued on next page

Sort[*1]……Sorts melodies in a selected criteria.

Move[*1]……Selects from "Move this/Move selected/Move all" and moves the melody to the other folder you select.
"About multiple-choice"→p.38

Delete[*1]……Selects the deleting method from "Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all".
"About multiple-choice"→p.38

*1: Available only with the melody list screen.
*2: Available only with the melody screen.
*3: Not available when 2in1 is in B mode.
*4: Available only for melodies stored on the microSD card.

NOTE

<Edit file name>
- You cannot edit the file name of the file-restricted melody. However, you can edit the file name of the melody received by the Infrared data exchange, iC communication or OBEX™ connection.

<Ring tone>
- Some melodies may have restrictions so that only a designated part of the melody will be played. When such melodies are set as a ring tone, only the designated part can be played. Play the melody from the Melody in Data Box to play all the parts of the melody.

<Sort>
- "By source" sorts the melodies in the following order. Melodies with the same retrieval icon are arranged in the order in which they were displayed before you selected "By source":
  ①Melody downloaded from website or melody retrieved from i-αppli
  ②Melodies retrieved using Infrared data exchange, iC communication or from microSD card, etc.

● Playing melodies in your preferred order
<Melody play playlist>

You can select and register up to 10 melodies, and play them in sequence.

1 Folder list screen (p.240)▶Highlight "Playlist"▶✉ (FUNC)▶"Edit playlist"▶Select the number to which the melody is to be added▶Select a folder▶Select a melody▶Repeat the procedure

■ To release the added melody
▶Select the melody to release▶Select "Release this" on the folder selection screen

2 🗑 (Finish)
The "Folder list" screen appears.
Selecting the Playlist folder starts the playback of the playlist and the stored melodies are played repeatedly.

NOTE
- The playlist playback is canceled if the registered melody titles or file names are changed or the data is deleted.

Managing Kisekae Tool
<Kisekae Tool>

Check the packages of Kisekae Tool downloaded from sites.
- "ダイレクトメニュー" and "ミッフィー" are stored at the time of purchase.
- Downloading from sites→p.146

1 MENU▶"DATA BOX"▶"Kisekae Tool"
The "Package list" screen appears.
Package list screen→p.243

Package list
Function menu➡p.243

■ To search packages by i-mode
▶"Search by i-mode"▶"YES"

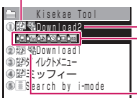
2 Select a package

■ To set the package
▶✉ (FUNC)▶"Set all"
Kisekae Tool package settings→p.97

■ When you select a partially downloaded package
When you attempt to open a partially downloaded package, due to interruption at data acquisition, etc., a message appears asking whether to download the remaining data. To download the remaining data, follow the message to download the data.
When the remaining data is downloaded, the partially downloaded data will be deleted. If the remaining data is invalid, the data downloading cannot be completed. However, if you download the data in this case, partially stored invalid data will be deleted.

NOTE
- Sound-related items such as ring tone are played at the volume set in "Ring volume" while checking (Played at "level 2" when set to "Step", and no sound when set to "Silent").
  However, i-motion sounds at "Level 2" when set to "Silent".

Guide to the package list



■Package type icon

Icon	Description
	All the data have been downloaded
	Only a part of the data has been downloaded
	Subject to the FOMA card security function

■Retrieval method icon

Icon	Description
No icon	Pre-installed Data
	Downloaded data

■Allowable operation icon

Icon	Description
	Standby screen, wake-up display
	Dialing screen, etc. (other than standby screen and Wake-up display)
	Ring tone or clock alarm tone
	Menu*
	Background on the Music Player screen
	Clock display
	Color pattern
	Icons such as battery icon

* : " " also appears if the package contains large-font menu.

FUNC Package list screen (p.242)

Set all……Sets the Kisekae Tool. →p.97

Edit title……Edits the package title.
You can enter up to 10 double-byte or 20 single-byte characters.

Kisekae Tool info……Package file name and file save date and time are displayed.

Reset title……Resets the title to the default.

Reset screen/sound……Resets the items that can be set all at once to the default (p.97).

Memory info……Displays the amount of the stored Kisekae Tool.

Sort……Sorts packages by the specified criteria.

Delete……Selects the deleting method from "Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all".
"About multiple-choice" →p.38

microSD Card

FOMA SO706i supports microSD cards with up to 2G-byte (commercially available) (As of May, 2008). Visit the following website for the latest operation check information such as the manufacturer or the capacity of the microSD card. Note that the microSD card which is not listed on the website may not be operated on the FOMA terminal.

- i-mode: "PlayNow" by SO
  (As of May, 2008)
  "iMenu"▶"メニューリスト" (Menu List)▶"ケータイ電話メーカー" (Mobile phone manufacturer)▶"PlayNow by SO"
  QR code on the right is also available to select displayed URL and access the site.
- PC (Japanese):
  Sony Ericsson Mobile Communications
  http://www.SonyEricsson.co.jp/memorycard/
  Note that the information on the website is only the result of the operation check and does not guarantee all the operations.

Notes on handling

* Make sure to format the microSD card on the FOMA SO706i. You may not be able to use the microSD card formatted on the other terminal or PC. →p.251

- Insert or remove the microSD card after turning off the FOMA terminal.
- Do not paste a label or sticker on the microSD card.
- It is your responsibility to keep a separate record of all data saved on the microSD card. Under no circumstances shall NTT DOCOMO be liable for any loss or alternation to the saved data.

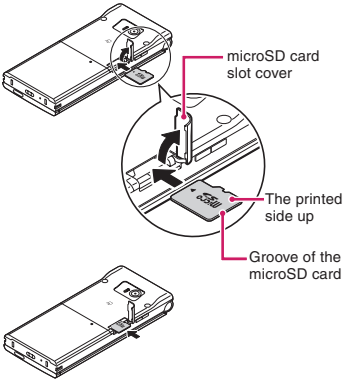
Inserting/removing the microSD card

Insert or remove the microSD card after turning off the FOMA terminal.

1 Open the cap of the microSD card slot

2 Insert the microSD card into the microSD card slot and push it until it locks into the place

Insert the microSD card straight and slowly with the printed side up.
When fully inserted, the card is locked in the place.



■ **To remove the card**

When you push the microSD card in and release, the card pops up slightly.

* Note that the card may fly out of the slot.

Grip the groove of the microSD card and slowly pull the card out.

3 Close the cap of the microSD card slot

When you turn on the FOMA terminal after inserting the microSD card, " SD " appears.

NOTE

- Do not insert or remove the microSD card with the FOMA terminal turned on. Doing so may damage the microSD card or the data on the card.
- Note that the microSD card may fly out of the slot when inserting or removing the microSD card.
- When you remove the microSD card, make sure to keep the card in the supplied protective case. You may not be able to use the microSD card if the card is kept in different protective case.
- Make sure to insert or remove the microSD card straightly in the right direction (inserting the microSD card at an angle may damage the card).

NOTE

- It may take long to read or write data for the first time after the microSD card is inserted.

Folder tree on the microSD Card

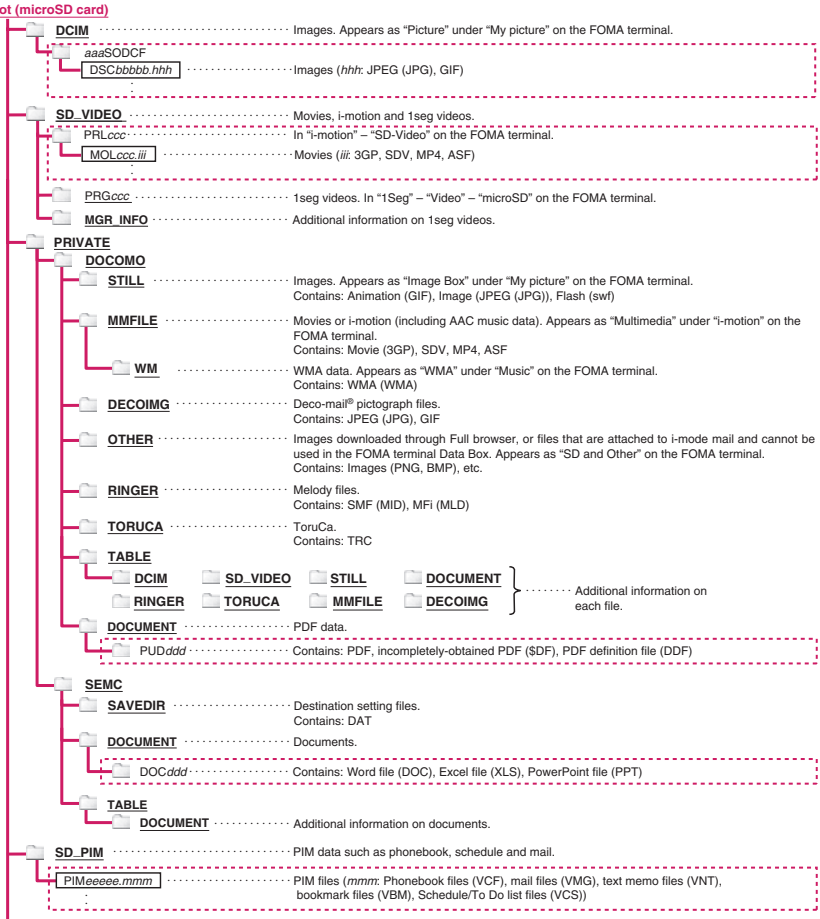
When you copy the data from the FOMA terminal to the microSD card, folders are created as shown in the **Table 1** (p.245) and the data are stored on the respective folders. The folder name and file names are set automatically as shown in the **Table 1**.

- When the data is copied from a PC to the microSD card, the folder structure and file name shown in the **Table 1** (p.245) are needed.

NOTE

- When you copy multiple data to the SD_PIM folder, the data is automatically named with year/month/day/hour/minute (yyyy/mm/dd hh:mm).
- You can save a movie with video from a PC to the MMFILE folder, but you cannot play the movie on the FOMA terminal.
- A file edited on a PC then saved to the microSD card may not be displayed or played correctly on the FOMA SO706i if you use characters different from the folder/file names shown in Table 1 (p.245).
- File names of PDF data/documents copied to a microSD card remain unchanged (up to single-byte 59 characters/double-byte 29 characters). If a file name is the same as that of an existing file stored in the microSD card, a 3-digit number will be added to the original file name.
- When the microSD card is formatted and SDVIDEO.DAT, MMFILE.DAT or DCIM.DAT file is deleted, the settings of the destination folder are canceled. In this case, reset the setting of "Select to save".
- Do not delete or move folders in the microSD card on a PC. Doing so may prevent FOMA SO706i from reading the microSD card.
- You may not be able to display or play the data on the microSD card stored from the other device. Also, you may not be able to display or play the data on the microSD card stored from the FOMA terminal on the other device.
- Before purchasing the microSD card reader/writer or PC card adapter, ask the manufacturer of the microSD card if it is available for the FOMA SO706i.

(Table 1) Folder tree on the microSD Card and storage file (Enclosed in parentheses are file extensions)



* Alphabets in italic that is no explanation in table mean following single-byte numbers.
aaa: 100 to 999 *bbbbb*: 00001 to 09999 *ddd*: 001 to 999 *eeeee*: 00001 to 65535 (Decimal numbers)
ccc: 001 to FFF (hexadecimal numbers)

* When you store the data on the microSD card from a PC and edit the data on the microSD card, follow the instructions of [ ]. The data may not be displayed or played correctly if you use wrong characters.

● Number of files that can be stored on the microSD card

The number of files that can be stored on the microSD card varies depending on the memory capacity of the microSD card. The maximum number of files that can be stored in 1 folder and the maximum number of folders are as follows:

Folder name	Maximum number of folders	Maximum number of files that can be stored in 1 folder
DCIM	900	9,999
PRL	4,095	4,095
PRG	99	4
SD_PIM	1	65,535
STILL	999	9,999
MMFILE	999	9,999
DECOIMG	999	9,999
OTHER	999	999
RINGER	999	9,999
TORUCA	999	999
DOCUMENT	999	999

- You can save more files by adding folders and changing the location to copy. However, you may not be able to store the data to the maximum number depending on the file size.
- You can not copy or move the data when the space is not enough on the microSD card.
- When the microSD card is full, you cannot add folders or edit titles for still image, image, movies or i-motion.
- Music data cannot move from the FOMA terminal to the microSD card.
- If the number of files in the destination folder has reached the maximum, a new folder is automatically created and data will be saved to the new folder (except SD-PIM). However, a folder is not automatically created when taking a picture with Camera and saving directly to a microSD card.

Data that can be exchanged between the FOMA terminal and the microSD card

■PIM data

Data type	Details
Phonebook	Name, Reading, Phone number, Mail address, Memo, Address, Birthday, Image, Memory number*1, Secret store*2*3, Group number*3, Group name*3, Phonebook 2in1 setting
Schedule	Date (from), Date (to), Summary, Contents, Secret store*2*3, category*4, Alarm, Repeat
To Do list	Contents, Category*5, Completion date, Period, Change status, Priority, Alarm
Text memo	Make date, Last modify date, Category, Contents
Received mail*6, Sent mail*6, Draft mail	Unread/Read, Message type, Saved in, Sender, Receiver, Title, Receive/Send date, Message, Attach, 2in1 setting
Bookmark*6*7	URL, Title

*1: May be assigned to the available number to copy and add.
*2: Secret store indicated whether the data is stored as a secret data.
*3: Can be copied by “Copy all”.
*4: Category is the icon information set in the schedule.
*5: Category is the category set in the To Do list.
*6: Folders (folder names) can be transferred by copying all the received mails, sent mails or bookmarks.
*7: When copied from the microSD card to the FOMA terminal, i-mode bookmarks are stored in the “Bookmark” folder of “i-mode menu”. Full Browser bookmarks are saved to the “Bookmark” folder under “Full Browser”.

■Data in the Data Box

Data type	Details
Still image	JPEG, GIF and SWF data in the Inbox, Camera, Decomail-picture, Decorate PI, microSD or user created folder
Movie	MP4 data in the Inbox, Camera, microSD or user created folder
Melody	MFi/SMF melody in the Inbox, microSD or user created folder
PDF data	PDF data in the Inbox, microSD or user-created folder

■Other data

Data type	Details
ToruCa	ToruCa in the ToruCa, microSD or user created folder

NOTE

- If a schedule with a user icon is copied, the “Category” information is not copied.
- You cannot copy while microSD card being accessed.

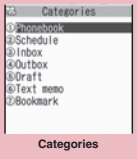
Displaying the Data in the microSD Card

Displaying the PIM data on the microSD card <microSD manager>

You can display the PIM data such as phonebook, schedule, mail or bookmarks on the microSD card.

1 MENU ▶"LIFEKIT"▶"microSD manager"

The "Categories" screen appears.

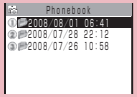


Categories

Function menu➡p.247

2 **Select an item**

The "File list" screen appears.

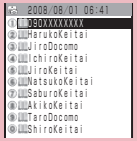


File list

Function menu➡p.248

3 **Select a file**

The "Data list" screen appears.

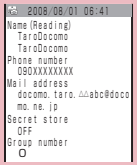


Data list

Function menu➡p.248

4 **Select a data**

The "Data detail" screen appears.



Data detail

Function menu➡p.248

NOTE

- While running microSD manager or displaying the data details, you cannot launch another function.
- "" appears for a bookmark added on the i-mode browser screen, and "FB" for the one added on the Full Browser screen.

NOTE

- Deco-mail® appears without decorations.

FUNC Categories screen (p.247)

microSD info→p.251

Copy from phone……Copies all the item data to the microSD card.

- For "Schedule", you can select from "Schedule/To Do list/All".
- For "Bookmark", you can select from "i-mode brow./Full Brow./All".

microSD format→p.251

Check microSD……Checks the microSD card and fixes errors.

NOTE

<Check microSD>

- Do not remove the microSD card during checking the microSD card. This may cause a malfunction to the FOMA terminal or microSD card.
- The data may not be recovered depending on the microSD card.
- You cannot check the unformatted or incompatible microSD card.
- "" flashes during Check microSD.
- When you press (Quit) or while checking the microSD card, the checking is canceled and "" appears.
- When the checking of microSD card is interrupted, some data may remain to be recovered. In this case, check the microSD card again.
- It may take time to check the microSD card depending on the amount of data on the microSD card.
- When you check the microSD card, the titles of the data in the microSD card are renamed to the file names.
  Titles and file names→pp.228, 241

FUNC File list screen (p.247)

Edit title……Edits the file title.
You can enter up to 15 double-byte or 31 single-byte characters.

Copy & add • Copy & overwrite→p.249

Copy from phone……Copies all the item data to the microSD card.
- For "Schedule", you can select from "Schedule/To Do list/All".
- For "Bookmark", you can select from "i-mode brow./Full Brow./All".

microSD info……Displays the amount of available space and data stored on the microSD card.

Delete……Selects the deleting method from "Delete this/Delete selected/Delete all". "About multiple-choice"→p.38

FUNC Data list screen (p.247)/Data detail screen (p.247)

Copy & add this • Copy & add all • Copy & OW all*……
- "Copy & add this" copies one data additionally.
- "Copy & add all" is the same function as "Copy & add" of the function menu of the file list screen.
- "Copy & OW all" is the same function as "Copy & overwrite" of the function menu of the file list screen.

"Copying the PIM data to the FOMA terminal"→p.249

microSD info……Checks the amount of available space and data stored on the microSD card.

* : "Copy & add all" and "Copy & OW all" are available only for the data list screen.

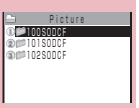
Displaying other data in the microSD card

You can display the data in the Data Box such as images, i-motion or melodies or ToruCa stored on the microSD card.

<Example: To display an image in My picture>

1 Folder list screen (p.225)▶"microSD"▶"Picture", "Decorate PI" or "Image Box"

The "microSD folder list" screen appears.



Ex. microSD folder list (Picture)

Function menu➡p.253

2 Select a folder▶Select an image

Exchanging the Data Between the microSD Card and FOMA Terminal

Copying the data on the FOMA terminal to the microSD card

● Copying the data such as the phonebook to the microSD card

You can save the phonebook, schedule, To Do list, text memo, mail or bookmarks stored on the FOMA terminal to the microSD card.

1 List screen of the data (such as the phonebook list screen)▶✉ (FUNC)▶"Copy to microSD"▶Select any item:

Copy this • Copy selected • Copy all*……Selects the copying method.
"About multiple-choice"→p.38

* : Only the data in the folder can be copied for copying all the received mails, sent mails or bookmarks. To copy all the data, select "CopyAll to microSD" from the function menu of the folder list screen.

■Function menu of the detail screen
The function of "Copy to microSD" on the detail screen is same as "Copy this" of the list screen.

■Function menu of the category screen
The function menu "Copy from phone" of the category list (p.247) is same as "Copy all" of the list screen of the phonebook, schedule, To Do list, draft mail or text memo. Similarly, this function is same as "CopyAll to microSD" of the folder list screen of received mail, sent mail or bookmark.

NOTE
- When you copy the mail with an i-αppli software launch specification, the information about launching i-αppli in the mail is deleted.
- When you copy one secret data (phonebook or schedule), the secret setting is released when saved.
- When you copy all the data to the microSD card, secret data (phonebook or schedule) are also copied. However, the data in the secret folder are not copied.
- When you copy mails, the attached files may be deleted depending on the file type.
- Copy all the data of My Profile after operating the "Display all data".

Copying the data such as images to the microSD card

You can copy the data in the Inbox, Camera or user created folder to the microSD card.

- Still images recorded with 1seg cannot be copied.

1 List screen of the data (such as the image list screen)▶✉ (FUNC)▶"Copy to microSD"▶Select any item:

Copy this • Copy selected • Copy all……Selects the copying method, then selects the destination folder to copy the data to the folder of microSD card. "About multiple-choice"→p.38

NOTE

- Pre-installed data cannot be copied to the microSD card.
- When you receive a call, mail or alarm notification while copying still images or movies to the microSD card, the copying to the microSD card is interrupted.
- When the destination folder is full, a new folder is created automatically and the data is stored in the folder.

<Copy image>

- The file name is set as follows after copied:
  - File name: DSC_mmmmm (mmmmm = 00001 to 09999)
- You cannot copy the data to the microSD card in the following cases:
  - Images other than JPEG, GIF or SWF
  - The file size exceeds 2M bytes when copied
- The file size may increase when copied to the microSD card.

<Copy movie>

- The file name is set as follows after copied:
  - File name: MOLxxx (xxx = 001 to FFF: in hexadecimal)

Copying the data on the microSD card to the FOMA terminal

Copying the PIM data to the FOMA terminal

You can copy and add/overwrite the phonebook, schedule, mail or bookmarks stored on the microSD card to the FOMA terminal.

- When you copy and overwrite the schedule, the To Do list data is also copied and overwritten (when only one of these data is stored, only the stored data is overwritten).
- Note that when you copy and overwrite data (Copy & OW this/Copy & OW selected/Copy & OW all), the data stored on the FOMA terminal before copying are erased and replaced by the data in the selected microSD card.
  Check if there is an important data before copying and overwriting the data.

1 File list screen (p.247)▶✉ (FUNC)▶"Copy & add" or "Copy & overwrite"▶Select any item:

Copy & add this • Copy & OW this……Copies and adds/overwrites all the data of a file.

Copy & add selected • Copy & OW selected……Copies and adds/overwrites all the data of the selected file. "About multiple-choice"→p.38

Copy & add all • Copy & OW all……Copies and adds/overwrites all the data of all the files.

■Function menu of the data list screen/data detail screen

- "Copy & add all" and "Copy & OW all" on the data list screen (p.247) are the same functions as "Copy & add" and "Copy & overwrite" of the file list screen.
- "Copy & add this" of the data list screen/data detail screen (p.247) copies the selected one data additionally.

NOTE

- You cannot copy the phonebook data when "Restrict dialing" is set.
- If Copy & add is selected for the phonebook, group names on the microSD card differ from the one of the FOMA terminal, the data is saved to "No Group" in the phonebook.
- When the Inbox or Outbox is full, copying one received mail from the data list screen/data detail screen overwrites the oldest unprotected mail or read mail.

● Copying other data to the FOMA terminal

You can copy the data such as images stored on the microSD card to the folder of the FOMA terminal.
- Videos recorded with 1seg cannot be copied.

1 List screen of the data (such as the image list screen)▶✉ (FUNC)▶"Copy to phone"▶Select any item:

Copy this • Copy selected • Copy all……Selects the copying method.
"About multiple-choice"→p.38

NOTE

<Copy image>
- The following images cannot be copied:
  - SWF Flash movie which exceeds 100K bytes
  - An image which exceeds 2M bytes
  - An image whose width or height exceeds 2,592 dots or total number of dots exceeds 2,592 × 1,944 dots
  - A progressive JPEG/GIF image whose width or height exceeds 854 dots or total number of dots exceeds 854 × 480 dots

<Copy movie>
- You cannot copy a movie in the following cases:
  - Movies other than MP4
  - MP4 movies that cannot be played
  - Movies whose file size exceeds 10M bytes
  - * You may not be able to copy the movie in other cases depending on the movie.

<Copy PDF>
- PDF data larger than 2M bytes cannot be copied.

Copying the data to the different folder in the microSD card

You can copy the data in the microSD card to the different folder in the microSD card.
- You have to create a destination folder beforehand. →p.253

1 List screen of the data (such as the image list screen)▶✉ (FUNC) ▶"Copy"▶Select any item:

Copy this • Copy selected • Copy all……Selects the copying method, then selects the destination folder to copy the data to the other folder.
"About multiple-choice"→p.38

NOTE

- Do not remove the microSD card until the coping completes. This may cause a malfunction to the FOMA terminal or microSD card.

Moving the Copyrighted Data Among the microSD Card and FOMA Terminal <Movable contents>

You can move the movable i-motion or Chaku-Uta-Full® with copyrights.

Moving the data on the FOMA terminal to the microSD card

- Moved i-motion is saved to the Movable contents folder (p.224) under i-motion.
- The moved Chaku-Uta-Full® are saved to the Movable contents folder (p.224) under Music.

1 Movie list screen (p.233)/Music list screen (p.273)▶✉ (FUNC)▶"Move to microSD"▶Select any item:

Move this……▶Select the destination folder▶"Select this folder"

Move selected……▶Select the destination folder▶"Select this folder"▶Use ✥ to select a checkbox (□)▶🗑 (Finish)▶"YES"

Move all……▶Enter your security code▶Select the destination folder▶"Select this folder"▶"YES"

Moving the data on the microSD card to the FOMA terminal

- The moved i-motion are stored to the Inbox folder of i-motion.
- The moved Chaku-Uta-Full® are stored to the Inbox of Music.
- Videos recorded with 1seg cannot be moved.

1 Folder list screen (pp.233, 273)▶"Movable contents"▶Select a folder▶"View files"

The "Movie list" screen (p.233)/"Music list" screen (p.273) appears.

2 ✉ (FUNC)▶"Move to phone"▶Select any item:

Move this • Move selected • Move all……Selects the moving method. "About multiple-choice"→p.38

NOTE

- Do not remove the microSD card while moving the data. This may cause a malfunction to the FOMA terminal or microSD card.